



PORSCHE



718

Good to know – Driver's Manual

Porsche, the Porsche Crest, 718, PCCB, PCM, PDK, PSM, PTM, Tequipment and other designations are registered trademarks of Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG.

Printed in Germany.

Reprinting, even of excerpts, or duplication of any type is only permissible with the written authorisation of Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG.

© Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG
Porscheplatz 1
70435 Stuttgart
Germany

Equipment and on-board literature

Because our vehicles undergo continuous development, equipment and specifications may not be as illustrated or described by Porsche in this manual. Items of equipment are sometimes optional or vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is sold. For more information on retrofit equipment, please contact your Porsche partner. Because of different legal requirements in individual countries, the equipment in your vehicle may vary from that described in this manual.

Should your Porsche be fitted with any equipment not described in this manual, your Porsche partner will be glad to provide information concerning correct operation and care of the items concerned.

Always keep the on-board literature in the vehicle and hand it over to the new owner if you sell the vehicle.

Should you have any questions, suggestions or ideas regarding your vehicle or the on-board literature:

Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG
Vertrieb Customer Relations
Porscheplatz 1
70435 Stuttgart
Germany

Warnings and symbols

Various types of warnings and symbols are used in this Driver's Manual.

⚠ DANGER

Serious injury or death

Failure to observe warnings in the "Danger" category will result in serious injury or death.

⚠ WARNING

Possible serious injury or death

Failure to observe warnings in the "Warning" category can result in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

Possible moderate or minor injury

Failure to observe warnings in the "Caution" category can result in moderate or minor injuries.

NOTICE

Failure to observe warnings in the "Notice" category can result in damage to the vehicle.

i Information

Additional information is indicated by "Information".

- ✓ Conditions that must be met in order to use a function.
- ▶ Instruction that you must follow.

1. If an instruction comprises several steps, these are numbered.
- ▶ Notice on where you can find further important information on a topic.

Airbag warning sticker

⚠ DANGER

Child restraint system on passenger seat

If a child restraint system is fitted on the passenger's seat, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury from the passenger airbag triggering.

- ▶ **Never** use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the passenger's seat with the **front airbag activated** as it poses a **risk of injury and death** to the child.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 78.



Taiwan only:

- ▶ According to Taiwan related regulations, "DO NOT carry babies, infants and children on the front passenger seat".
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 78



Layout of the Manual

Contents



8000_253

Gain an overview and find the topics you are looking for.

▷ Page 3 onwards.

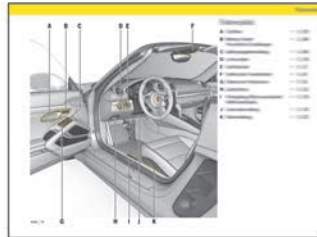
More Safety and More Driving Pleasure



Find out how to enjoy your driving pleasure safely.

▷ Page 5 onwards.

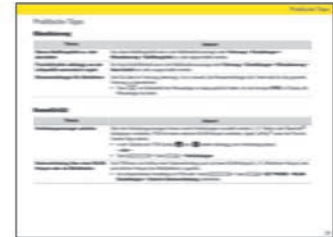
Overview Illustrations



Familiarise yourself with components and controls.

▷ Page 17 onwards.

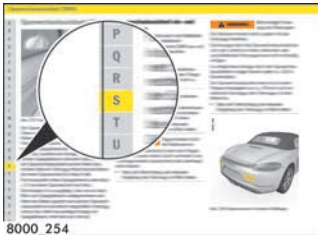
Practical Tips



Browse through and gain additional information about new functions.

▷ Page 27 onwards.

Topics from A – Z

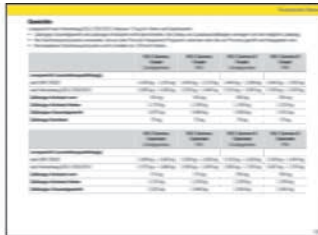


8000_254

Find out how components and controls work and how to operate them.

▷ Page 31 onwards.

Technical Data



Look for specific figures.

▷ Page 305 onwards.

Index



Get straight to the information you are looking for.

▷ Page 321 onwards.

Contents

More Safety and More Driving Pleasure	5	Air Conditioning and Ergonomics	Speed Limit Display	221
Overview Illustrations		Air Conditioning System (Manual).....	Sport Chrono Mode Switch	223
Centre Console.....	20	Airbag Systems	Sport Chrono Stopwatch.....	226
Control Panel.....	21	Automatically Controlled	SPORT Mode	220
Driver's Cockpit.....	18	2-Zone Air Conditioning.....	Sports Exhaust System.....	231
Entering Text and Characters in the PCM.....	26	Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats).....	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	232
Overhead Console	22	Heated Rear Window/ Exterior Mirror Heating	Theft Protection	248
PCM Controls	23	Mirrors	Transmission	251
PCM Drives	24	Personal Settings.....	Transmission and Chassis Control Systems	256
PCM Operating Principle.....	25	Seat Belts	Windscreen Wipers.....	300
Steering Wheel and Instrument Panel.....	19	Seats		
		Steering Wheel	Instrument Panel and Multi-Function Display	
Practical Tips	27	Sun Visors.....	Instrument Panel	125
Opening and Locking			Multi-Function Display	157
Central Locking	71	Driving and Driver Assistance Systems	Vehicle Settings using the Multi-Function Display	263
Convertible Top	90	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....	Warning and Information Messages	278
Driver's Key.....	102	Alarm System		
Garage Door Opener.....	117	Auto Start Stop Function.....	Entertainment and Communication	
Luggage Compartment Lid	144	Brakes	Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)	176
Windows	298	Cruise Control.....	Media	148
		Driving Data Display (Trip Information).....	Radio	204
		HOLD Function: Drive-Off Assistant, Standstill Management	Telephone.....	238
		Instrument and Interior Lighting	Voice Control.....	271
		Lane Change Assist (LCA).....		
		Lights	Navigation and Connectivity	
		ParkAssist.....	Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)	176
		Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM).....	Apple® CarPlay	48
		Porsche Car Connect	Connectivity.....	87
		Porsche Stability Management (PSM).....	Device Manager	100
		Porsche Track Precision App	Navigation	167
		Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS Plus).....	Porsche Connect App.....	193
		Rear Wing.....		

Luggage and Transport

Cupholders.....	99
Electrical Socket.....	106
Luggage Compartment	140
Smoker's Package.....	219
Storage	235

Mobility and Minor Repairs

Battery.....	59
Brake Fluid	62
Care	65
Coolant.....	95
Diagnostic Socket.....	101
Engine Oil.....	107
Fire Extinguisher	109
Flat Tyre	110
Fuses	113
Headlights.....	120
Jack and Lifting Platform.....	128
Jump-Lead Starting	129
Measurement on the Test Stand	147
Refuelling	209
Selector Lever Emergency Release	217
Towing and Tow-Starting	249
Tyres and Wheels	257
Washer Fluid.....	297
Wiper Blades	304

Technical Data	305
-----------------------------	------------

Index	321
--------------------	------------

More Safety and More Driving Pleasure

Your Porsche: Extreme performance, extreme sportiness. It's exciting, there's no question. But only if you can remain relaxed whatever the situation. Therefore, for us safety is also a matter of ultimate quality.

And here we tell you what you can do to stay safe on the road in your Porsche.

Perfect technology: a prerequisite for your safety

High-quality materials and excellent workmanship keep your car on the road for many years to come. But your care and attentiveness are essential if the vehicle is to manage what it promises. That way, you will also be able to rely on your Porsche in critical situations.

Checking for damage and correct operation



A vehicle with technical defects can behave in an unexpected way, which may cause an accident.

- ▶ Check your vehicle regularly (at least once a month and before any long journey), to ensure it is in good technical condition. In particular, pay attention to the following:
 - Tyres are not damaged, have the right pressure and sufficient tread

- Headlights, brake lights and direction indicators all work
 - Aerodynamic components are undamaged
 - Wiper blades are intact
 - Windows are unobstructed without any cracks or damage to the glass
 - Exterior and interior mirrors are intact and correctly positioned
 - Radar sensor of adaptive cruise control (ACC) is intact with no cracks or damage
 - Cooling air ducts, sensors and cameras are not covered (e.g. with film, stone guards, number plate holders)
- ▶ Only use telephones or 2-way radios inside the vehicle with an external antenna connected, so as not to exceed the limits for electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle.

Checking tyres for damage



Damaged tyres may burst while you are driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Depending on how often you drive and the conditions, check tyres regularly – at least once a month – for foreign bodies, nicks, cuts, cracks and bulges. Remember to also check the side walls of the tyres.
- ▶ If in doubt, have the tyres and the entire wheel checked by a qualified specialist workshop.

- ▶ Do **not** continue driving with damaged tyres. Have damaged tyres replaced immediately: Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

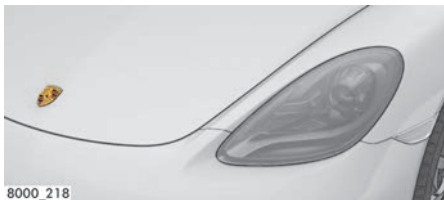
Adjusting the tyre pressure



Low or high tyre pressure irreparably damages the tyre and the wheel, lengthens the braking distance and greatly increases the risk of an accident. If the tyre pressure is too low, fuel consumption can increase noticeably.

- ▶ Adapt the tyre pressure to the fitted tyres.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Tyre pressure” on page 313.
- ▶ Make sure that the settings in the TPM menu on the multi-function display correspond to the tyres fitted on the vehicle.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “TPM menu (TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)” on page 162.
- ▶ If a red tyre pressure warning appears on the multi-function display: Stop immediately in a suitable place and check tyres for damage. Do **not** continue driving with damaged tyres. If necessary, remedy the damage with tyre sealant.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Flat Tyre” on page 110.

Checking the lights



If lights are faulty, your vehicle is in the dark and hard to see in conditions of poor visibility. Other drivers will see you too late and you could be involved in an accident.

- ▶ Check that all lights are working, and have defective lights repaired immediately. The lights to check are:
 - Parking light, dipped beam, driving lights, high beam
 - Direction indicators, brake lights, reversing lights
 - Fog lights

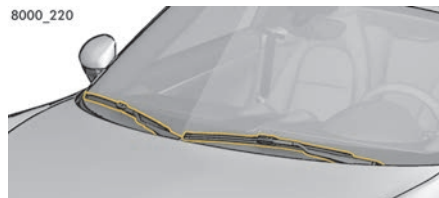
Checking aerodynamic components



Damaged or missing aerodynamic components (e.g. rear wing or underbody panels) impair vehicle handling.

- ▶ Inspect your vehicle for signs of damage.
- ▶ Have damaged or missing components replaced immediately.

Keeping windows and wiper blades clean and in good working order



Dirty windows and defective wiper blades impair your view and dramatically increase the risk of accident.

- ▶ Keep the vehicle and windows clean.
- ▶ Thaw frozen wiper blades and detach them from the windscreen.
- ▶ Replace wiper blades regularly, and at the latest if they leave streaks on the windscreen.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Wiper Blades” on page 304.

Maintenance and modifications only by qualified specialist workshops



Any modification to the vehicle can adversely affect or even disable safety functions. Unskilled maintenance work performed during the warranty period may invalidate your right to claim under warranty.

- ▶ Have all maintenance and all modifications to the vehicle performed solely by a qualified specialist workshop. This ensures that the vehicle will remain reliable and safe to drive, and will not suffer consequential damage. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Spare parts for your Porsche



- ▶ Only use genuine Porsche spare parts for your vehicle, or spare parts of an equivalent quality that have been manufactured according to the specifications and production requirements of Porsche. This ensures that the vehicle will remain reliable and safe to drive, and will not suffer consequential damage. You can obtain these parts from a Porsche partner or a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Only use accessories that are from the Porsche Equipment range or have been tested and approved by Porsche. For information on Porsche Equipment: Contact your Porsche partner.

i Information

If other spare parts or accessories are used, Porsche refuses to accept liability for any damage caused by their use.

Even if the supplier of other spare parts of accessories is a recognised supplier, the safety of your vehicle may still be compromised.

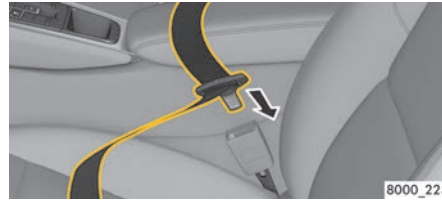
Using spare parts or accessories that are not approved by Porsche may invalidate your vehicle warranty.

Loading, safety systems, children in the vehicle: know-how for Porsche drivers

With your Porsche, you can accelerate to over 100 km/h (62 mph) in just a few seconds. With this much power at your disposal, you should do everything to ensure safety before you set off.

Therefore, put the same passion into getting ready for a trip as you do into driving.

Your lifesaver: Using seat belts correctly



Seat belts can only protect you from injury if they are used correctly and in good working order.

i Information

Even at 30 km/h (20 mph), serious injuries are possible if you are not wearing a seat belt. Safety systems only protect you when working in combination. For example, airbags can only provide the right protection if the seat belt is also put on correctly.

- ▶ Always make sure that seat belts fit snugly, including on short trips.
- ▶ Only ever use one seat belt per occupant.
- ▶ Remove bulky items of clothing, such as winter coats.
- ▶ Do not lay seat belts over breakable or hard objects such as glasses or ball-point pens.
- ▶ Make sure seat belts are not twisted.
- ▶ Always make sure unused seat belts are completely retracted.
- ▶ If an occupant is pregnant, position the horizontal belt section below the belly and the shoulder belt snugly over the chest.
- ▶ Have worn or damaged belts, buckles and fastenings replaced.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Seat Belts” on page 211.

Airbag system



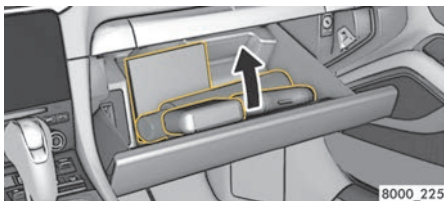
Airbag systems can perform their safety function only if all passengers are wearing seat belts and are sitting in the correct position. Objects and luggage must be stowed safely.

- ▶ Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects between occupants and the area into which the airbag inflates.
- ▶ Keep a distance from the airbags, e.g. do not lean against the inside of the doors. Always keep your feet in the footwell when driving. Do not put feet on the dashboard or seat surface.

Airbags that have been tampered with do not offer any protection. They may either not trigger or be triggered in an uncontrolled manner. Uncontrolled triggering can cause serious injuries.

- ▶ Do not use protective seat covers.
- ▶ Do not attach any additional trim or stickers to the steering wheel or in the vicinity of the passenger airbag, side airbags or head airbag.
- ▶ Do not route any cables of additional electrical equipment in the vicinity of the airbag wiring harnesses.
- ▶ Do not remove any airbag components, e.g. steering wheel, front seats, headliner.
- ▶ Do not modify the wiring or components of the airbag system.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Airbag Systems” on page 45.

Securing all objects in the passenger compartment



An unsecured or incorrectly positioned load in the passenger compartment can be hurled around the interior as a result of braking, changing direction or an accident. This can endanger and injure vehicle occupants.

i Information

In the event of a collision at 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, unsecured objects can be flung forwards with a force up to 50 times their weight. For example, a 1.5 litre bottle of water has a force of 75 kg as it flies through the interior.

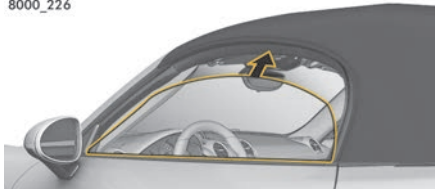
- ▶ Always secure items for transport.
- ▶ Always stow loads securely, e.g. in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ Stow small items in storage compartments and close them all. Never let objects protrude from storage compartments.
- ▶ Never place objects on top of the dashboard.
- ▶ Do not transport heavy objects in open storage compartments.
- ▶ Tell all your passengers about the safety measures.

For correctly loading your Porsche and stowing items:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Stowing loads" on page 140.

Avoiding the risk of pinching/crushing

8000_226



Persons or animals can get caught or crushed if they are in the range of movement of the vehicle parts below. These parts include the following, among others:

- Adjustable front seats
- Doors
- Windows
- Flaps and lids
- Lids of storage compartments
- ▶ When moving these vehicle parts, make sure that no persons or animals are in the range of movement.

Supervise children's behaviour

9000_265

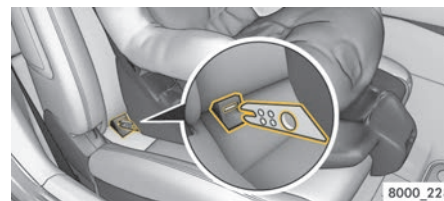


Often, children are unable to weigh up risks or behave correctly in dangerous situations.

Children may inadvertently trigger automatic settings, such as the seat adjustment, and injure themselves. Children cannot free themselves from the vehicle in emergency situations, such as a build-up of heat in a closed vehicle. This can be life-threatening, especially for small children.

- ▶ Keep children away from live or hot parts such as the tailpipe.
- ▶ Keep toxic materials, such as tyre sealant or engine oil, out of reach of children.
- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

Using a child restraint systems safely



Child restraint systems can only work if they are correctly installed.

- ▶ **Only** use child restraint systems that are approved for your Porsche.
- ▶ Before you use a child restraint system: Read and follow the instructions for the child restraint system, as well as this manual.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 78.

Safe and competent driving: always make the right decision

Your Porsche is an all-rounder. From Launch Control to the emergency braking function – once you let it loose, anything is possible. However, at the end of the day, you are responsible for keeping your power house under control.

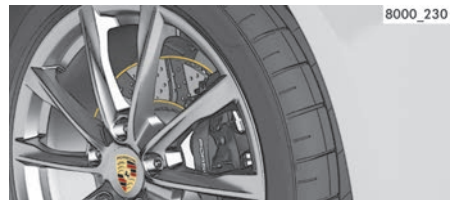
Avoid distractions



If you use the PCM or other components in the vehicle while you are driving, you are distracted from the traffic and may not react in time to dangerous situations. For your safety, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▶ Never change mirror, seat or steering wheel positions while driving. The seat or steering wheel may move further than you intended. You may lose control of the vehicle. Set the mirror, seat and steering wheel to the correct position before you set off.
- ▶ Only use the multi-function steering wheel, radio, navigation system, etc. while driving if the traffic situation permits. If in doubt, stop.
- ▶ Do not use mobile phones or other mobile devices while driving.
- ▶ Always use hands-free equipment.
- ▶ Do not reach through the steering-wheel spokes while driving. You will not be able to react quickly enough to danger.

Be aware of braking behaviour in rain and snow



In heavy rain, while driving through water or after leaving a car wash, a film of water may form on the brakes, delaying the braking action and requiring increased pressure on the brake pedal. Moreover, after a long drive in wintry road conditions, a coating may form on brake discs and pads that significantly reduces friction and therefore also the braking action.

- ▶ Dry the brakes by frequent braking, particularly before you park the vehicle. This will prevent corrosion.
- ▶ Corroded brakes have a tendency to “judder”. If braking comfort is noticeably impaired, have the brake system checked.

Suitable tyres and appropriate driving style



▶ Refer to chapter “Tyres and Wheels” on page 257.

Responding correctly to uneven running or vibrations

Damage to tyres or the vehicle can cause uneven running or vibrations while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Reduce your speed immediately, but without braking sharply.
- ▶ Stop the vehicle and check the tyres. If you cannot find a cause for the problem, continue driving carefully and have the problem fixed. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Keeping tyres in safe condition

Damaged tyres can burst, especially at high speeds. Prevent damage to tyres by driving in a manner that protects your tyres.

- ▶ Cross kerb edges slowly and at right angles if possible.
- ▶ Avoid driving over steep or sharp kerbs.

Running in new tyres

New tyres do not yet have maximum adhesion to the road surface and tend to slip.

- ▶ Run in new tyres at a moderate speed for the first 200 km (125 miles).

Driving with winter tyres

Winter tyres are subject to maximum speeds.

If you exceeding the permitted maximum speed, a tyre may burst.

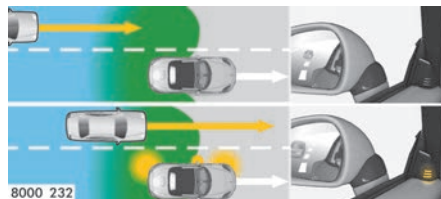
- ▶ Always observe the permitted maximum speed of the tyre you are using.
 - ▶ Affix a sticker showing the permitted maximum speed in the driver's field of vision. Observe country-specific laws.
 - ▶ Setting the permitted maximum speed as the speed limit on the multi-function display:
- ▷ Refer to chapter "Setting the speed limit" on page 161.

Driving with summer tyres

Noises may occur when parking or manoeuvring at outside temperatures below 15 °C.

- ▶ Change to winter tyres when outside temperatures are below 7 °C.

Getting to know assistance systems and their limitations



Your Porsche is equipped with assistance systems that enhance your safety and driving comfort.

None of these systems can overcome the laws of physics governing the movement of vehicles.

- ▶ Do not be tempted to take greater risks with your safety. Assistance systems cannot reduce the risk of accidents caused by an inappropriate driving style.
- ▶ Assistance systems are no substitute for your careful attention. Always remain attentive so that you can react appropriately to the traffic situation.
- ▶ Familiarise yourself with assistance systems before you use them.

Here you can find the assistance systems at a glance:

	Page
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	196
HOLD function	122
Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)	191
Porsche Stability Management (PSM)	195
Porsche Torque Vectoring (PTV)	256
PADM	256
Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)	162
Lane Change Assist (LCA)	130
Automatic headlights, Dynamic high beam	135
Park Assist, reversing camera	185
Cruise control	97
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)	32
Speed limit display	221
Navigation system	167

Emergency braking function



You can carry out full braking with the electric parking brake, if the conventional foot brake is defective, for example.

This emergency braking function has very high braking power, which can present a danger to traffic behind you.

- ▶ Only use the emergency braking function in an emergency, not for normal braking.
- ▶ For emergency braking, press and hold switch (P). To stop braking, release the switch.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Brakes” on page 63.

Driving off with Launch Control



When driving off with Launch Control activated, the vehicle accelerates very quickly. In certain circumstances (poor road conditions, lack of attention, etc.) you may lose control of the vehicle or endanger other road users.

- ▶ Only use Launch Control on public roads if road and traffic conditions permit.
- ▶ Do not endanger other road users when driving off with Launch Control.

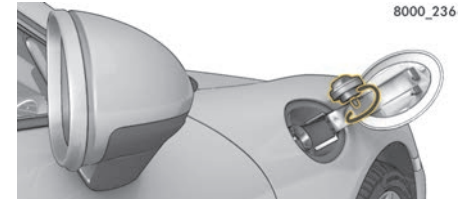
Responding correctly to warning signals



If the sensors detect malfunctions or defective parts, your vehicle warns you using lights or messages. If you ignore the vehicle's warning signals, this can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- ▶ Familiarise yourself with the meaning of warning lights and messages before driving, so that you can take the appropriate action to a warning. Stop driving if necessary.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and indicator lights” on page 126.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Dangers when refuelling



Fuel is highly flammable, and can deflagrate or explode. In addition, fuel and fuel vapours are harmful to health.

- ▶ Fire, naked flames and smoking are prohibited when refuelling.
- ▶ Do not inhale fuel vapours.
- ▶ Do not let fuel come into contact with skin or clothing.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Refuelling” on page 209.

If a fuel can carried in the vehicle is damaged in an accident, fuel may escape and ignite or explode.

- ▶ Do not carry fuel cans in the vehicle.

Hazardous fluids



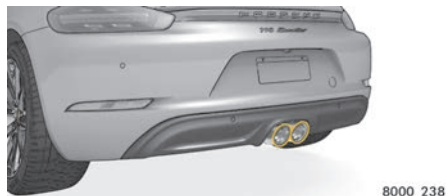
Not just fuel – engine and transmission oil, battery acid, coolant and brake fluid are also hazardous to health.

- ▶ Only work on the vehicle in the open or in well-ventilated spaces.
- ▶ Label fluid containers appropriately and store out of reach of children.
- ▶ Dispose of residues in an environmentally friendly manner and in accordance with regulations.

Engine oil can ignite. Cloths containing residues of engine oil that are thrown away or stored without ventilation can ignite by themselves and cause a fire.

- ▶ Soak up spilled engine oil with cloths.
- ▶ Keep cloths saturated with engine oil in a ventilated place until they are disposed of.

Toxic exhaust gases



Exhaust gas contains colourless and odourless carbon monoxide, which is toxic even in low concentrations.

- ▶ Switch off the engine when the vehicle is stationary. Never leave the engine running unnecessarily in confined spaces.
- ▶ Perform work with the engine running only in the open or with suitable extraction systems for the exhaust gases.

Parking the vehicle safely



If the vehicle is not parked correctly, it can roll away uncontrolled, endangering people or causing material damage.

Before you leave the vehicle:

- ▶ Activate the electric parking brake.
- ▶ Vehicles with PDK: Move the selector lever to position **P**.
If selector-lever position **P** is flashing in the instrument panel, the parking lock is not correctly engaged. In this case, move the selector lever to position **R**, then move it to position **P** once more.
- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: Engage first or reverse gear.

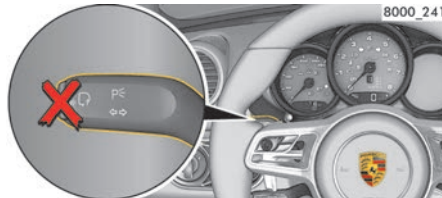
The exhaust system is very hot when the engine is running and for a while after the engine has stopped. Risk of burns and fire!

- ▶ Do not park your vehicle in places where combustible materials, such as dry grass or leaves, can come into contact with the hot exhaust system.
- ▶ If you are standing behind the vehicle, maintain a safe distance from the tailpipes.
- ▶ Make sure that children do not burn themselves on the tailpipes.

Being prepared for all eventualities: safety in the event of a breakdown or emergency

If you break down, pay attention to this information – for your own safety!

Do not use voice control in an emergency



In emergency situations, stress may cause your voice to change so that voice control does not recognise your instructions.

- ▶ Do **not** use voice control in an emergency.

Caution when working in the engine compartment

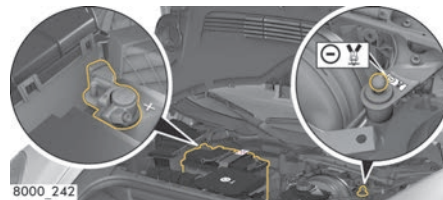


The engine and adjacent components, the exhaust system and the coolant become very hot when the engine is running.

The coolant tank is pressurised. Hot coolant can spray out suddenly if the coolant tank is not opened with care.

- ▶ Take care when working near hot vehicle parts, particularly the engine and the exhaust system.
- ▶ Top up coolant only with the engine stopped and ignition switched off.
- ▶ Do **not** open the cap on the coolant reservoir when the engine is hot. Wait until the coolant temperature gauge displays a temperature below 60 °C.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Coolant” on page 95.

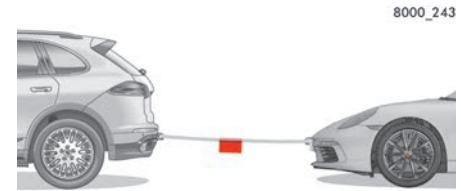
Jump-lead starting



Unsuitable jump leads or an incorrect starting procedure can cause a short circuit and lead to a fire. A highly explosive gas mixture can form around the battery during jump-lead starting. In addition, there are risks of injury in the engine compartment due to battery acid and parts that may start up automatically, such as radiator fans. Before jump-lead starting:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Jump-Lead Starting” on page 129.

Towing



There is an increased risk of accident when towing. Power assistance may not be available, so that steering requires greater effort. If the brake booster has failed, you will need a lot of force for braking.

- ▶ Exercise the utmost caution when towing if the engine has stopped or if power assistance or the brake booster has failed.
- ▶ Do not allow vehicles with defective brakes to be towed.
- ▶ During towing and recovery by a towing vehicle, pay attention to the limited ground clearance.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Towing and Tow-Starting” on page 249.

Flat tyre

8000_244

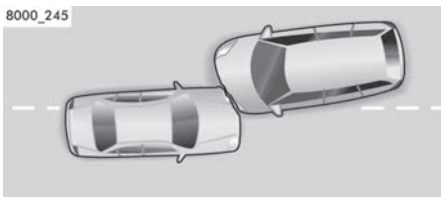


If you drive with damaged tyres, depending on your speed it may not be possible to steer the vehicle safely.

- ▶ **Never** continue driving with a flat tyre.
- ▶ Park the vehicle correctly and safely, and have the problem fixed.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Flat Tyre” on page 110.

After a collision

8000_245



After a collision, the safety systems may no longer be operational (e.g. seat-belt pretensioners and airbags). The safety systems can then no longer protect you.

- ▶ Have safety systems checked, even if they have not been triggered.
- ▶ Have triggered safety systems replaced. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Before driving off: important information on your Porsche

Running in the vehicle

8000_246



In a new vehicle, the moving parts first have to be run in with each other. The first 3,000 km (1,865 miles) are required for this. The oil and fuel consumption may be somewhat higher than normal during this time.

Drive as follows during the running-in period:

- ▶ Preferably take longer trips. If possible, avoid frequent cold starts with short distances.
- ▶ Do not participate in motor racing events, sports driving schools, or similar.
- ▶ Avoid high speeds of over 4,000 revolutions per minute. Drive at low speeds when the engine is cold.

Running in new brake pads

8000_247



New brake pads and brake discs have to be “bedded in” and therefore only attain optimum friction when the vehicle has covered several hundred miles.

The somewhat reduced braking action requires greater force when pressing the brake pedal. This is also the case whenever the brake pads or brake discs are replaced.

Paying attention to ground clearance

8000_248



The vehicle has low ground clearance and can therefore easily touch the ground.

- ▶ Avoid steep ramps.
- ▶ Drive carefully in the following situations:
 - Steep uphill and downhill slopes, e.g. in multi-storey car parks
 - Kerbs
 - Uneven road surfaces
 - Lifting platforms

Before driving on race circuits



8000_250

Compared with driving on roads, driving on race circuits involves disproportionately high vehicle loads, which pure race vehicles are able to withstand thanks to short maintenance and component reconditioning intervals. This includes carrying out checks and replacing individual components where necessary after each race circuit session, through to overhauling entire assemblies after a specified period.

- ▶ Always make enquiries about the current stipulations before driving on race circuits: Contact your Porsche partner.

Brake system

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air over time. This absorption of water lowers the boiling point and can considerably impair braking efficiency at high temperatures.

Brake pads and brake discs are subjected to very high stress when driving on a race circuit.

- ▶ If the brake fluid is more than 12 months old: Replace brake fluid before driving on a race circuit.
- ▶ Have the brake pads and brake discs checked for wear before and after driving on race circuits.

Tyres

Tyres are also subjected to very high stress when driving on a race circuit.

- ▶ Have tyres checked for wear before and after driving on race circuits.
- ▶ Do not fit racing tyres. Racing tyres are not approved by Porsche.

Engine oil

- ▶ Check the engine oil level before and after driving on race circuits.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Measuring and displaying engine oil level” on page 160.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Selecting and topping up engine oil” on page 107.

Before driving abroad



9000_293

Not all Porsche models are sold in all countries. As a result, individual spare parts may not be available, or the Porsche partner may not be able to carry out all repair work.

Clarify the following points before driving abroad:

- Can the vehicle be repaired if it breaks down?
- Does the vehicle require technical adjustments?
- Is the fuel octane rating sufficient?
- Do the headlights need to be changed to left/right-hand traffic?
- ▶ If so, Refer to chapter “Converting headlights for left or right-hand traffic” on page 267.

Data processing in the vehicle



8000_252

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Some of these are required for the operational safety of your vehicle, while others provide assistance while driving (driver assistance systems). In addition, your vehicle has comfort or entertainment functions, which are also controlled by electronic control units.

Storing technical data in the vehicle

Electronic control units have data memories that can temporarily or permanently store technical information about vehicle status, component stress, servicing requirements, events or faults. Generally, this technical information documents the status of a component, module, system or environment, such as:

- Operating state of system components (e.g. fill levels)
- Status messages about the vehicle or its individual components (e.g. wheel revolutions, speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration)
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- Information about events that can damage the vehicle
- The vehicle’s response in special driving situations (e.g. triggering an airbag, activation of the stability control system)
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature)

In addition to providing the actual control unit function, this data is used to detect and correct faults and enables the manufacturer to optimise vehicle functions. Most of this data is volatile and is only processed in the vehicle itself. Only a small amount of the data is stored in event or fault memories. In addition, your vehicle has comfort or entertainment functions, which are also controlled by electronic control units.

Reading out technical data

When having your vehicle serviced, service network employees (e.g. workshops, breakdown services, manufacturers) can read out the technical information from the vehicle. Services include repairs, service processes, warranty cases and quality assurance measures, for example.

The data is read out using a legally required connection for OBD ("On-board diagnose") in the vehicle. The data is collected, processed and used by the relevant service network personnel and may be sent to Porsche in order to comply with product monitoring obligations or to improve quality for example. Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service centre during repairs or servicing.

Using functions in the vehicle

Depending on the selected equipment, you can add information yourself, such as multimedia and address book data or navigation destinations as well as other settings in the comfort and Infotainment functions of the vehicle. This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or may be on a device you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). If this data is stored in the vehicle, you can delete it at any time. This data is only sent to third parties at your request and particularly while using online services, only in accordance with the settings you have selected.

If your vehicle has the required equipment, you can control your connected smartphone or another mobile device using the controls integrated in the vehicle. Picture and sound from your smartphone can be output via the multimedia system. Certain information can also be transferred to your smartphone. This includes general vehicle information or position data, for example, depending on the type of integration. This allows optimal use of selected apps on the smartphone, e.g. for using a navigation system or playing music. The smartphone cannot be used to actively access vehicle data. The type of further data processing is determined by the supplier of the app you are using.

Whether and which settings you can configure for this depends on the app and the operating system on your smartphone.

Using online services

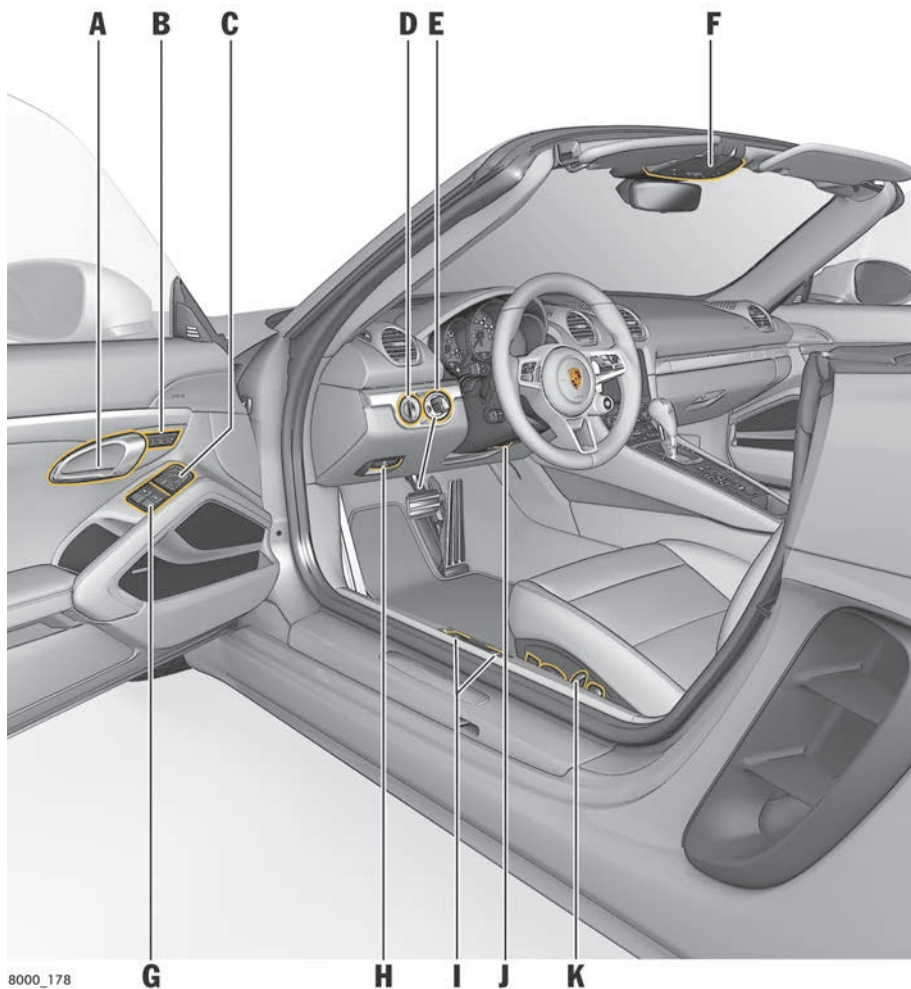
If your vehicle has a wireless network connection, this can be used to exchange data between your vehicle, the surrounding area and other systems. You can connect to the wireless network via the send and receive unit in the vehicle or via your connected mobile devices (e.g. smartphones). Online functions can be used via this wireless network connection. These include online services and applications/apps that are available to you through Porsche or other providers.

For Porsche online services, the various functions are described at a suitable place (e.g. the Porsche Connect website) and the related data protection legislation information is provided. Personal data can be used for the provision of online services. The required data exchange takes place over a protected connection, e.g. with the Porsche IT systems set up for this purpose. The collection, processing and use of personal data for purposes other than the provision of services only occurs when permitted by law or with your consent. Usually, you can activate or deactivate the (often fee-based) services and functions and in some cases, even the entire data connection in the vehicle. This does not apply to legally required functions and services, in particular.

If there is a possibility of using online services from other providers, these are the responsibility of the respective provider and are subject to the data protection requirements and terms of use of that provider. Porsche does not have any influence over data exchanged in these cases. Given this, please contact the respective service provider to find out about the type, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data for third-party services.

Overview Illustrations

On the following pages, you will find overview illustrations of all areas of the vehicle, with a brief explanation. Please refer to the page indicated for further information.



Driver's Cockpit

- A** Door opener ▷ p. 72
- B** Memory buttons for personal settings ▷ p. 188
- C** Exterior mirror adjustment ▷ p. 153
- D** Light switch ▷ p. 135
- E** Ignition lock ▷ p. 232
- F** Overhead console ▷ p. 22
- G** Power windows ▷ p. 298
- H** Electric parking brake ▷ p. 63
- I** Release for front/rear luggage compartment lid ▷ p. 144
- J** Steering wheel adjustment ▷ p. 234
- K** Seat adjustment ▷ p. 213

8000_178

G

H

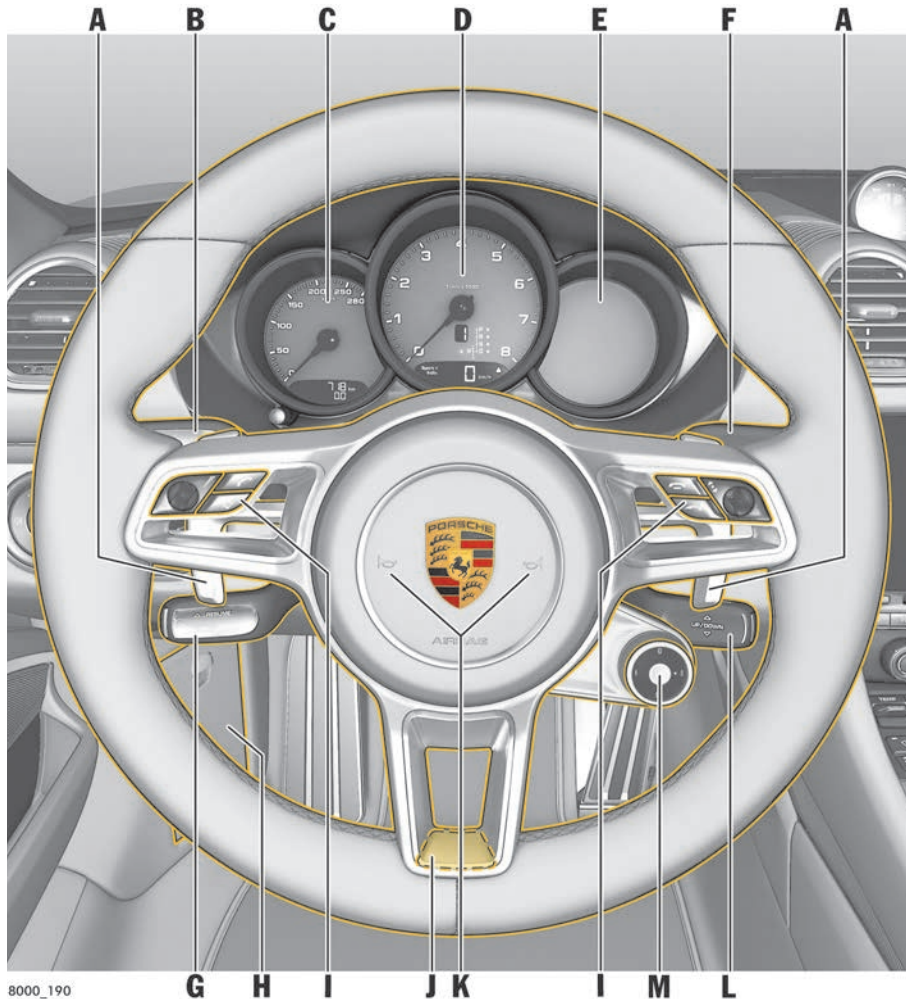
I

J

K

Steering Wheel and Instrument Panel

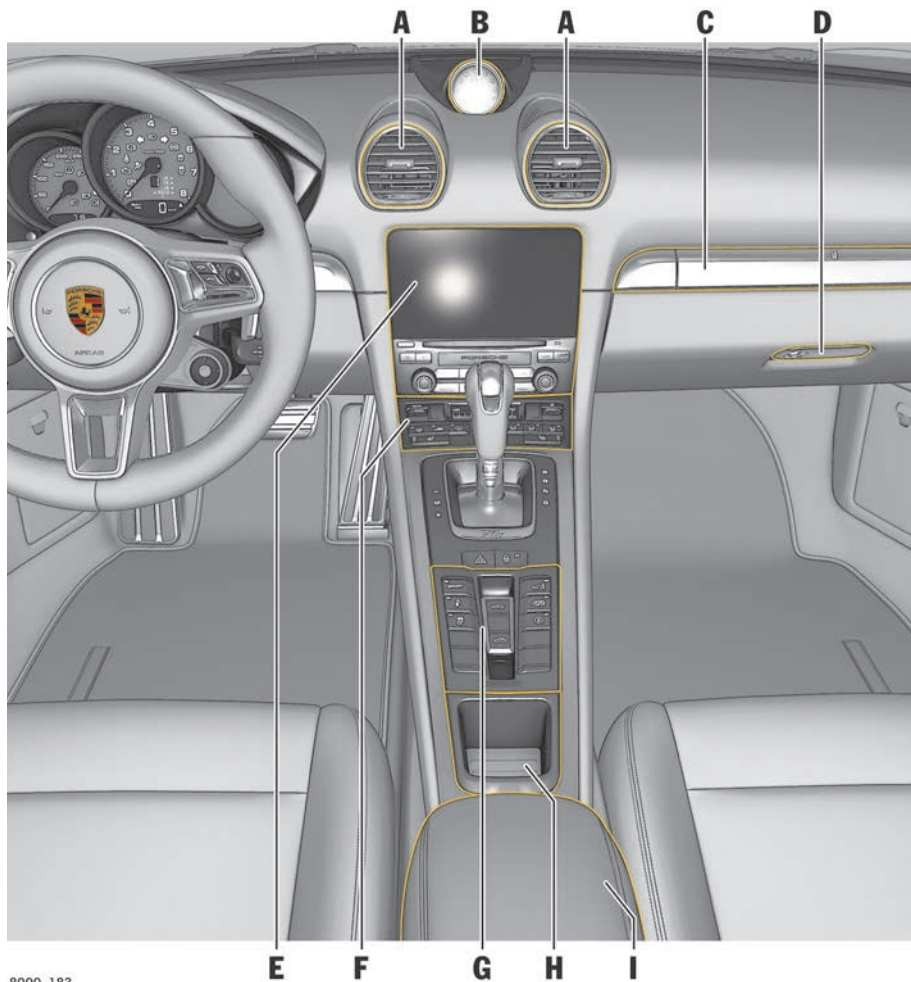
- A** PDK shift paddles ▷ p. 253
- B** Indicators and high beam ▷ p. 138
- C** Speedometer ▷ p. 125
Warning and indicator lights ▷ p. 126
- D** Tachometer ▷ p. 125
Warning and indicator lights ▷ p. 126
- E** Multi-function display ▷ p. 125
Warning and information messages ▷ p. 278
- F** Windscreen wipers ▷ p. 300
- G** Cruise control ▷ p. 97
ACC ▷ p. 32
- H** Diagnostic socket ▷ p. 101
- I** Multi-functional buttons for telephone, radio, multi-function display ▷ p. 157
- J** Steering wheel heating ▷ p. 234
- K** Horn
- L** Control stalk for multi-function display (vehicles without multi-function steering wheel) ▷ p. 157
- M** Mode switch ▷ p. 223



8000_190

A **B** **C** **D** **E** **F** **A**

G **H** **I** **J** **K** **I** **M** **L**



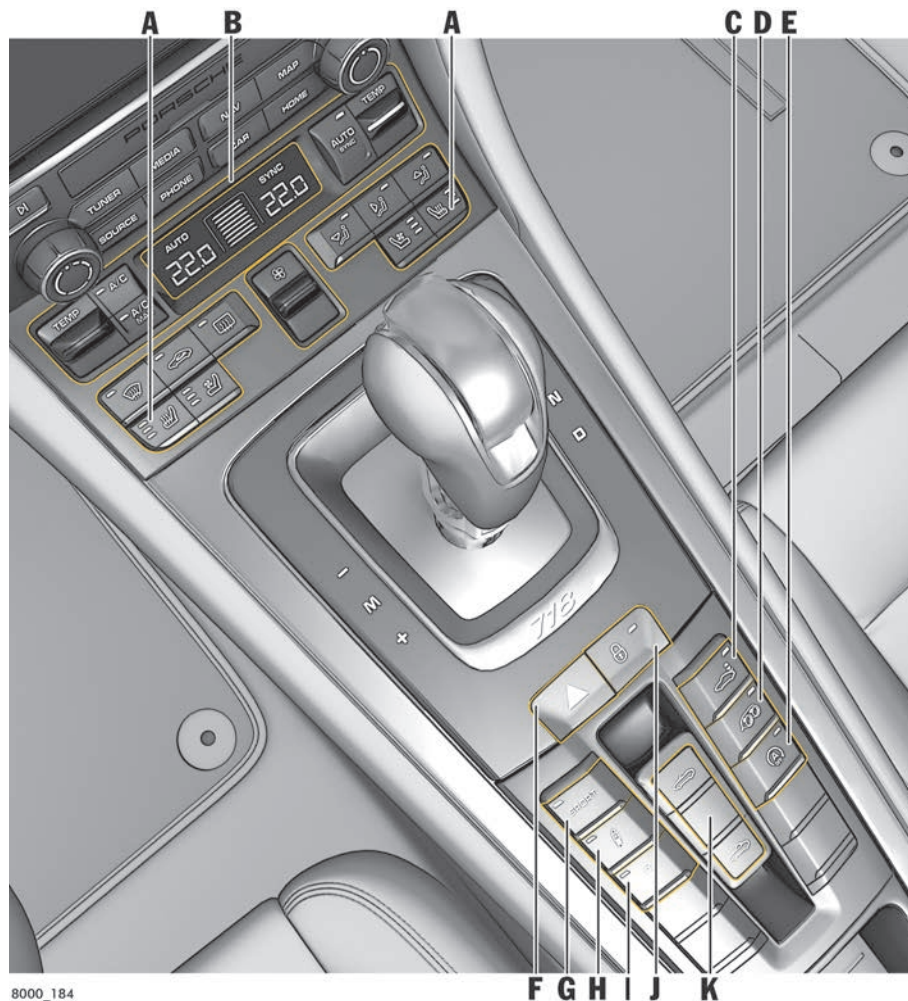
Centre Console

- A** Air vents ▷ p. 56
- B** Sport Chrono stopwatch ▷ p. 226
- C** Cupholders ▷ p. 99
- D** Glove box ▷ p. 235
- E** Porsche Communication Management (PCM) ▷ p. 23
- F** Air-conditioning control panel ▷ p. 20
- G** Control panel ▷ p. 21
- H** Ashtray, cigarette lighter ▷ p. 219
- I** Storage compartment ▷ p. 235

8000_183

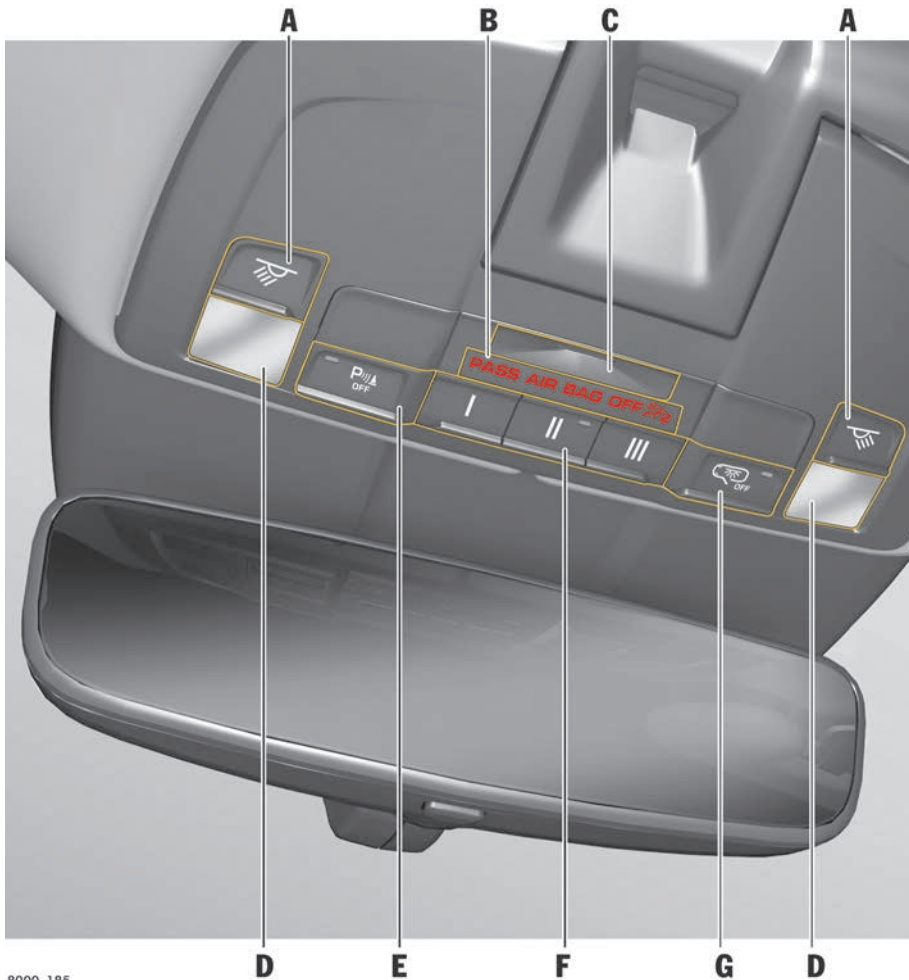
Control Panel

- A** Seat heating/seat ventilation ▷ p. 216
- B** Air-conditioning control panel ▷ p. 53
- C** Rear wing ▷ p. 208
- D** Sports exhaust system ▷ p. 231
- E** Auto Start Stop ▷ p. 50
- F** Hazard warning lights ▷ p. 139
- G** SPORT mode ▷ p. 220
(depending on equipment)
- H** Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) ▷ p. 191
- I** Porsche Stability Management (PSM) ▷ p. 195
- J** Central locking ▷ p. 71
- K** Convertible top control panel ▷ p. 90



8000_184

F G H I J K



Overhead Console

- A** Button for interior/reading light ▷ p. 123
- B** PASS AIR BAG OFF warning light ▷ p. 84
- C** Interior light ▷ p. 123
- D** Reading lights ▷ p. 123
- E** ParkAssist ▷ p. 185
- F** Garage door opener (HomeLink®) ▷ p. 117
- G** Automatic interior lighting ▷ p. 123

PCM Controls

- A** Set volume, switch PCM on and off ▷ p. 184
- B** Radio ▷ p. 204
- C** Media and radio sources ▷ p. 148
- D** Music and videos ▷ p. 148
- E** Telephone, messages and e-mails ▷ p. 238
- F** Navigation ▷ p. 167
- G** Vehicle and system settings ▷ p. 183
- H** Map and traffic announcements ▷ p. 172
- I** Main menus, sound settings, Porsche Connect App, Porsche Connect Services, Apple® CarPlay, MyScreen ▷ p. 180
- J** Rotary push button (for operating the PCM) ▷ p. 179
- K** Back button: Reverse last instruction, interrupt selection or go up a level in the menu
- L** Settings depending on main menu, sound settings
- M** Set time ▷ p. 177
- N** Touchscreen (for operating the PCM) ▷ p. 178
- O** Device Manager (connect telephone, set up wireless Internet access, connect Bluetooth® devices, view connection status of Apple® CarPlay and Porsche Connect App) ▷ p. 100
- P** Skip buttons (set track/station)

P110_60



P110_61

PCM Drives

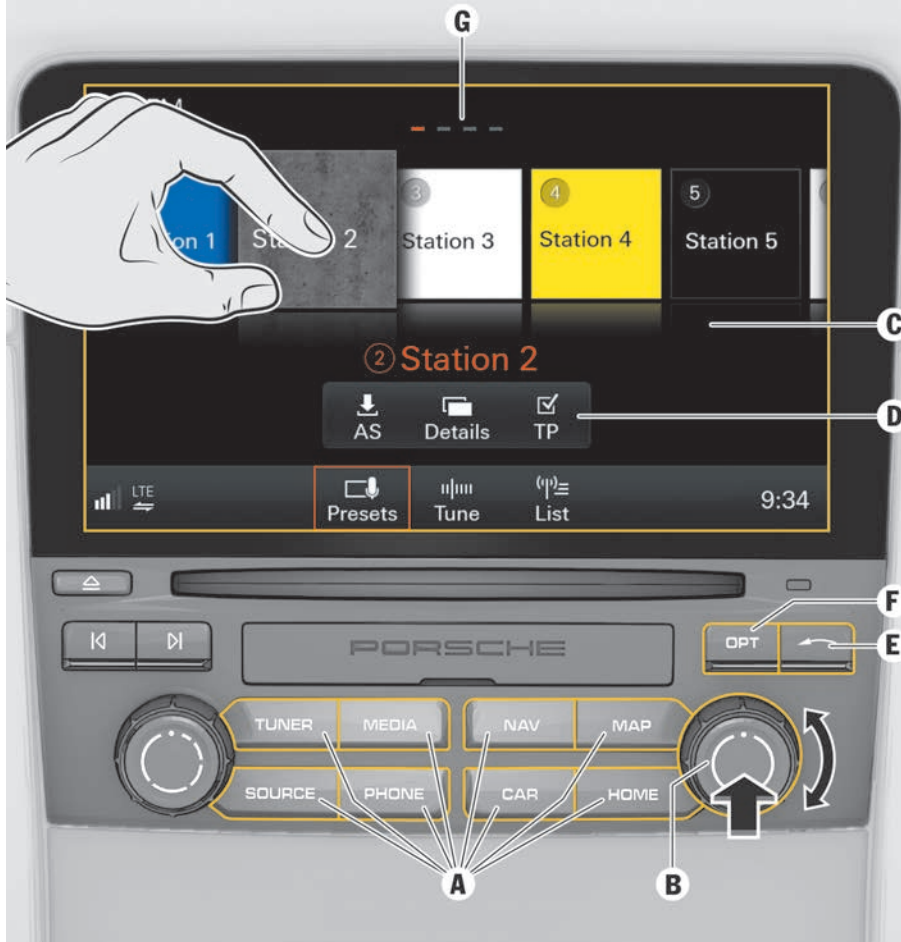
- A CD/DVD drive ▷ p. 181
- B SD card reader 1 ▷ p. 182
- C SIM card reader ▷ p. 87
- D SD card reader 2 ▷ p. 182
- E CD/DVD eject button ▷ p. 181

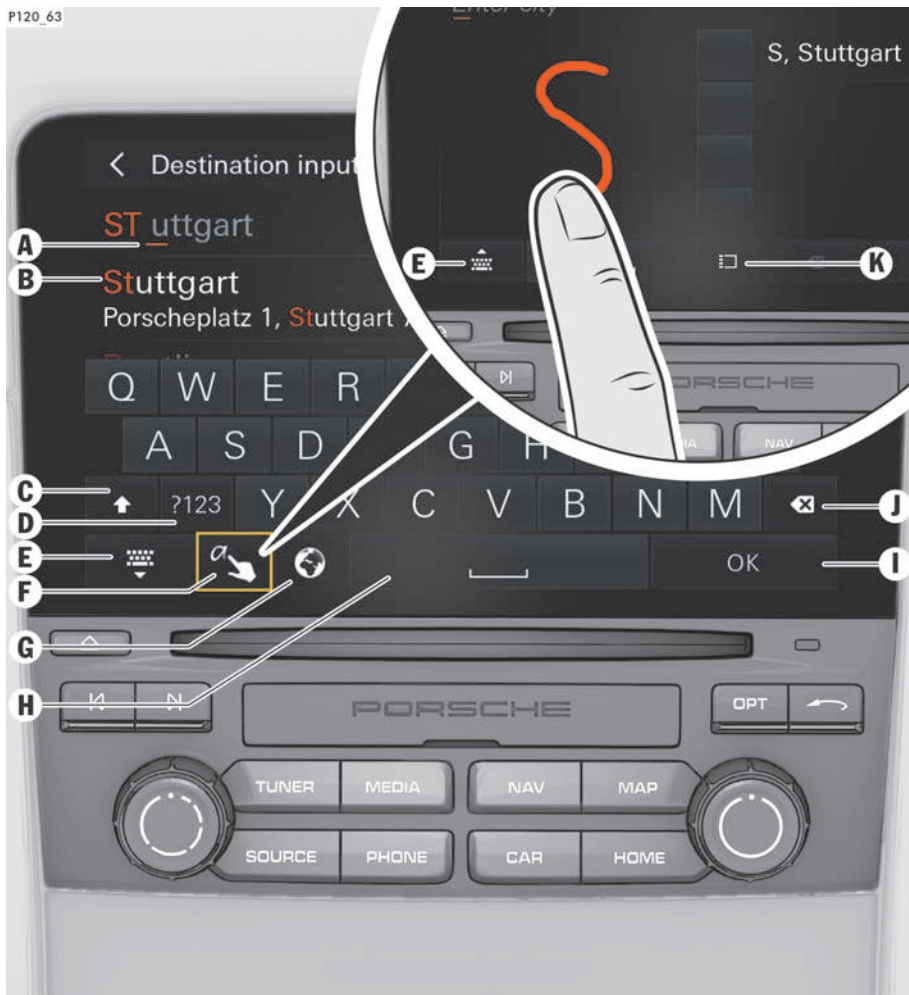


PCM Operating Principle

- A** Open main menu
- ▶ Press button (e.g. **TUNER**)
 - or –
 - Select function in main menu **HOME**.
- B** Rotary push button for PCM operation ▶ p. 179
- ▶ Turn rotary push button **B** to select function.
 - ▶ Press rotary push button **B** to confirm your selection.
- C** Touchscreen for PCM operation ▶ p. 178
- ▶ Tap (tap lightly with your finger)
 - ▶ Long press (touch and hold)
 - ▶ Scroll (swipe vertically)
 - ▶ Swipe (swipe horizontally)
 - ▶ Drag & drop (touch objects, drag them to wherever you want and let go)
 - ▶ Zoom (move two fingers apart or closer together)
- D** Open controller functions ▶ p. 178
- (if approach sensor is activated, simply move your hand closer to the PCM)
- E** Back button: Reverse last instruction, interrupt selection or go up a level in the menu
- F** Settings depending on main menu, sound settings
- G** Show other pages: View other pages by swiping horizontally

P110_62





Entering Text and Characters in the PCM


- A** Current cursor position ▷ p. 179
- B** List of suggestions ▷ p. 179
- C** Toggle between upper and lower case ▷ p. 179
- D** Toggle between entry of letters, numbers and special characters ▷ p. 179
- E** Show or hide keyboard ▷ p. 179
- F** Handwriting recognition (enter letters or characters using the touchscreen) ▷ p. 179
- G** Adapt keyboard (availability dependent on country) ▷ p. 179
- H** Insert space (handwriting recognition: Swipe finger across touchscreen from left to right) ▷ p. 179
- I** Confirm entry ▷ p. 179
- J** Delete entry (handwriting recognition: Swipe finger across touchscreen from right to left) ▷ p. 179
- K** Handwriting recognition: Show/hide alternative letters or characters ▷ p. 179

Practical Tips



On the following pages, you will find practical tips on the selected area of your vehicle.

Practical Tips

Air conditioning

Topic	Tip
Switching the upper ventilation panel on and off	In vehicles with 2-zone air conditioning, the upper ventilation panel can be switched on and off in the multi-function display under Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Air conditioning ▶ Ventilation field .
Automatically adjusting the fresh air supply depending on the air quality	In vehicles with 2-zone air conditioning, automatic air recirculation can be switched on and off in the multi-function display under Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Air conditioning ▶ Auto air circ.
Air-conditioning settings for lone drivers	<p>If you are travelling alone in the vehicle, it makes sense to use the driver's side air-conditioning settings for the entire vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press and hold button  on the air-conditioning control panel until SYNC appears in the air-conditioning display.


Connectivity

Topic	Tip
Opening the Device Manager	<p>The Device Manager centrally manages connections (e.g. connecting telephone or Bluetooth® audio players, connecting the PCM to an external WiFi hotspot, using Apple® CarPlay and the Porsche Connect App).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Select symbol  or  (depending on the connection status) in the footer of the PCM. <p>– or –</p> <p>PHONE button ▶ OPT button ▶ Device manager</p>
Establishing a data connection via a WiFi hotspot or mobile phone	<p>The PCM can also access a WiFi hotspot (e.g. public hotspot or the mobile phone's personal hotspot) to establish a data connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Set the PCM as required via PHONE button ▶ OPT button ▶ SET PHONE ▶ WiFi settings ▶ Use external data connection.


Multi-function steering wheel

Topic	Tip
Assigning the \diamond button of the multi-function sports steering wheel	<p>The \diamond button of the multi-function sports steering wheel can be individually assigned desired functions of the multi-function display and the PCM.</p> <p>Select the desired functions on the multi-function display: Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Steering wheel op. ▶ \diamond key ▶ PCM function or Cluster function</p>

Navigation

Topic	Tip
Finding or entering a destination	<p>You can enter or search for your desired destination using the Search or Online search function. The Search function accesses the PCM's internal database. Use the Online search function to search for destinations on the Internet.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press NAV button ▶ Search or Online search ▶ Enter search term (e.g. city, street, name) and select the desired entry from the list ▶ Start .
Speed limit display	<p>The speed limit display in the PCM can be enabled by pressing MAP button ▶ OPT button ▶ SET Map ▶ General settings ▶ Show speed limits.</p> <p>In addition, speed limits can also be shown in the lower status area of the multi-function display: Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Upper line ▶ Speed limit.</p>



Voice control

Topic	Tip
Activating voice control	<p>The  button on the left-hand control stalk on the steering wheel initiates different functions depending on the application:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Short press: Voice control of the PCM is activated. – Long press: Siri® voice recognition is activated (only in conjunction with Apple® CarPlay).
Voice control by the passenger	<p>The hands-free microphone for voice control is pointed towards the driver's side. Therefore, only the driver should use the voice control.</p>


Refuelling

Topic	Tip
Indication of filler flap location	The arrow in the fuel gauge points towards the side of the vehicle on which the filler flap is located. ▶ Refer to chapter “Instrument Panel” on page 125.

Phone

Topic	Tip
Supported Bluetooth® profiles	To view a list of profiles used by the mobile phone, press PHONE button ▶ OPT button ▶ SET PHONE ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Bluetooth devices ▶ Select relevant device ▶ Details . In addition, pay attention to the information in the mobile phone operating instructions.
Switching between two connected mobile phones	If a mobile phone is already connected to the PCM, a second mobile phone can also be connected to the PCM and the user can switch between the two mobile phones. ▶ PHONE button ▶ Select  or  in the headline.
Transferring contacts on a mobile phone to the PCM	Regardless of which mobile phone is connected or whether a SIM card is used, contacts can be transferred from a mobile phone that is in range of the PCM via Bluetooth®. ▶ PHONE button ▶ OPT ▶ SET PHONE ▶ Contacts ▶ Transfer contacts ▶ Select the mobile phone you wish to use for transferring contacts.

Central locking

Topic	Tip
When unlocking the vehicle, only one door is unlocked	The setting for locking and unlocking the doors has been changed. All doors can be opened irrespective of the selected setting. ▶ Press button  on the driver's key twice within 5 seconds. The setting can be changed on the multi-function display via Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Locking .

Topics

On the following pages you will find topics listed in alphabetical order.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

✓ Vehicles with PDK.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) maintains any selected speed between approx. 30 and 210 km/h (20 and 130 mph) when driving on open roads without you having to use the accelerator.

If a vehicle travelling ahead of you in the same lane is detected as driving slower than the selected speed, adaptive cruise control will automatically maintain a set distance from the vehicle in front.

Adaptive cruise control slows your vehicle down if the distance to the vehicle ahead becomes too short and accelerates your vehicle if the distance increases.

WARNING Lack of attention

The increased comfort offered by the adaptive cruise control must not induce you to take risks with your safety. The driver remains responsible when driving, e.g. keeping a safe distance or driving at an appropriate speed, regardless of the adaptive cruise control. The system is no substitute for the driver's attention.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Brake the vehicle immediately with the footbrake if the deceleration of the adaptive cruise control is not sufficient.
- ▶ Make sure that you can resume control of the vehicle at all times.

WARNING

Unsafe traffic situation and unfavourable road conditions

If the current situation does not permit driving safely at a constant speed at an adequate distance from the vehicle in front, use of the adaptive cruise control may lead to an accident.

- ▶ Do not use the adaptive cruise control in heavy traffic, in road works, in towns, on twisting roads or under unfavourable road conditions (e.g. wintry or wet conditions or varying road surfaces).

WARNING

Failure of adaptive cruise control to detect vehicles or objects

Adaptive cruise control will not detect stationary or slow-moving vehicles, pedestrians, objects on the road, oncoming vehicles in the same lane or cross traffic.

- ▶ Intervene yourself if necessary.
- ▶ Always keep the direction of travel in your field of view.

Radar sensor

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor located in the middle of the front apron (**arrow**).

8000_137



Fig. 1: Location of radar sensor

i Information

- ▶ Always keep the radar sensor clean and free of ice and snow to ensure that it is fully functional. For car care instructions:
- ▷ Refer to chapter "Care" on page 65.

WARNING

Impaired radar sensor vision

Radar sensor vision can be impaired by rain, snow, ice or heavy spray. Vehicles in front will not be detected properly or may not be detected at all.

- ▶ Do not use adaptive cruise control under these conditions.

Exceptions

Adaptive cruise control may be deactivated automatically if the radar sensor is very dirty or is covered in ice or by an obstacle, in unfavourable weather conditions (heavy rain) or when driving through tunnels.

A message indicating that ACC is not available appears on the multi-function display.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Operating principle of adaptive cruise control (ACC)

No vehicle detected in front – Open road driving

Adaptive cruise control regulates the speed of the vehicle. The set desired speed is maintained constantly.

Vehicle detected in front – Follow mode

If a vehicle travelling ahead of you in the same lane is detected as driving slower than the selected desired speed, adaptive cruise control will automatically maintain a set distance from the vehicle in front.

If the vehicle in front stops, adaptive cruise control will slow your vehicle down to a stop provided this is possible within the control limits of the system. Adaptive cruise control actively keeps the vehicle at a standstill.

If the vehicle in front drives off, automatic speed control and distance control can be resumed.

Overruling

The speed of the vehicle can be increased at any time by pressing the accelerator.

If the vehicle is travelling faster than the speed set by the adaptive cruise control (ACC), adaptive cruise control is deactivated.

A message indicating that ACC is inactive appears on the multi-function display. The desired stored speed is retained.

After the accelerator pedal is released, the ACC accelerates to the desired speed if there is no vehicle in front and controls the distance if there is a vehicle in front.

For information on ACC operating states:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating states when adaptive cruise control (ACC) is switched on” on page 34.

Operating adaptive cruise control (ACC)

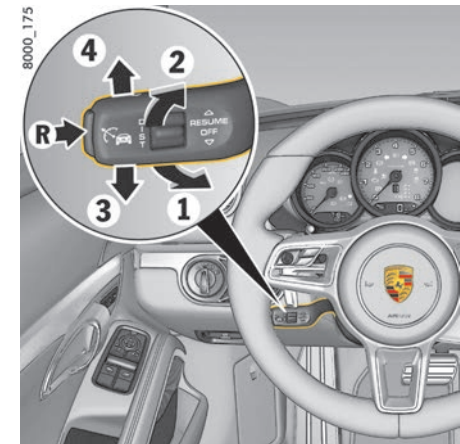


Fig. 2: Control stalk for adaptive cruise control (ACC)

- R Switching ACC on/off
- 1 Setting/increasing the desired speed
- 2 Reduce desired speed
- 3 Interrupt (OFF)
- 4 Return to set speed (RESUME)

i Information

You can intervene manually at any time by pressing the brake or accelerator.

Display of adaptive cruise control (ACC)

All important information, messages and warnings for adaptive cruise control are displayed on the multi-function display in the **ACC** main menu.






Fig. 3: ACC on the multi-function display

- A** Desired distance from the vehicle ahead
- B** Status display and desired speed
- C** Vehicle detected in front
- D** Current distance from vehicle in front
- E** Current speed of vehicle in front
- F** Bar display showing speed control range (0 – 210 km/h (0 – 130 mph))
- G** Current speed

When adaptive cruise control is switched on, the status display **B** appears at the bottom left of the multi-function display.

The status display **B** turns orange when adaptive cruise control is active.

The status display **B** is grey when adaptive cruise control is inactive.

-  If adaptive cruise control is switched on and no desired speed is stored, the cruise control symbol appears but the desired speed field remains blank.
-  If a desired speed is stored and no vehicle was detected in front, the cruise control symbol and the desired speed are displayed.
-  If a desired speed is stored and a vehicle was detected in front, a vehicle symbol and the desired speed are displayed.

Switching adaptive cruise control (ACC) on and off

Switching adaptive cruise control (ACC) on

- ▶ Press button **R** on the control stalk.
The grey status display appears on the multi-function display.
Adaptive cruise control is ready.

Switching adaptive cruise control (ACC) off

- ▶ Press button **R** on the control stalk.
A message that ACC is switched off appears on the multi-function display.
The stored desired speed is deleted.
The desired distance is reset to the default value.

Operating states when adaptive cruise control (ACC) is switched on

There are 3 possible operating states when adaptive cruise control is switched on.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) active

Adaptive cruise control automatically regulates the speed and distance from the vehicle in front. The status display **B** turns orange.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) ready

Cruise control and distance control is inactive after pressing the brakes or interrupting by pressing the control stalk down (position **3, OFF**). The stored desired speed and selected desired distance are retained.

The status display **B** turns grey.

For information on resuming cruise control and distance control:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Resuming cruise control and distance control – RESUME” on page 37.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) passive

Cruise control and distance control are inactive after the accelerator is pressed. A message indicating that ACC is in passive mode appears on the multi-function display.

The stored desired speed and selected desired distance are retained.

The status display **B** turns grey.

Adaptive cruise control is active again after you release the accelerator.

Setting and changing the desired speed

- ✓ Adaptive cruise control is switched on.
- ✓ Vehicle is moving.
- ✓ No stationary objects are detected in front.

Setting the desired speed

1. Press the control stalk on the steering wheel forward (Fig. 2 on page 33, **1**).
The current driving speed is stored as the desired speed, which will be maintained automatically (within the control range of approx. 30 to 210 km/h (20 to 130 mph)), and appears orange in status display **B**.
The red triangle **G** under the progress bar for the speed control range shows the speed of your vehicle.
2. Release the accelerator pedal.
The desired speed is maintained automatically unless a vehicle travelling in front is detected as driving slower than the desired speed.

i Information

If your vehicle is stopped and you press the control stalk forward (position **1**), a message that ACC cannot be activated when parked appears on the multi-function display.

If a stationary object was detected in front, a message also appears on the multi-function display.

Increasing the desired speed

- ▶ Briefly press the control stalk on the steering wheel forward (Fig. 2 on page 33, position **1**).
The desired speed is increased in steps of 1 km/h (1 mph).
– or –
Press the control stalk on the steering wheel forward and keep it pressed (position **1**).
The desired speed is increased in steps of 10 km/h (5 mph).
The status display **B** shows the new desired speed.
The red triangle **G** under the progress bar for the speed control range shows the speed of your vehicle.

Reducing the desired speed

- ▶ Briefly pull the control stalk on the steering wheel towards the steering wheel (Fig. 2 on page 33, position **2**).
The desired speed is decreased in steps of 1 km/h (1 mph).
– or –
Pull the control stalk on the steering wheel towards the steering wheel and keep it pulled (position **2**).
The desired speed is decreased in steps of 10 km/h (5 mph).
The status display **B** shows the new desired speed.
The red triangle **G** under the progress bar for the speed control range shows the speed of your vehicle.

Setting the desired distance

The desired distance from the vehicle in front can be set in four stages.

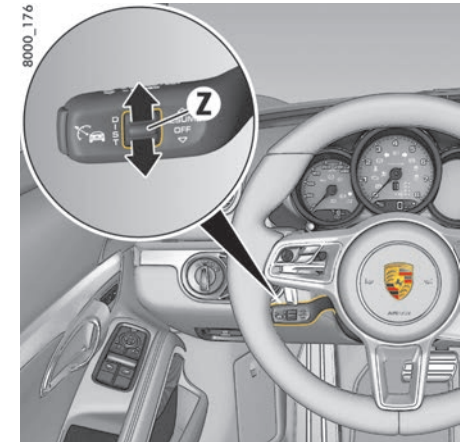


Fig. 4: Setting the desired distance

i Information

When you are setting the desired distance, the “ACC” main menu for adaptive cruise control is displayed temporarily on the multi-function display. When you first actuate the rocker switch **Z**, the “ACC” main menu appears without changing the desired distance.

i Information

The distance depends on the driving speed. The slower the vehicle is travelling, the shorter the distance and the faster the vehicle is travelling, the longer the distance.

A

Increasing the desired distance

- ▶ Press the rocker switch **Z** upwards.
More orange segments are shown in the desired distance display **A**.

B

C

D

Reducing the desired distance

- ▶ Press the rocker switch **Z** downwards.
Fewer orange segments are shown in the desired distance display **A**.

E

F

G

H

Displaying the distance from the vehicle in front

If a vehicle is detected in front, the vehicle symbol **C** appears on the multi-function display or in the status display **B**.

The grey area **D** shows the current distance from the vehicle in front (Fig. 3 on page 34).

I

J

K

L



Suitable for speedy driving in lines of traffic. The time headway is 1 second. This corresponds to approx. 33 metres at a speed of 120 km/h (75 mph).

M

N

O



Suitable for steady driving in lines of traffic. The time headway is 1.3 seconds. This corresponds to approx. 43 metres at a speed of 120 km/h (75 mph).

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W



Suitable for driving on country roads. The time headway is 2.3 seconds. This corresponds to approx. 77 metres at a speed of 120 km/h (75 mph).

X

Y

Z

Automatic braking to a standstill

If the vehicle in front stops, your vehicle will slow down and come to a stop within the control limits of the system if adaptive cruise control is active.

The indicator light **HOLD** on the instrument panel lights up.

The vehicle is actively held stationary.

For information on the HOLD function:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "HOLD Function: Drive-Off Assistant, Standstill Management" on page 122.



Information

Depending on the traffic flow, e.g. slow-moving traffic, stopping is initiated by a slow creeping phase, which ends with the vehicle at a standstill.



Information

When adaptive cruise control is operating normally or when the HOLD function is active, the brake pedal may feel different and you may hear hydraulic noises.

This behaviour is normal for the system. It is not a fault.

Driving off again

The vehicle can be driven off again after being stopped and speed and distance control will be resumed, depending on the operating state of the adaptive cruise control system.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) active

- ▶ Press the control stalk on the steering wheel up (position **4, RESUME**).
– or –
Press the accelerator pedal briefly.
The vehicle resumes driving automatically.



Information

Your vehicle will not drive off if the vehicle detected in front is stationary.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) ready

Automatic speed and distance control can only be resumed when your vehicle is moving.

1. Drive off normally.
2. Press the control stalk on the steering wheel up (position **4, RESUME**).
– or –
Set or change the desired speed.

Interrupting and resuming cruise control and distance control

Interrupting cruise control and distance control – OFF

- ▶ Press the brake pedal.
 - or –
 Press the control stalk on the steering wheel down (position **3**, **OFF**). Adaptive cruise control is inactive. The stored desired speed and selected desired distance are retained. The status display **B** changes from orange to grey.

Resuming cruise control and distance control – RESUME

- ▶ Push the control stalk on the steering wheel up (position **4**, **RESUME**). The vehicle accelerates to the stored desired speed unless a vehicle travelling in front is detected as driving slower than the desired speed, and the distance from this vehicle is less than the set desired distance. The status display **B** changes from grey to orange.
 - or –
 Press the control stalk on the steering wheel up and keep it pressed (position **4**, **RESUME**). The vehicle accelerates faster to the desired speed that was stored.

i Information

If speed and distance control was interrupted by moving the control stalk to position **3 (OFF)**, it can only be resumed when the vehicle is moving and no stationary objects are detected in front.

Warning messages



Fig. 5: Warning message on the multi-function display

Takeover prompt in active control mode (ACC active)

If adaptive cruise control detects that braking assistance is required on the part of the driver, a warning signal sounds and a warning message appears on the multi-function display.

! WARNING

Inadequate braking power during automatic braking by the adaptive cruise control

In this case, the braking power of the adaptive cruise control is not sufficient to prevent a collision.

- ▶ Brake immediately.

Exceptions to adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Adaptive cruise control is not available in the following cases:

- Ignition off
- PSM off
- Open driver's door and driver's seat belt not fastened
- Steering wheel at full lock, e.g. when parking or manoeuvring
- Activated electric parking brake
- Selector lever in **N**, **R** or **P**
- Uphill or downhill gradients of more than 20 %

If one of these exceptions occurs when adaptive cruise control is switched on, adaptive cruise control will be switched off.

A corresponding message will then appear on the multi-function display.

Traffic situations in which vehicles cannot be reliably detected

The radar sensor for adaptive cruise control scans a narrow, cone-shaped area in front of your vehicle. Detection can be limited or unreliable, depending on the traffic situation and the size of the vehicle in front. The system may brake too late or unexpectedly.

Stationary vehicles are not detected. The system cannot respond to stationary vehicles.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Slow down if necessary.

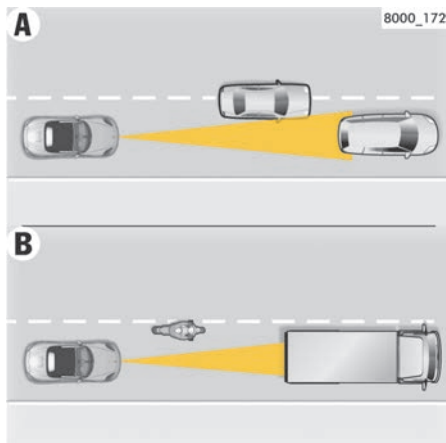


Fig. 6: Vehicles cutting in, narrow vehicles

A – Vehicles changing lanes/cutting in

If other vehicles are moving in and out of your lane, they will only be detected when they are fully in your lane.

B – Vehicles with a small cross-section/narrow vehicles

Narrow or small vehicles will not be detected or will be detected too late.

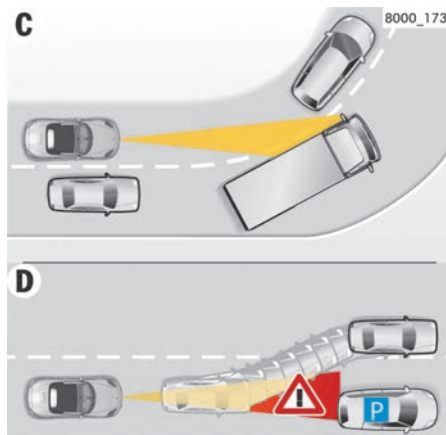


Fig. 7: Cornering and stationary vehicles

C – Driving into and out of bends

When driving into and out of bends, vehicles will not be detected or will be detected too late, or adaptive cruise control will react to vehicles in adjacent lanes.

D – Stationary vehicles

A stationary vehicle that appears suddenly in the detection field of the radar sensor, e.g. after a vehicle in front changes lanes, will not be detected by adaptive cruise control.



WARNING

Adaptive cruise control does not detect a stationary vehicle

Stationary vehicles are not detected by the radar sensor of the adaptive cruise control.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Slow down if necessary.

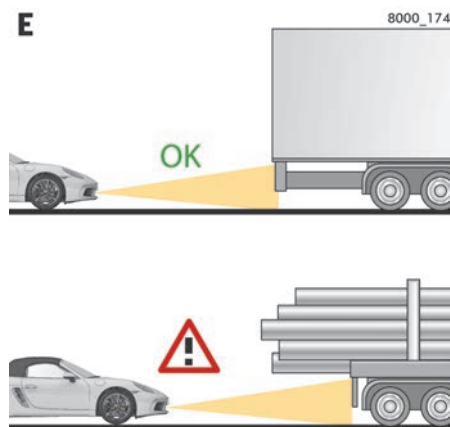


Fig. 8: Vehicles with large overhangs

E – Vehicles with large overhangs

The tail of the vehicle will not be detected correctly on vehicles with large overhangs, e.g. timber lorries.



WARNING

Tail of vehicle in front not detected correctly

If there is a vehicle in front with a long overhang, the radar sensor of the adaptive cruise control is not able to detect the tail of the vehicle or will misjudge the distance.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Slow down if necessary.

Porsche Active Safe (PAS)

The adaptive cruise control sensor is used for Porsche Active Safe (PAS) functions.

These include:

- **Brake system prefilling**

Prefilling of the brake system if the radar sensor detects that the vehicle is coming critically close to a moving obstacle in order to improve braking response.

- **Brake Assist**

In the event of an emergency braking operation where the pedal force is insufficient, brake assist provides the braking pressure necessary for maximum deceleration at all 4 wheels.

The activation threshold of the Brake Assist function is reduced if the sensor detects that the vehicle is coming critically close to a moving obstacle. The activation threshold of the Brake Assist is reduced in three stages, depending on how critical the danger situation is.

- **Targeted braking**

If the radar sensor detects that the vehicle is coming critically close to a moving obstacle and, at the same time, that the brakes are not being applied hard enough, brake pressure can be increased accordingly. The vehicle can be fully braked if necessary.

i Information

All Porsche Active Safe (PAS) functions are active at speeds of more than approx. 30 km/h (20 mph).

Latent warning (visual)



Fig. 9: Visual latent warning

If the vehicle is driving too close to the vehicle in front for a long time, a latent warning (yellow pictogram) appears on the multi-function display to warn the driver, in order to avoid a collision if the vehicle in front brakes.

- ▶ Maintain a greater distance from the vehicle in front if necessary.

Prewarning (visual and acoustic)



Fig. 10: Prewarning

If the radar sensor detects that the vehicle is coming critically close to and is very likely to collide with an obstacle moving in front, a visual and acoustic prewarning is emitted. In this dangerous situation, the driver can still prevent a collision by taking the appropriate action.

! WARNING

Insufficient distance

Risk of collision with the vehicle in front.

- ▶ Brake immediately.

Acute warning (visual, acoustic and braking jolt)

8020_22



Fig. 11: Prewarning

If the driver does not react to the prewarning by braking, this is quickly followed by an acute warning, which involves a braking jolt in addition to the visual and acoustic warning.

A braking jolt is initiated by means of a very rapid build-up of brake pressure in order to draw the driver's attention to the traffic situation.

In this dangerous situation, the driver can still prevent a collision by taking the appropriate action.



WARNING

Insufficient distance

Risk of collision with the vehicle in front.

- Brake immediately.

i Information

The situations described below lead to the assumption that the driver is driving carefully and the prewarning and acute warning functions are disabled:

- The driver is driving around tight bends.
- The driver is braking.
- The driver is accelerating sharply – this action is interpreted as an active driving request (e.g. overtaking).

Switching Porsche Active Safe (PAS) warnings on/off

The latent warning and prewarning functions are off as standard, whereas the acute warning function is active. To switch on the latent warning and prewarning on the multi-function display:

- Refer to chapter "Switching Porsche Active Safe (PAS) off and on" on page 266.

Air Conditioning System (Manual)

General information



Fig. 12: Air-conditioning control panel

The air quantity, air distribution and temperature can be set manually on the manual air-conditioning system.

Cooling function

The cooling function cools and dries the air.

i Information

- The cooling function may switch off briefly to ensure sufficient engine cooling if the engine is operating under extreme load. It switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 2 °C and cannot be switched on, even manually.
- The cooling function operates most effectively with the windows closed. If heat accumulates in the passenger compartment, briefly open the windows to ventilate the interior.
- Depending on the outside temperature and humidity, condensation can escape under the vehicle. This is quite normal and is not a defect.
- If the battery voltage is too low, the fresh-air blower and cooling function are restricted initially and then switched off.

Set temperature

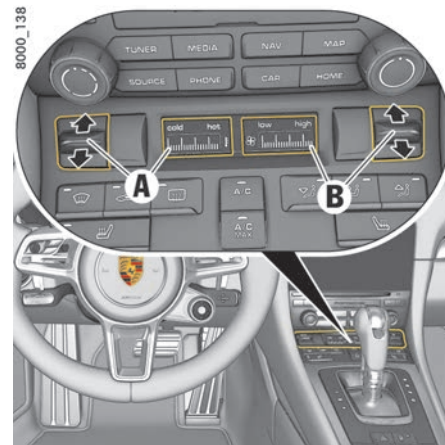



Fig. 13: Setting the temperature and air quantity

- A** Set temperature
- B** Setting air quantity

Increasing and decreasing temperature

- ▶ Push button **TEMP** up or down.
 - If **all bars** can be seen, the temperature is set to **maximum heat (hot)**.
 - If **no bars** can be seen, the temperature is set to **maximum coldness (cold)**.

A Setting air quantity

The selected air quantity is shown in a bar display next to button . The more bars that are displayed, the more air flows into the passenger compartment.

Increasing and decreasing air flow


- ▶ Push button  up or down.

If the air quantity was reduced so much that **OFF** appears on the air-conditioning display, the outside-air supply is interrupted and the air-conditioning system is switched off.

WARNING

Impaired vision with air quantity **OFF**

The windows can mist up if the air quantity setting is **OFF**.


- ▶ Press button  up (increase air quantity).


Setting air distribution




Fig. 14: Air distribution buttons

Set air distribution

- ✓ Air vents opened.
- ▶ Press button .

The air flows to the windscreen and the side windows.
- ▶ Press button .

The air flows from the central and side vents.
- ▶ Press button .

The air flows to the footwell.

The indicator light on the respective button comes on.

Adjusting air vents



Fig. 15: Adjusting air vents

Opening and closing air vents

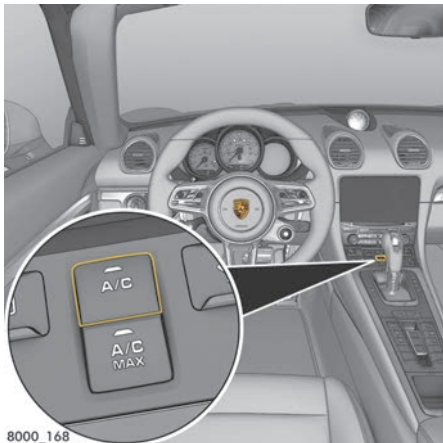
- ▶ Turn thumbwheel on the air vent clockwise or anti-clockwise.

Changing air flow direction

- ▶ Swivel vent vanes in the desired direction.

Switching cooling function on and off

If you wish to cool the passenger compartment to a temperature lower than the outside temperature, the cooling function must be activated.



8000_168

Fig. 16: Switching cooling function on and off

Switching cooling function on

- ▶ Press the **A/C** button.
The indicator light on the button lights up.
The cooling function is activated.

Switching cooling function off

The cooling function can be switched off, to save fuel, for example.

- ▶ Press the **A/C** button.
The indicator light on the button goes out.
The cooling function is deactivated.

Switching maximum cooling output on and off – A/C MAX mode

In A/C MAX mode, the passenger compartment is cooled at maximum power.



8000_169

Fig. 17: Activating maximum cooling output

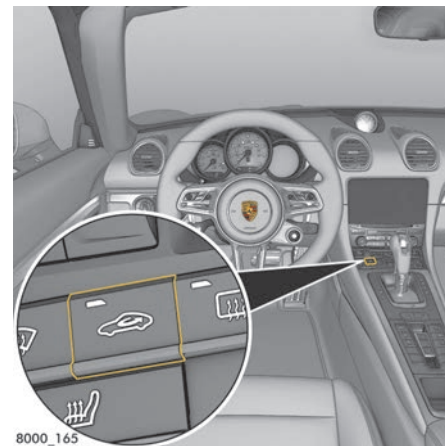
Switching on maximum cooling output

- ▶ Press the **A/C MAX** button.
The indicator light on the button lights up.

Switching off maximum cooling output

- ▶ Press button **A/C**.
The indicator light on the button goes out.

Switching air-recirculation mode on and off



8000_165

Fig. 18: Air-recirculation mode button


Switching on air-recirculation mode




WARNING

Impaired vision in air-recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the windows may mist up.

- ▶ Do not switch on air-recirculation mode for an extended period.
- ▶ Press button .
The indicator light on the button lights up.

Switching off air-recirculation mode

- ▶ Press the  button.
The indicator light on the button goes out.

i Information


If the cooling function is switched off manually or automatically, air-recirculation mode ends after approx. 3 minutes.

Defrosting windscreen

8000_164

Fig. 19: Defrost windscreen button

Switching defrost mode on

- ▶ Press button .
 - The indicator light on the button lights up.
 - The air flows to the windscreen and the front side windows.
 - The windscreen is demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.

Switching defrost mode off

- ▶ Press button .
 - The indicator light on the button goes out.

Airbag Systems

Choosing the right seat position

DANGER

Incorrect seat position or incorrectly stowed load

Airbag systems can perform their safety function only if all passengers are wearing seat belts and are sitting in the correct position. Objects and luggage must be stowed safely.

- ▶ **Always fasten seat belts.**
- ▶ Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects between the driver or passengers and the area into which the airbag inflates.
- ▶ Always hold the steering wheel by the outer rim.
- ▶ For airbags to give effective protection, they must be a certain distance from the driver or passengers.
Select a seat position that is not unnecessarily close to the airbags.
Do not lean against the inside of the doors (side airbag inflation area).
- ▶ Objects must not protrude out of the door storage compartments. Keep the door storage compartment closed while driving.
- ▶ Do not transport heavy objects on or in front of the seats.
- ▶ Do not place objects on top of the dashboard.
- ▶ Keep the glove box closed while driving.
- ▶ Always keep your feet in the footwell when driving. Do not put feet on the dashboard or the seat cushion.
- ▶ Share all the information in this section with your passengers.

Function

In conjunction with the seat belts, the airbags are a safety system designed to provide the vehicle occupants with maximum protection from injury in an accident.

Airbags protect the head, pelvis and upper body, whilst simultaneously damping the motion of the driver and passengers in the impact direction in the event of frontal impact or side impact.

The **front airbags** are installed under the padded steering wheel on the driver's side and in the dashboard on the passenger's side.

The **side airbags** are located on the side of the seat in the side pieces.

The **head airbags** are installed on the side in the door trim.

The relevant airbags are triggered depending on the angle and force of impact.

DANGER

Malfunction due to airbags that have been tampered with

Airbags that have been tampered with do not offer any protection. They may either not trigger or be triggered in an uncontrolled manner. Uncontrolled triggering can cause serious injuries.

- ▶ Do not modify the wiring or components of the airbag systems.
- ▶ Do not route any cables of additional electrical equipment in the vicinity of the airbag wiring harnesses.
- ▶ Do not attach any additional trim or stickers to the steering wheel or in the vicinity of the passenger airbag, side airbags or head airbag.
- ▶ Do not use protective seat covers.
- ▶ Do not remove airbag components.


DANGER

Already triggered airbag systems cannot be activated

Airbag systems can be triggered only once.

- ▶ Have triggered airbag systems replaced immediately.

Responding to the warning light

Faults are indicated by the red **airbag warning light**  in the tachometer.

- ▶ Consult a qualified specialist workshop in the following cases:
 - The warning light does not come on when the ignition is switched on.
 - or –
 - The warning light does not go out when the ignition is on.
 - or –
 - The warning light comes on while driving.

Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Switching off the passenger airbag

8000_42



Fig. 20: PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator

⚠ DANGER

Passenger airbag
switched off

If the passenger airbag remains switched off after removal of the child restraint system, it will not be triggered in an accident.

- ▶ Only switch off the passenger airbag if a child restraint system is fitted on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Switch the passenger airbag back on once the child restraint system has been removed.

⚠ DANGER

Failure or malfunction of
the passenger airbag

If the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator does not light up when the ignition is on and the passenger airbag has been switched off, there could be a fault in the system.

- ▶ Do not install any child restraint systems on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

The driver's key switch for switching off the passenger airbag, the **PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator** and the ISOFIX restraint system are only installed in certain equipment versions. They can be retrofitted.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Switching passenger airbag on and off – PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator" on page 84.

Alarm System

The alarm system monitors the following alarm contacts:

- Alarm contacts in doors, luggage compartment lids and headlights.
- Interior surveillance: Movement in the interior when the vehicle is locked, e.g. attempted theft after breaking a window.
- Inclination sensor (country-specific equipment: Tilting of the vehicle (e.g. attempt to tow the vehicle)).

If one of these alarm contacts is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for approx. 30 seconds and the hazard warning lights flash.

After a 5-second pause, the alarm is triggered again. This cycle is repeated up to 10 times (depending on the country).

i Information

Depending on the country, the alarm system is automatically activated 30 seconds after closing the last door or the luggage compartment lid if the driver's key is removed from the ignition lock. This is the case even if the vehicle has not been locked. The interior surveillance system and the inclination sensor are switched off. If a door or luggage compartment lid is opened, the alarm is triggered.

- ▶ Always lock the vehicle when leaving it.
- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

To deactivate the triggered alarm system:

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle **or** switch on the ignition.

Switching the alarm system on and off

- ▶ The alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked.
- ▶ The alarm system is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

i Information

If you unlock the vehicle with the emergency key in the door lock, you must switch the ignition on within 15 seconds of opening the door in order to prevent the alarm system from being triggered. The time it takes to trigger the alarm system differs from country to country.

Switching off a triggered alarm system

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle
– or –
Switch on the ignition.

Switching off interior surveillance and inclination sensor

If persons or animals are remaining in the locked vehicle or the vehicle is being transported on a train or ship, for example, the interior surveillance system and inclination sensor must be switched off temporarily.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Locking doors" on page 73.
- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

i Information

The interior surveillance system and inclination sensor remain switched off if the vehicle was locked automatically 30 seconds after unlocking because no door was opened.

Function indication

In vehicles without Porsche Entry & Drive, the locking condition is indicated by the light in the central locking button flashing at different intervals. In vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive, it is indicated by the indicator lights in the doors flashing at different intervals.

Alarm system is activated

The indicator lights flash rapidly when the vehicle is being locked, then flash in normal mode.

Alarm system is activated, interior surveillance and inclination sensor are switched off

The indicator lights flash rapidly while you are locking the vehicle, go out for 10 seconds and then flash in normal mode.

Faults in the central locking system and alarm system

The indicator lights come on for 10 seconds, flash briefly twice in succession for 20 seconds and then flash in normal mode.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Apple® CarPlay

Opening Apple® CarPlay in the PCM

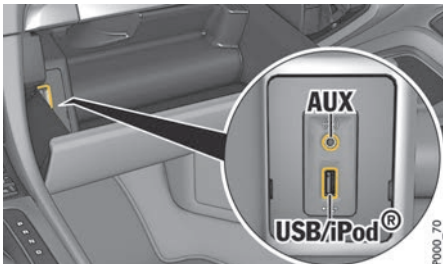


Fig. 21: USB port and equipment-dependent AUX port in the glove box

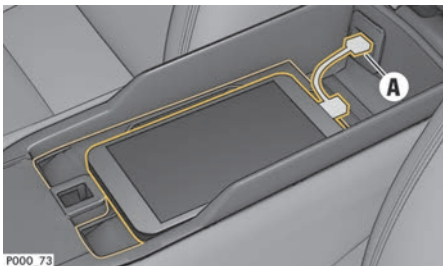



Fig. 22: USB port in centre console

- ✓ iPhone 5® or later, iOS® 7.1 or higher.
- ✓ Siri® and Apple® CarPlay have been enabled in the settings of the iPhone® you are using.

1. Connect iPhone® to the USB port in the centre console or in the glove box, depending on equipment (see Fig. 22).
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connecting an external device via USB or AUX” on page 182
2. Confirm that you wish to use Apple® CarPlay. Available apps are displayed.
3. **HOME** button ▶ **Menu**  ▶ **Apple CarPlay**

Information

- We recommend that you install the latest iOS® version.
- Only the apps on the iPhone® that are supported by Apple® CarPlay are displayed. For information on supported apps:
 - ▷ got to www.apple.com/ios/carplay.
- The displayed content and features of Apple® CarPlay are provided solely by the connected iPhone®.
- If you use Apple® CarPlay, you can only use the connected iPhone® for making calls. Mobile phones that are connected to the PCM via Bluetooth® are automatically disconnected. An inserted SIM card cannot be used for making calls while this app is in use.
- Some apps require an active data connection. You may incur additional charges, depending on your mobile phone tariff, and particularly if using abroad. The use of a flat-rate data plan is recommended.

Information

There is a USB port and – depending on equipment – a universal Audio (AUX) port in the glove box, and another USB port in the centre console. If a USB port is provided in the centre console, Apple® CarPlay can only be used via this port.


Information

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.

Operating Apple® CarPlay with the PCM

All available apps can be used via the touchscreen, the rotary push button and the Back button of the PCM.

- ▶ To open the main menu in **Apple CarPlay**, press the Home button  on the touchscreen of the PCM.

- ▶ To change to the main functions of the PCM, press the **HOME** button ▶ **Porsche**.
 - or –
 - Press any one-touch key (e.g. **TUNER**).

Operating Apple® CarPlay using Siri® voice recognition

Activating Siri®

- ✓ Siri® has been enabled in the settings of the iPhone® you are using.
- ✓ The ignition and PCM are switched on.
- ✓ No telephone call is in progress.
- ✓ Parking aid is not active.
- ✓ PCM voice control is not active.

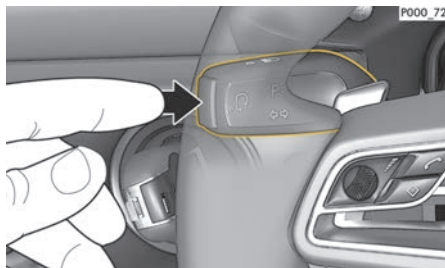




Fig. 23: Voice control button on the control stalk

1. Press and hold button  on the control stalk.


– or –

Press and hold the Home button  on the PCM touchscreen.


2. Say your desired voice command.

Deactivating Siri®

- ✓ Voice control is active and waiting for a voice command.

- ▶ Press button  on the control stalk. A fading acoustic signal sounds.
- or –
- Say the voice command **Cancel** or **End**.
- or –
- Press any button on the PCM.
- The relevant function opens.

Information

Briefly pressing button  on the control stalk activates PCM voice recognition.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Voice Control” on page 271.



Swapping between using the iPhone® as an iPod® and Apple® CarPlay

If the iPhone® is connected as an iPod® after it has been connected to the USB port in the centre console or the glove box, Apple® CarPlay cannot be used.

You can swap between using the iPhone® as an iPod® and Apple® CarPlay using the Device Manager.



Fig. 24: Opening the Device Manager

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).
2. Select **Smartphone link**.
3. Select the iPhone® you are using.
4. **Select Use as iPod**
– or –
Select **Use with Apple CarPlay**.

A Auto Start Stop Function

The engine stops automatically when the vehicle is stopped, e.g. at traffic lights or in a traffic jam, if all preconditions for Auto Stop are met. The engine can also stop automatically while the vehicle is being brought to a stop at walking pace. This way, the Auto Start Stop function helps to save fuel.

The ignition stays on even when the engine is switched off automatically. All safety functions are still available.

Preconditions for Auto Stop

- ✓ Auto Start Stop function is switched on.
- ✓ Luggage compartment lids are closed.
- ✓ Engine, transmission and air conditioning are at operating temperature.
- ✓ Vehicle has been driven at least at walking pace since the last Auto Stop.
- ✓ **Vehicles with PDK:**
Brake pedal pressed
Selector lever in position **D**, **N** or manually selected gear **1** or **2**.
Driver's door closed and selector lever in position **P**.
- ✓ **Vehicles with manual transmission:**
Seat belt fastened and driver's door closed.
Gear lever in neutral position and clutch pedal not pressed.

Vehicles with manual transmission: Auto Stop and Auto Start

Auto Stop

1. Brake the vehicle with the footbrake.
2. Put the gearshift lever in neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
The engine stops.

Auto Start

- ✓ Seat belt fastened.
- ✓ Driver's door closed.
- ▶ Press clutch pedal.
You can drive off normally.

Information

The engine will start automatically in certain situations, e.g. if the vehicle starts rolling or to ensure passenger comfort via air conditioning.

Vehicles with PDK: Auto Stop and Auto Start

Auto Stop

1. Brake the vehicle with the footbrake.
2. Keep the footbrake pressed.
– or –
While stationary, move selector lever to **P**.

Information

Quickly flooring the pressed brake pedal while the vehicle is stationary activates the HOLD function. This keeps Auto Stop activated on the vehicle without having to keep the brake pedal pressed.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "HOLD Function: Drive-Off Assistant, Standstill Management" on page 122.

The engine starts automatically when the accelerator is pressed or when an engine start is required.

Information

When adaptive cruise control (ACC) is switched on, the engine stops automatically when the vehicle is stationary if the vehicle in front also comes to a standstill.

The vehicle is held by the HOLD function.

Auto Start

- ✓ Selector lever in position **P**, **D**, **N** or manually selected gear **1** or **2**.
- ▶ Release the footbrake (not in selector-lever position **P**).
– or –
Press the accelerator.
– or –
Move the steering wheel.
– or –
Move PDK selector lever to position **R**.
You can drive off normally.

i Information

The engine will start automatically in certain situations, e.g. if the vehicle starts rolling or to ensure passenger comfort via air conditioning.

i Information

If adaptive cruise control (ACC) is active, the engine starts automatically if the vehicle in front drives off.

Reaction after leaving the vehicle (selector-lever position P selected)

If you leave the vehicle (driver's door open and footbrake released) after Auto Stop and with the PDK selector lever in position **P** – in order to open the garage door, for example – the engine will **not** start automatically.

If the driver enters the vehicle again at the latest 30 seconds after leaving it, (driver's door closed and brake actuated), Auto Start Stop mode is resumed.

If one of these preconditions is not met, the engine has to be started **manually**. A message stating that the engine has to be started manually appears on the multi-function display.

▷ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 278.

Reaction after leaving the vehicle (selector-lever position D, M or N selected)

If you leave the vehicle (driver's door open and footbrake released) after an Auto Stop with the PDK selector lever in position **D**, **M** or **N**, **Auto Start** will take place to remind the driver that the Auto Start Stop function is still active.

The electric parking brake is also locked in selector-lever position **D** or **M**.

The indicator light on switch **(P)** and the brake warning light **(!)** light up.

▷ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 278.

Exceptions for the Auto Start Stop Function

The Auto Start Stop function is not available in the following situations, for example:

- SPORT/SPORT PLUS mode is active
- PSM off or PSM in SPORT mode
- While manoeuvring
- Air conditioning "Maximum cooling output" is active
- "Windscreen defrost" function is active.
- At high altitudes

The Auto Start Stop function is available to a limited extent in the following situations, for example:

- Air conditioning or passenger compartment heating on a high setting.
- Low battery charge
- Uphill or downhill gradients
- Internal vehicle test procedures, e.g. automatic engine checks
- Very low or very high outside or battery temperature
- Stop & go traffic with repeated short stopping phases (depending on country)

i Information

If one of these situations arises after an Auto Stop, the engine can be restarted automatically.

Switching Auto Start Stop function on and off

Fig. 25: Auto Start Stop button

Switching off

- ▷ Press the **(A)** button.
The indicator light on the button lights up
The engine's Auto Stop function is disabled.

Switching on

- ▷ Press the **(A)** button.
The indicator light on the button goes out.
The engine stops automatically when the vehicle stops.

A

Auto Start Stop function display

B



Auto Stop and restart readiness

C

If the engine was stopped automatically by the Auto Start Stop function and Auto Start is possible, the indicator light on the multi-function display lights up green.

D

E

F

G



No Auto Stop or restart readiness

H

If Auto Stop is not possible or the engine cannot be restarted after an Auto Stop, the indicator light on the multi-function display lights up yellow when the vehicle is stationary.

I

J

K

This may have the following causes:

L

- At least one precondition for Auto Stop has not been met.

M

– or –

N

- At least one exception for Auto Start Stop is present.

O

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Preconditions for Auto Stop” on page 50.

P

Q

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Exceptions for the Auto Start Stop Function” on page 51.

R

Fault reporting

S

In the event of a fault, a message stating that Start Stop is deactivated appears on the multi-function display.

T

U

- ▶ Have the fault corrected at a specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

V

W

X

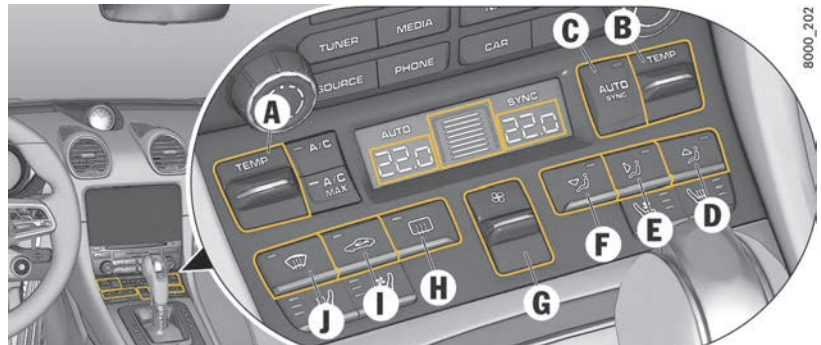
Y

Z

Automatically Controlled 2-Zone Air Conditioning

Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive information provided under “Automatically Controlled 2-Zone Air Conditioning”. Safety instructions and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
Switch on automatic climate control	Press button C .	54
Set temperature	Left vehicle side: Press button A up (warmer) or down (colder). Right vehicle side: Press button B up (warmer) or down (colder).	55
Set air quantity manually	Press button G up (more) or down (less).	55
Set air distribution manually	Air to windscreen and side windows: Press button D . Air to central and side vents: Press the E button. Air to footwell: Press button F .	55
Defrost windscreen	Press button J .	58
Switch on heated rear window and exterior mirror heating	Press button H .	121
Switch on air-recirculation mode manually	Press button I .	57

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

General information

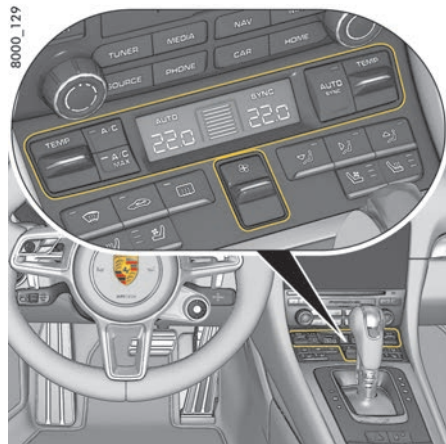


Fig. 26: Air-conditioning control panel

Depending on factors such as sunlight and air quality, the air-conditioning system adjusts the preset interior temperature, air distribution and air quantity fully automatically in automatic mode. The temperature can be set individually for the **left** and **right** air-conditioned areas.

Automatic mode is deactivated as soon as the settings are adjusted manually. In this case, automatic climate control still regulates the functions that have not been modified manually.

i Information

Additional air conditioning settings can be made on the multi-function display:

▶ Refer to chapter “Setting air conditioning” on page 269.

On vehicles with memory package, the air-conditioning settings can be stored on the respective driver’s key.

▶ Refer to chapter “Personal Settings” on page 188.

Keeping sensors free

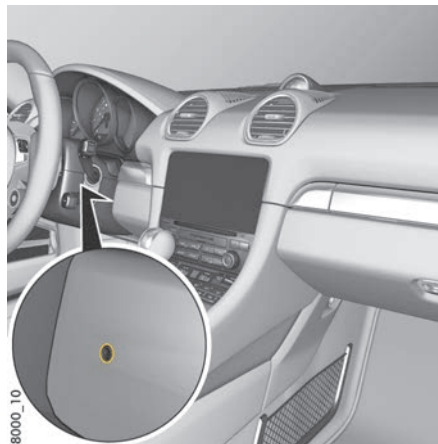


Fig. 27: Interior temperature sensor

To avoid impairing the performance of the air-conditioning system:

▶ Do not cover or tape over the interior temperature sensor for the air-conditioning system.

Cooling function

The cooling function cools and dries the air.

i Information

- The cooling function may switch off briefly to ensure sufficient engine cooling if the engine is operating under extreme load. It switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 2 °C and cannot be switched on, even manually.
- The cooling function operates most effectively with the windows closed. If heat accumulates in the passenger compartment, briefly open the windows to ventilate the interior.
- Setting the temperature temporarily to a lower or higher value does not cool or heat the passenger compartment to the desired temperature more quickly.
- Depending on the outside temperature and humidity, condensation can escape under the vehicle. This is quite normal and is not a defect.
- If the battery voltage is too low, the fresh-air blower and cooling function are restricted initially and then switched off.

Switching on automatic mode

The air-conditioned areas can be switched to automatic mode.

▶ Press button **AUTO SYNC** on the air-conditioning control panel.

The **AUTO** indicator on the air-conditioning display lights up.

Temperature, air quantity and distribution are automatically controlled.

i Information

If necessary, the automatic system can be controlled manually. The manual setting is retained until the appropriate function button is pressed again or until button **AUTO SYNC** is pressed.

Setting temperature

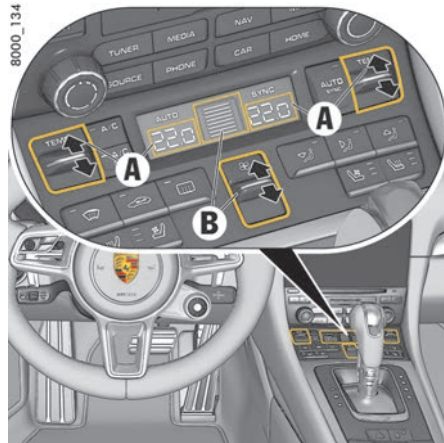


Fig. 28: Setting the temperature and air quantity

- A** Setting temperature of relevant air-conditioned area
- B** Setting air quantity

The temperature of each air-conditioned area can be adjusted individually between 16.5 °C and 29 °C.

Recommendation: 22 °C.

The selected temperature is shown on the display.

Increasing and decreasing temperature


- ▶ Press button **TEMP** for the relevant air-conditioned area up or down.

If **LO** or **HI** appears on the display, the system is operating at maximum cooling or heating power. Automatic mode is switched off.

i Information

- If one air-conditioned area is set to **LO** or **HI** when SYNC mode is activated, the other air-conditioned area is also set to **LO** or **HI**. Pressing button **AUTO SYNC** adopts the default temperature of 22 °C.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Applying driver’s A/C settings to the entire vehicle – SYNC mode” on page 58.

Setting air quantity

The selected air quantity is shown in a bar display above button . The more bars that are displayed, the more air flows into the passenger compartment.

Increasing and decreasing air flow

- ▶ Push button  up or down.


Pressing button **AUTO SYNC** switches back to automatic mode.

If the air quantity was reduced so much that **OFF** appears on the air-conditioning display, the outside-air supply is interrupted and the air-conditioning system is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired vision with air quantity **OFF**

The windows can mist up if the air quantity setting is **OFF**.




- ▶ Press button  up (increase air quantity).

Setting air distribution



Fig. 29: Air distribution buttons

Setting air distribution manually

- ✓ Air vents opened.
- ▶ Press button . The air flows to the windscreen and the side windows.
- ▶ Press button . The air flows from the central and side vents.
- ▶ Press button . The air flows to the footwell. The indicator light on the respective button comes on.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Cancelling manual air distribution

- ▶ Press the relevant air distribution button again. The indicator light in the corresponding button goes off.
- or –
- Press the **AUTO SYNC** button. Air quantity and distribution are automatically controlled.

Adjusting air vents



Fig. 30: Adjusting air vents

Opening and closing air vents

- ▶ Turn thumbwheel on the air vent clockwise or anti-clockwise.

Changing air flow direction

- ▶ Swivel vent vanes in the desired direction.

Switching the upper ventilation panel on and off

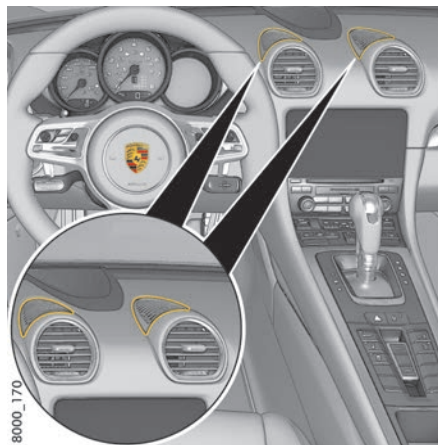


Fig. 31: Upper ventilation panel

The ventilation panel on top of the dashboard can be activated or deactivated separately. When the ventilation panel is switched off, the air flow in the passenger compartment is less direct. The air-conditioning system adjusts the air flow quantity automatically. For information on switching the upper ventilation panel on and off:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Setting air conditioning” on page 269.

Switching cooling function on and off

In automatic mode, the cooling function is always activated. The cooling output is controlled fully automatically.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Switching on automatic mode” on page 54.

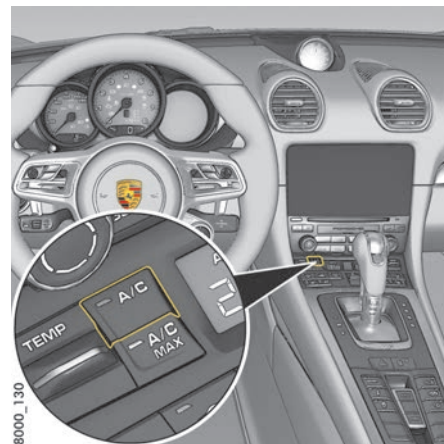


Fig. 32: Switching cooling function on and off

Switching cooling function on

- ▶ Press button **A/C**. The indicator light on the button lights up.
- or –
- Press the **AUTO SYNC** button. The cooling function is activated.

Switching cooling function off

- The cooling function can be switched off manually to save fuel, for example.
- ▶ Press the **A/C** button. The indicator light on the button goes out. The cooling function is deactivated.

Switching maximum cooling output on and off – A/C MAX mode

In A/C MAX mode, the passenger compartment is cooled at maximum power.

The interior temperature is not adjusted automatically.



Fig. 33: Activating maximum cooling output

Switching on maximum cooling output

- ▶ Press the **A/C MAX** button.
The indicator light on the button lights up.

Switching off maximum cooling output

- ▶ Press the **A/C MAX** button.
The indicator light on the button goes out.
- or –
Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.

Switching air-recirculation mode on and off




Fig. 34: Air-recirculation mode button

Switching on air-recirculation mode manually


⚠ WARNING

Impaired vision in manual air-recirculation mode

In extended manual air recirculation mode, the windows may mist up.

- ▶ Do not switch on manual air-recirculation mode for an extended period.
- ▶ Press the  button.
The indicator light on the button lights up.

Switching off air-recirculation mode manually

- ▶ Press the  button.
The indicator light on the button goes out.
- or –
Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.

i Information

If the cooling function is switched off manually or automatically, air-recirculation mode ends after approx. 3 minutes.

Setting automatic air-recirculation mode

In automatic air-recirculation mode, the outside-air supply is adjusted depending on the air quality. Air-recirculation mode is deactivated automatically at outside temperatures below approx. 5 °C to prevent the windows from misting. For information on setting automatic air-recirculation mode:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Setting air conditioning” on page 269.

i Information

The recommended operating mode is automatic air-recirculation mode (default setting).

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Applying driver's A/C settings to the entire vehicle – SYNC mode

In SYNC mode, the driver's A/C settings are applied to the entire vehicle.

Switching on SYNC mode

- ▶ Press and hold the **AUTO SYNC** button until **SYNC** appears in the air-conditioning display.
- ▶ Regulate the temperature on the driver's and passenger's side using the **TEMP** button on the driver's side.

Switching off SYNC mode

- ▶ Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.
 - or –
 - Press the **TEMP** button on the passenger's side.
- The **SYNC** indicator on the air-conditioning display goes out.

Adjusting air flow

There are three settings for adjusting the strength of the air flow in automatic mode.

For information on adjusting the strength of the air flow:


- ▷ Refer to chapter "Setting air conditioning" on page 269.

Defrosting windscreen




Fig. 35: Defrost windscreen button

Switching defrost mode on

- ▶ Press button . The indicator light on the button lights up. The air flows to the windscreen and the front side windows. The windscreen is demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.

Switching defrost mode off

- ▶ Press button . The indicator light on the button goes out.
- or –
- Press the **AUTO SYNC** button.

Battery

⚠ WARNING

Electric shock, short circuit or fire

Contact with live parts of the vehicle may result in an electric shock. Working on the vehicle's electrical system can cause a short circuit. Such short circuits can cause a fire.

- ▶ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.
- ▶ Ensure that tools or conductive jewellery (rings, necklaces, watch straps) do not come into contact with live parts of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Fire or explosion

Many vehicle fluids are highly flammable, e.g. fuel, engine oil and transmission oil. Fuel vapours can ignite and explode. Highly explosive detonating gas may be produced when charging lead-acid batteries.

- ▶ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.
- ▶ Avoid wiping the battery with a dry cloth in order to avoid static charging.
- ▶ Before touching the battery, discharge any static electricity by touching the vehicle.
- ▶ Do not smoke in the vicinity of the battery and do not use naked flame. Also beware of sparks, e.g. as a result of cable contact.
- ▶ Only work on the vehicle in the open or in well-ventilated spaces.

⚠ CAUTION

Corrosive electrolyte

Lead batteries contain highly caustic battery acid that can cause damage to the skin and clothing in the event of contact.

- ▶ Wear safety gloves and eye protection.
- ▶ To prevent acid from leaking out, do not tilt the battery.

NOTICE

Risk of short circuit, fire and damage to the generator and electronic control units.

- ▶ Have the battery removed and installed only by a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.

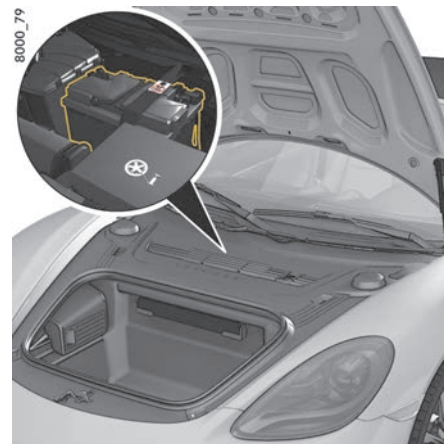


Fig. 36: Battery

The battery is located under the plastic cover in the front luggage compartment (Fig. 36).




For information on removing the plastic cover:

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tyre filling compressor" on page 141.
- ▶ When jump-lead starting, never connect the black negative cable directly to the battery. Always connect the black negative cable to the ground point **B** (Fig. 37 on page 61).

For information on jump-lead starting:

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Jump-Lead Starting" on page 129.

Responding to warning messages

If the battery charge is low, the symbol  or  appears on the multi-function display. The  symbol indicates a fault in the generator.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 278.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Heed safety symbols on the battery



Read operating instructions



Wear eye protection



Keep children away



Danger of explosion

While the battery is being charged, a highly explosive gas mixture is formed, so:



Fire, sparks, naked flames and smoking are prohibited

Avoid causing sparks and short circuits when handling cables and electrical equipment.



Danger of caustic burns

Battery acid is highly caustic, so: Wear safety gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery, or acid may spill from the venting aperture.

First aid

If acid splashes into your eye, rinse immediately for a few minutes with clean water.

See a doctor immediately.

If acid splashes onto your skin or clothing, neutralise immediately with soapsuds and rinse with plenty of water.

If you accidentally drink acid, consult a doctor immediately.



Disposal

Hand in the old battery at a battery collection point.



Never dispose of an old battery with domestic waste.

Battery care



Information

Keep the battery fully charged to prevent it from freezing. A discharged battery can freeze even at 0 °C, but a fully charged one only freezes at -40 °C.

What do I want to do?

Avoid running down the battery

What do I have to do?

- ▶ Switch off unneeded electrical loads on short trips.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition and pull out the driver's key when leaving the vehicle.
- ▶ Avoid using the PCM when the engine is not running.

What do I want to do?

Battery care

Prepare for winter driving

Charge the battery

What do I have to do?

- ▶ Keep battery surface clean and dry.
- ▶ Make sure that terminal clamps are firmly secured.
- ▶ Have the battery checked before the start of winter.
- ▶ Never attempt to charge a frozen or damaged battery.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Charging the battery" on page 61.

Laying up the vehicle

- ▶ If the vehicle is left for long periods in the garage or workshop, the doors and lids of the vehicle should be closed.
- ▶ Remove the driver's key or disconnect the battery if necessary. Switch off the ignition on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.



Information

When the battery is disconnected, the alarm system ceases to function. If the vehicle was locked before the battery was disconnected, the alarm will be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Alarm System" on page 47.

i Information

The battery still discharges even while your vehicle is not in use.

- ▶ To maintain its function, charge the battery approximately every 6 weeks or connect it to a trickle charger suitable for AGM (**Absorbent Glass Mat**) batteries. Porsche recommends Porsche Tequipment chargers and trickle chargers.
- ▶ Store a battery that has been removed in a dark, cool place that is not exposed to frost.

Charging the battery

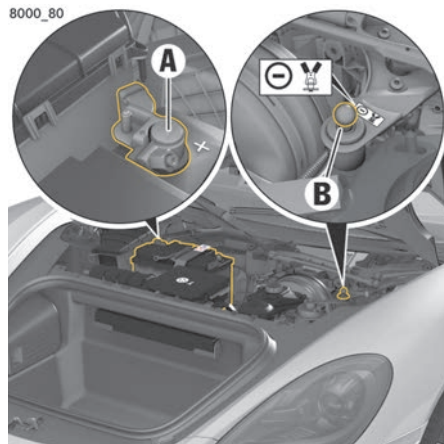


Fig. 37: Battery terminals

- A** Positive terminal +
- B** Ground point –

⚠ WARNING

Charging a frozen or damaged battery

If a frozen or damaged battery is charged, there is a danger of explosion and chemical burns.

- ▶ **Never** attempt to charge a frozen or damaged battery.
-
- ▶ Observe the instructions of the charger manufacturer.
 - ▶ Ensure adequate ventilation when charging the battery.
1. Open front luggage compartment lid.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid” on page 146.
 2. Remove cover in luggage compartment.
 - ▶ To remove the cover: Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit” on page 140.
 3. Connect the red positive cable of the charger to the positive terminal **A** of the battery.
 4. Connect the black negative cable of the charger to the ground point **B**.
 5. Switch on the charger.
 6. After charging the battery, first switch off the charger and then disconnect it.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Putting a vehicle into operation after battery replacement” on page 61.
 - ▶ For recommendations on a suitable charger: Contact your Porsche partner.

Replacing the battery

The details on the battery case cannot be used to identify a comparable battery that meets all the specific requirements of Porsche.

- ▶ Always use an AGM (**Absorbent Glass Mat**) battery, which satisfies the vehicle’s specific requirements, as a replacement. Porsche recommends using a genuine Porsche battery.
- ▶ Observe the disposal instructions for batteries.
- ▶ Have the battery removed and installed only by a qualified specialist workshop.
- ▶ After installation, new batteries must be initialised in the control unit. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Putting a vehicle into operation after battery replacement

After connecting the battery or charging a deeply discharged battery, carry out the following steps:

1. Store the end position of the power windows.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Storing end position of windows” on page 299.
2. Teach tyres in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “TPM menu (TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)” on page 162.

Brake Fluid

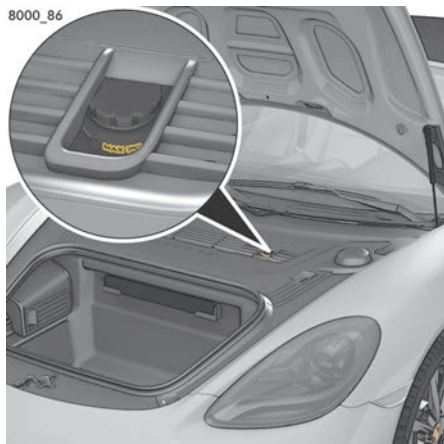



Fig. 38: Brake fluid reservoir

Responding to warning message

If the brake fluid level is too low, the symbol  appears on the instrument panel and a message is displayed on the multi-function display. In combination with a larger pedal travel, the illuminated symbol may also indicate a defect in the brake system.

- ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place and do not continue driving.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Checking the brake fluid level

- ▶ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir (Fig. 38). The fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX markings.
- ▶ Have the brake fluid topped up if the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking: Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Changing brake fluid

Regular checking and changing the brake fluid is part of servicing.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Before driving on race circuits” on page 15.

Brakes

Electric parking brake

The electric parking brake acts on the rear wheels and serves to secure the stationary vehicle.

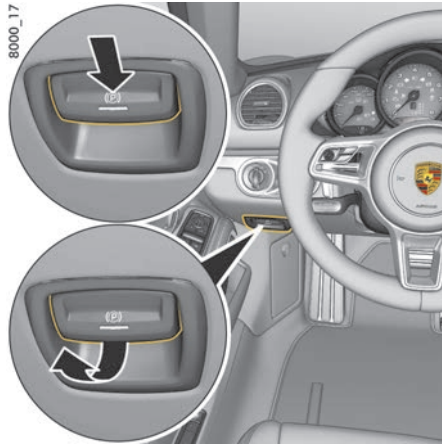


Fig. 39: Electric parking brake switch

Applying the parking brake

- ▶ Press the (P) switch.
The indicator light on switch (P) and the brake warning light (!) light up.
- For information on warning and indicator lights:
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Instrument Panel” on page 125.

Releasing the parking brake manually

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- 1. Press the brake pedal.
- 2. Pull switch (P).
The brake warning light (!) goes out.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

It is still possible to drive off normally even though the parking brake is on.

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ✓ Driver's door closed.
- ✓ Driver's seat belt fastened.

The electric parking brake detects the driver's intention to drive off and releases automatically. If one of these prerequisites is not satisfied, the electric parking brake will not be released automatically when the driver attempts to drive off. A message appears on the multi-function display. The brake warning light (!) and the indicator light on switch (P) flash.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Automatic engagement of the parking brake

- ✓ Vehicles with PDK
- The electric parking brake engages if selector-lever position **D**, **R** or **M** is selected when the vehicle is stationary and the driver's door is opened.
- The indicator light on switch (P) and the brake warning light (!) in the instrument panel come on.
- For information on warning and indicator lights:
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Instrument Panel” on page 125.

i Information

Automatic engagement of the parking brake can be overridden manually:

- ▶ Pull switch (P).
The parking brake remains released.
- If engagement of the electric parking brake is overridden, the function is only available after the door has been opened again.

Activating the emergency braking function

If the vehicle cannot be stopped by conventional braking, you can decelerate sharply and stop the vehicle using the emergency parking brake.

- ▶ Press and hold switch (P).
The brake warning light (!) and the indicator light on switch (P) flash.

To deactivate the emergency braking function:

- ▶ Release switch (P).

⚠ WARNING

Severe deceleration

Emergency braking takes place with very high braking power. The following traffic may be endangered and control over the vehicle may be lost.

- ▶ Only use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation.
- ▶ Do not use the emergency braking function to stop the vehicle when driving normally.

Responding to warning message

If the electric parking brake could not be applied fully on the stationary vehicle, the indicator light on switch (P) and the brake warning light (!) flash.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Footbrake

WARNING

Blocked pedals

Unsuitable or improperly secured floor mats or objects can restrict pedal travel or hinder pedal operation.

- ▶ Do not obstruct the pedal travel with floor mats or other objects.

WARNING

No brake force boosting

The brake booster is ready for operation only while the engine is running. If the engine is switched off or there is a defect in the brake booster, much greater force has to be applied to the pedal when braking.

- ▶ Vehicles with defective brakes must not be towed.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Towing and Tow-Starting” on page 249.

WARNING

Water film on the brake disc

In heavy rain, while driving through water or after leaving a car wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased pressure may be required.

- ▶ Keep further back from the vehicle in front and “dry” the brakes by applying them at intervals. Make sure that the traffic behind you is not affected.

WARNING

Reduced braking action

After a long drive over salted or gritted roads, a coating may form on the brake discs and pads that significantly reduces friction and therefore also braking effect.

The brake discs will unavoidably start to corrode if your vehicle is parked for an extended period. The brakes will tend to “judder” as a result.

- ▶ To prevent corrosion of the brake discs, “brake them dry” before parking the car (not on cars with Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake).
- ▶ If braking comfort is noticeably impaired, it is recommend that you have the brake system checked by experts. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

- ▶ To relieve the brake system on downhill stretches, change down to a lower gear in good time (engine braking). If engine braking is insufficient on downhill slopes, operate the footbrake at intervals. Continuous braking overheats the brakes and reduces the braking effect.

For information on brake fluid and checking the brake fluid level:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Brake Fluid” on page 62.


Brake pads and brake discs

Wear on the brake pads and brake discs depends to a great extent on the driving style and the conditions of use and therefore cannot be expressed in actual miles on the road.

The high-performance brake system is designed for optimal braking effect at all speeds and temperatures.

Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (e.g. temperature and humidity) can therefore cause the brakes to squeal.

Responding to warning message

If the wear limit of the brake pads is reached, a warning message  is displayed.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.
- ▶ Have brake pads replaced immediately. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)

The high-performance brake system is designed for optimal braking effect at all speeds and temperatures.

Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (e.g. temperature and humidity) can therefore cause the brakes to squeal.

Wear on different components of the brake system, e.g. brake pads or brake discs, depends to a great extent on the individual driving style and the conditions of use and therefore cannot be expressed in actual miles on the road.

The values communicated by Porsche are based on normal operation adapted to traffic. Wear increases considerably when the vehicle is driven on race tracks or as a result of aggressive driving.

- ▶ Before driving your vehicle in this way, ask your Porsche partner about currently applicable guidelines.

Care

⚠ WARNING

Water film on brake discs

After leaving a car wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased foot pressure may be required.

- ▶ Check the brakes after washing the vehicle.
- ▶ For this reason, keep further back from the vehicle in front and "dry" the brakes by applying them at intervals. Make sure that the traffic behind you is not affected.

i Information

Regular and skilled care helps to maintain the value of your Porsche and can be a precondition for the upholding of claims under the vehicle warranty. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

- ▶ Follow the instructions for use on the packaging of care products.
- ▶ Keep care products out of reach of children.
- ▶ Dispose of care products in the correct manner.

To ensure that the vehicle's condition is expertly checked and that the guarantee remains valid for the full period: Contact your Porsche partner. The Porsche partner will issue a Condition Report and also certify this under "Long-life Guarantee Condition Report" in the "Warranty & Maintenance" booklet.

NOTICE

High-pressure cleaners and steam cleaners can damage the following components:

- Convertible top (Boxster)
- Tyres
- Logos, emblems, decorative foils
- Painted surfaces
- Components and electrical components in the engine compartment/technical equipment space
- ParkAssist sensors
- Radar sensor for adaptive cruise control (ACC)
- Reversing camera
- Wiper blades
- ▶ Always read the operating instructions provided by the equipment manufacturer.
- ▶ Do not use high-pressure cleaners or steam cleaners to clean decorative film.
- ▶ Always observe a minimum distance of 50 cm during cleaning.
- ▶ Never use high-pressure cleaners or steam cleaners with a round-jet nozzle. A high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner fitted with a round-jet nozzle will damage your vehicle. The tyres are particularly susceptible to damage.
- ▶ Do not point the cleaning jet directly at any of the aforementioned components.
- ▶ Before working in the engine compartment, always switch the engine off and let it cool sufficiently.
- ▶ Never point the cleaning jet directly at openings, e.g. spark plug shafts and air cleaner housing or at the air filter. Cover the openings before cleaning.

NOTICE

When cleaning vehicles equipped with Porsche Entry & Drive, the luggage compartment lid may inadvertently open and water may get into the luggage compartment.

- ▶ When cleaning the vehicle, keep the driver's key outside the range of the luggage compartment lid sensor.

Washing the vehicle

The best protection for the vehicle against the damaging effects of the environment is frequent washing and preservation. The longer road salt, road dust, industrial dust, insect remains, bird excrement and tree exudations (e.g. resin, pollen) etc. are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more harmful their effect.

No vehicle or convertible top is absolutely leak-proof. Water can sometimes leak into the passenger compartment when cleaning the vehicle/convertible top.

Observe the following points in order to ensure that the vehicle is washed thoroughly without damaging the paintwork:

- ▶ The underside of the vehicle should be thoroughly washed at the end of the gritting season at the latest.
- ▶ Wash the vehicle only at sites provided for this purpose to prevent soot, grease, oil and heavy metals from entering the environment.
- ▶ Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body is hot.
- ▶ If washing by hand, use a car shampoo, plenty of water and a soft sponge or washing brush. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

- ▶ To start washing the vehicle, wet the paintwork thoroughly and rinse the heavy dirt off.
- ▶ After washing the vehicle, rinse it thoroughly with water and rub it dry with chamois-leather. Do not use the same chamois for rubbing dry as you use for cleaning the windscreen and windows.

Cleaning in car washes

NOTICE

Car washes may damage optional add-on parts or parts that project beyond the contours of the vehicle.

- ▶ Please consult the car wash operator before using automatic car washes.

See the following table to ensure that the vehicle is washed safely and carefully in the car wash:

Risk	What must be observed?
Damage to the convertible-top fabric (Boxster)	▶ No hot wax treatment.
Water gets into the passenger compartment through a lowered window (Boxster)	▶ Do not switch off the ignition. – or – ▶ Lock the vehicle.
Windscreen wipers may start moving and become damaged in the car wash	▶ Switch off the windscreen and rear window wipers. ▶ Do not operate headlight cleaning system in car washes.

Risk	What must be observed?
Damage to external parts	▶ Fold in exterior mirrors. ▶ Retract the extended rear wing.
Damage to wheels	▶ Guide rail of the car wash is sufficiently dimensioned. The wider the rim and the lower the tyre height, the greater the risk of damage.
Scratches on high-gloss or silk-gloss wheels	▶ Do not clean with the wheel-cleaning brushes in the car wash.

Cleaning the convertible top (Boxster)

NOTICE

The convertible top may be damaged by the cleaning jet of the high-pressure cleaner, unsuitable car washes or by the hot wax treatment.

- ▶ Do not clean the convertible top with high-pressure cleaning equipment.
- ▶ Use car washes with a wash programme for cabriolet vehicles.
- ▶ No hot wax treatment.

Observe the following for correct care and cleaning:

- ▶ Do not wash the convertible top every time you wash the vehicle. Normally, rinsing the convertible top with clean water is sufficient.
- ▶ Never remove snow and ice with sharp-edged objects.
- ▶ Brush dust off the convertible top in the direction of the weave using a soft brush.
- ▶ Only if there is heavy dirt, moisten the convertible top with lukewarm water and a washing shampoo & convertible-top cleaner and rub gently using a sponge or soft brush.
- ▶ Rinse the washing shampoo & convertible-top cleaner thoroughly off the convertible top with clean water. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ After washing, treat the convertible-top covering at least once a year with a convertible-top care product. Do not allow the convertible-top care product to come into contact with paint or glass. If it does come into contact with paint, remove it immediately.
- ▶ If there is leakage in the convertible-top cover or at its seams and folds, a special convertible-top care product can be used. Please note the information on the containers. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Remove bird excrement immediately. The acid this contains makes the rubber swell, and the convertible top will start to leak.
- ▶ Open the convertible top and convertible-top element only when completely dry to prevent stains and abrasion damage.
- ▶ Remove spots from the convertible-top covering by rubbing carefully with a soft rubber sponge.

Caring for paintwork

NOTICE

Grains of dirt on the paint surface can damage the paintwork if not cared for properly.

- ▶ Do not wipe dust off with a dry cloth.

NOTICE

The matt effect of components may be lost if not cared for properly.

- ▶ Do **not** treat components painted in a matt effect with preservatives or polishes.

Preserving paintwork

The paint surface becomes dull over time due to weathering and therefore should be preserved regularly with paint preservative after the vehicle is washed. This keeps the paint shiny and elastic. Dirt is prevented from adhering to the paint surface and industrial dust is prevented from penetrating the paint.

Polishing the paintwork

Only when the original shine can no longer be obtained using preservatives should paint polish be used to clean the paint. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

Removing spots and stains

Remove tar spatters, traces of oil, insects, etc. immediately using a suitable cleaning agent and carefully wash the area afterwards as they may discolour the paint following prolonged exposure. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

Repairing minor paint damage

- ▶ Have minor paint damage (cracks, scratches or stone damage) repaired immediately **before** corrosion begins. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

If traces of corrosion have already formed, these must be thoroughly removed. An anti-corrosion primer must then be applied to these spots, followed by top-coat paint.

Paint data can be found on the vehicle data carrier.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Vehicle identification data" on page 306.

Cleaning windows

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Wiper Blades" on page 304.

Information

The front side windows have a water-repellent (hydrophobic) coating, which prevents soiling of the windows. This coating is subject to natural wear and can be renewed.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Observe the following for correct cleaning:

- ▶ Clean all windows regularly, inside and out, with window cleaner. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Do not use the same chamois for painted surfaces and for drying the windows. Preservative residues could reduce transparency.
- ▶ Remove insect residues with insect remover. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

Repairing the underbody protection

WARNING

Combustible materials close to the exhaust system

Additional rust protection agent or undersealing in the area of the exhaust system can become too hot when driving and catch fire.

- ▶ Do not apply additional undersealing or rust protection agent on or near the exhaust manifolds, exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields.

The underside of the vehicle is lastingly protected against chemical and mechanical effects.

Damage to the protective coating while driving cannot be ruled out.

- ▶ Have the underside of the vehicle inspected at regular intervals by an authorised Porsche dealer and the protective coating restored as necessary. Contact your Porsche partner.

Cleaning decorative film

NOTICE

Risk of damage if the decorative film peels off during cleaning.

- ▶ Do not use polish or hot wax.
- ▶ Do not use high-pressure cleaners or steam cleaners.
- ▶ Use a soft sponge, neutral soap and plenty of water.

Cleaning headlights, lights, plastic components and surfaces, radar sensor for adaptive cruise control and vehicle cameras

NOTICE

Cleaning agents could seep into controls or switches, for example, and damage them. Unsuitable cleaning agents can damage the plastic surface.

- ▶ Do not spray water and interior window cleaner directly onto the interior plastic components.
- ▶ Use **only** clean water and a little dishwashing liquid or interior window cleaner to clean headlights, lights, plastic components and surfaces, radar sensor for adaptive cruise control and vehicle cameras. Use a soft sponge or a soft, lint-free cloth for this purpose.
- ▶ Never use other chemical cleaning agents or solvents.

Caring for wheels

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agent film on brake discs

If cleaning agent (e.g. rim cleaner) comes into contact with the brake discs, the film that forms on the brake discs may reduce the braking effect.

- ▶ Make sure that no cleaning agent comes into contact with the brake discs.
- ▶ If cleaning agent has come into contact with the brake discs, clean the brake discs thoroughly with a strong jet of water.
- ▶ Paying attention to any road users behind you, dry the brake discs by applying the brakes.

Metal particles (such as brass or copper in brake dust) must not remain too long on alloy wheels. Contact corrosion can cause pitting.

Cleaners with an oxide-removing effect or wrong pH value, as are commonly used for other metals, as well as mechanical tools and products, will damage the surface and are therefore unsuitable.

- ▶ Use only acid-free cleaners for alloy wheels (pH value between 4 and 10). Products with the wrong pH value can destroy the surface of the wheels. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ If possible, wash the wheels every two weeks with a sponge or washing brush. If the wheels are exposed to road salt, grit or industrial dust, weekly cleaning is necessary.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Cleaning in car washes" on page 66.

Cleaning door, roof, convertible top, lids and window seals

NOTICE

The lubricant coating on the inner door seals may be damaged by unsuitable cleaning and care agents.

- ▶ Do not use any chemical cleaning agents or solvents.
- ▶ Do not use any preservative agents.

Observe the following for correct cleaning:

- ▶ Wash dirt (e.g. abrasion, dust, road salt and grit) from all seals regularly using warm soapy water.
- ▶ If there is a risk of frost, protect the outer door seals and the lid and flap seals against freezing into place with a suitable care product.

Caring for leather

NOTICE

Unsuitable cleaning and care agents and inappropriate treatment may damage the leather.

- ▶ Do not use caustic cleaning agents or hard cleaning aids.
- ▶ Ensure that perforated leather does not get wet on the reverse side.
- ▶ Remove any drops of water immediately from the leather.

Observe the following for correct care and cleaning:

- ▶ Clean all types of leather regularly to remove fine dust using a soft, damp, white woollen cloth or a commercially available microfibre cloth.
- ▶ Remove heavy contamination (**not** water or moisture stains) with a leather cleaning agent. Please note the instructions for use on the containers. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Treat cleaned leather only with a leather care product. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

Cleaning seats with seat ventilation

Stains resulting from rainwater or moisture may occur on the perforated leather of the seats.

Removing water and moisture stains

- ✓ Seat heating and seat ventilation is switched off.
 - ✓ No direct sunlight is available.
1. Blot the entire seat and backrest surface using a clean, absorbent sponge and distilled water. Make sure that the perforated leather does not get wet on its reverse side.
 2. Allow the seat covering to dry completely at room temperature out of direct sunlight. Do not dry the seat covering by switching on the seat heating and seat ventilation.
 3. Once dry, wipe the seat covering with a dry, lint-free cloth.

Cleaning carpet, floor mats



WARNING

Blocked pedals

Unsuitable or improperly secured floor mats can restrict pedal travel or interfere with pedal operation.

- ▶ Secure floor mats properly – do not place them loosely on the floor.

Observe the following for correct cleaning:

- ▶ Use a vacuum cleaner or a brush (not too soft) for cleaning.
- ▶ Heavy dirt and stains can be removed with a stain remover. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

To protect carpets, the Porsche range of accessories includes floor mats in the correct size and with the appropriate fastening.

Cleaning airbag covers



DANGER

Improper cleaning

Unsuitable cleaning and care agents may penetrate the airbag system and improper handling may damage the airbag system. In the event of an accident, the airbag systems may not be triggered.

- ▶ Do not make any modifications whatsoever to individual components, such as the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard, front seats and door panels.
- ▶ Do not use cleaning agents or other liquids in the area of the airbags.

Cleaning fabric linings

Fabric linings on pillars, roofliner and roll-up sun visors, etc. must be cleaned using only suitable cleaning agents, a suitable dry foam and a soft brush.

Alcantara® care

Do not use leather care products to clean Alcantara®. For regular care, it is sufficient to clean the cover with a soft brush. Strong abrasion or rubbing when cleaning will produce a lasting change to the surface.

- ▶ In the case of light soiling, wet a soft cloth with water or a neutral soap solution and wipe off the dirt.
- ▶ If it is heavily soiled, wet a soft cloth with lukewarm water or thinned white spirit and dab the dirt from the outside in.

Cleaning the seat belts

Observe the following for correct cleaning:

- ▶ Use mild detergent for soiled belts.
- ▶ When drying, avoid direct sunlight.
- ▶ Only use suitable cleaning agents.
- ▶ Do not tint or bleach the belts. The belt fabric could be weakened, thus affecting safety.

Cleaning the PCM (Porsche Communication Management)

NOTICE

Unsuitable cleaning and care agents may penetrate the PCM and improper handling may damage the PCM.

- ▶ Do not use solvents such as methylated spirits, thinner, petrol, acetone, alcohol (ethanol, methanol or isopropyl alcohol) or even scouring agents to clean the PCM.
- ▶ Do not spray cleaning agents or other liquids directly onto the PCM.
- ▶ Wipe the screen carefully using a damp cloth.

Observe the following for correct cleaning:

- ▶ The screen is susceptible to scratching. From time to time, clean the PCM carefully with a dry, clean and soft cloth (microfibre cloth) or a cleaning brush.
When cleaning, do not exert undue pressure on the surface.
- ▶ Remove fingerprints with a slightly damp cloth or a mild cleaning agent.

Laying up a vehicle

If the vehicle is to be laid up for a longer period of time: Contact your Porsche partner. They will be glad to give you information and advice about the necessary measures, e.g. corrosion prevention, care, maintenance and storage.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 59.

For information on locking the vehicle when the battery is disconnected:

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Performing emergency door locking" on page 77.

Central Locking

Brief overview – opening and locking doors from outside

This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided under “Central locking system”. Safety instructions and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



Fig. 40: Driver's key

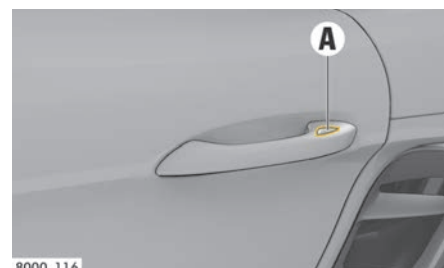






Fig. 41: Porsche Entry & Drive

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	What happens?	Page
Unlock	With driver's key: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press the  button on the driver's key. With Porsche Entry & Drive: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Grip the door handle fully. 	The hazard warning lights flash once. The doors can be opened.	72
Lock	With driver's key: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press the  button on the driver's key. With Porsche Entry & Drive: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Touch proximity sensor A on the door handle. 	The hazard warning lights flash twice. The doors are locked, but can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener. Vehicles with interior surveillance: The doors cannot be opened from inside by pulling the door opener (SAFELOCK).	73
Lock if persons/animals are remaining in vehicle on vehicles with interior surveillance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Deactivating SAFELOCK and – switch off the alarm system's interior surveillance 	With driver's key: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press the  button on the driver's key twice (within approx. 2 seconds). With Porsche Entry & Drive: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Touch proximity sensor A on the door handle twice (within approx. 2 seconds). 	The hazard warning lights flash slowly once. The doors are locked, but can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.	73
Switch off the alarm system's alarm sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press the  button on the driver's key. – or – Switch on ignition. 	The alarm sound is switched off.	47

- A
- B
- C
- D
- E
- F
- G
- H
- I
- J
- K
- L
- M
- N
- O
- P
- Q
- R
- S
- T
- U
- V
- W
- X
- Y
- Z

Using the central locking system

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked either with the driver's key or without a key by means of Porsche Entry & Drive. The following are unlocked or locked together:

- Doors
- Filler flap

Using the driver's key

- ▶ Use the button on the driver's key.

i Information

The factory settings of the vehicle are described in this section.

For information on modifying the unlocking and locking settings:

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Setting door locking options" on page 269.



With Porsche Entry & Drive¹⁾

Vehicle with Porsche Entry & Drive can be unlocked and locked without using the driver's key. However, the driver's key must always be carried, e.g. in your trouser pocket.

To ensure that the vehicle cannot be unlocked and started by unauthorised third parties, Porsche Entry & Drive can be deactivated temporarily on the driver's key.

1) The Porsche Entry & Drive System is state-of-the-art. However, we cannot entirely rule out the possibility of the key codes of the radio keys being intercepted and used to open or steal the vehicle.

Deactivating Porsche Entry & Drive on the driver's key

1. Press button  and keep it pressed.
 2. **At the same time**, press the  button within 1 second and keep both buttons pressed until the indicator light on the driver's key lights up continuously.
- Deactivation at the driver's key is confirmed when the indicator light on the driver's key lights up continuously.

Porsche Entry & Drive is activated automatically when you press the buttons on the driver's key or turn the control unit.

- ▶ Do not expose the driver's key to a high level of electromagnetic radiation. This can adversely affect Porsche Entry & Drive.


Unlocking and opening doors

Setting door unlocking

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or also the passenger's door is unlocked.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Setting door locking options" on page 269.


Both doors can be unlocked irrespective of the selected setting:

- ▶ Press button  on the driver's key twice within 5 seconds.

Unlocking the doors with the driver's key



Fig. 42: Unlocking the doors with the driver's key

1. Press the  button.
The hazard warning lights flash once.
The doors are unlocked.
2. Pull the door handle.

Unlocking the doors with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)

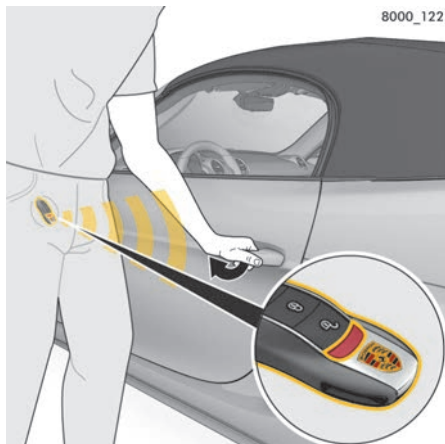


Fig. 43: Unlocking the doors with Porsche Entry & Drive

✓ Carry the driver's key with you, e.g. in your trouser pocket.

1. Grip the door handle fully.
The hazard warning lights flash once.
The doors are unlocked.
2. Pull the door handle.

i Information

Operational readiness of Porsche Entry & Drive is switched off after 96 hours for the driver's door and after 36 hours for the passenger's door if the vehicle is not unlocked within this time.

1. Pull the door handle once to activate the system again.
2. Pull the door handle again to open the door.

i Information

The vehicle is locked automatically after 30 seconds if no door or luggage compartment lid is opened. The alarm system is activated. Inclination sensor and interior surveillance system are not activated (restricted anti-theft protection). As a result, the doors can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

When locked again, the interior surveillance system and inclination sensor are activated once more.

i Information

In the event of an accident in which the airbag is triggered, the doors are unlocked automatically in order to enable helpers to gain access to the vehicle. Additionally, the hazard warning lights are activated automatically.

Locking doors

Using SAFELOCK

SAFELOCK (on vehicles with interior surveillance) disables the door openers and central locking button on the locked vehicle in order to make attempted break-ins more difficult.


⚠ WARNING

Locking the doors from outside

No persons or animals should be left in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside because the doors and windows cannot be opened from the inside (SAFELOCK) on vehicles with interior surveillance. Locked doors make it more difficult for helpers to access the inside of the vehicle in the case of an emergency.

- ▶ Make sure that no persons or animals are inside the vehicle when locking it.

Locking the doors with the driver's key

1. Close the door.
2. Press button  once.
The hazard warning lights flash twice.


On vehicles with interior surveillance (SAFELOCK):

The doors cannot be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

On vehicles without interior surveillance:
The doors are locked, but can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

– or –

If persons or animals are remaining in the vehicle (deactivate SAFELOCK if the vehicle is locked):

- ▶ Press the  button twice within 2 seconds.
The hazard warning lights flash slowly once.
The doors are locked, but can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.
- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

i Information

- The vehicle cannot be locked if the doors or the luggage compartment lids are not fully locked.
- A warning signal sounds and a warning message appears on the multi-function display; the hazard warning lights do not flash.
- When locking with only the driver's door closed, the vehicle is pre-locked.
- ▶ Ensure that the driver's key is not inside the vehicle when locking the remaining open doors or luggage compartment lids. If the driver's key is still in the vehicle, the vehicle can only be unlocked with the second key.

Locking the doors with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)

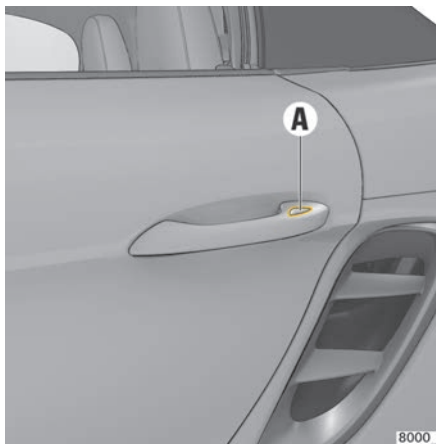


Fig. 44: Locking the doors with Porsche Entry & Drive

- ✓ Carry the driver's key with you, e.g. in your trouser pocket.
- 1. Close the door.
- 2. Touch proximity sensor **A** on the door handle. The hazard warning lights flash twice.

On vehicles with interior surveillance (SAFELOCK):

The doors cannot be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

On vehicles without interior surveillance:

The doors are locked, but can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

- or -

If persons or animals are remaining in the vehicle (deactivate SAFELOCK if the vehicle is locked):

- ▶ Touch proximity sensor **A** on the door handle twice within 2 seconds. The hazard warning lights flash slowly once. The doors are locked, but can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.
- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

i Information

- When locking, only the proximity sensor in the door handle must be touched. If the entire door handle is gripped, the vehicle doors cannot be locked.
- The vehicle cannot be locked if the doors or the luggage compartment lids are not fully locked. A warning signal sounds and a warning message appears on the multi-function display; the hazard warning lights do not flash.
- The driver's key must be outside the vehicle when locking the vehicle doors, otherwise the vehicle doors cannot be locked.

Opening and locking doors from inside

Locking doors

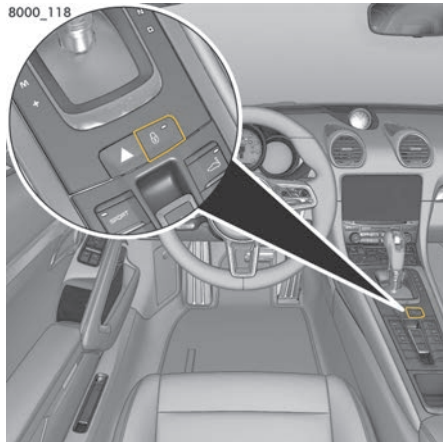



Fig. 45: Central locking button

✓ Doors closed.

▶ Press button .

All doors are locked.

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator light on the button lights up.


The doors can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

Automatic door locking

When this function is enabled, the vehicle is locked automatically when a speed of approx. 5 km/h (3 mph) is exceeded.

▶ Refer to chapter "Setting door locking options" on page 269.

Unlocking doors

▶ Press the  button.

All doors are unlocked.

The indicator light on the button goes out.

Automatic door unlocking

Vehicles without Porsche Entry & Drive:

The vehicle is unlocked automatically when the driver's key is removed.

Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive:

The vehicle is unlocked automatically when the driver's door is opened.

▶ Refer to chapter "Setting door locking options" on page 269.

Information

If the vehicle was locked using the driver's key or the emergency key, it cannot be unlocked with the central locking button.

Opening doors

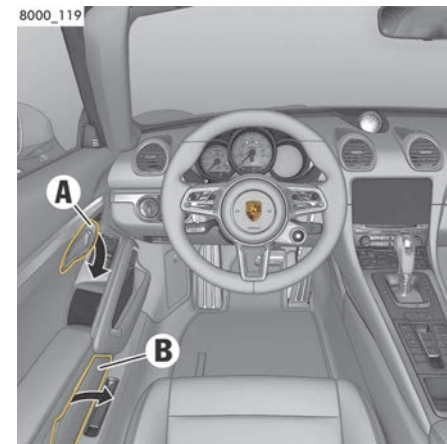


Fig. 46: Opening doors from the inside

A Door opener

B Door storage compartment

▶ Pull door opener **A** (Fig. 46).

Information

The doors, the front and rear luggage compartment lids and the engine compartment lid cannot be opened from the inside if the vehicle was locked and SAFELOCK is activated.

Emergency door operation

If the driver's key remote control does not work, the doors can also be opened and closed without the remote control.

A failure in the remote control can be caused by the following:

- Radio waves can cause interference in the transmission (also radio contact between the driver's key and vehicle in the case of Porsche Entry & Drive).

Ensure that you do not store the driver's key together with electronic devices which are switched on (e.g. mobile phone, notebook, charging cable). Change where you keep the driver's key if necessary.

- A failure in the remote control can be caused by a fault.
- The battery in the driver's key may be flat (Refer to chapter "Replacing battery in driver's key" on page 102).

Performing emergency door unlocking

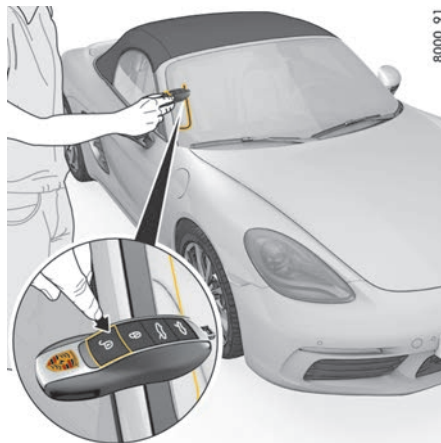



Fig. 47: Emergency release in the event of a faulty remote control

- ▶ Place the driver's key at the outside edge of the windscreen on the **passenger side** and, at the same time, press the  button (Fig. 47).

If the vehicle still cannot be unlocked:

1. Remove the emergency key from the driver's key.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter "Using emergency key" on page 102.



Fig. 48: Door lock cylinder

2. Unlock and open the driver's door with the emergency key: Lift and hold the door handle. Insert the emergency key in the door lock, turn 90° clockwise and remove the emergency key again (Fig. 48).
3. Release the door handle and open the door by pulling the door handle again.
4. Switch on the ignition within 10 seconds to prevent the alarm system from triggering.

Further procedure for vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive:

If the ignition cannot be switched on or if the engine does not start, the message

Key not found or key fault

Change key position will appear on the multi-function display.

5. Turn control unit back to ignition lock position 0.

6. Try to start the engine again.

If the engine cannot be started, the message

Key not found or key fault

Change key position appears again.

7. After approx. 1 second, the message

Operating part: turn left, pull off, insert key appears.

8. Turn control unit back to ignition lock position 0 and remove it from the ignition lock.

▷ Refer to chapter “Performing emergency release of driver’s key/control unit” on page 103.

9. Switch the ignition on using the driver’s key (not the emergency key).

Performing emergency door locking

1. Remove the emergency key from the driver’s key.
▷ Refer to chapter “Using emergency key” on page 102.

2. Open the driver’s door.

3. Lift the door handle on the driver’s door (Fig. 48 on page 76).

Insert the emergency key in the door lock, turn 90° against the direction of travel and remove the emergency key again.

Successful locking is indicated by the hazard warning lights flashing twice.

4. Release the door handle and close the door. The driver’s door is now locked.

5. For emergency locking of the **passenger’s door**, insert the emergency key in the door lock of the driver’s door again, turn it 90° against the direction of travel and remove the emergency key again.

The passenger’s door is now locked.

Information

If the central locking system is defective, operating the door lock in the driver’s door will lock all functioning locking elements of the central locking system.

- ▶ Have faults in the central locking system repaired.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)

General safety instructions



Improper use of the child restraint systems

Risk of serious or fatal injury resulting from the improper use of child restraint systems.

Child restraint systems that are not suitable for the vehicle type or that are not properly installed in the vehicle do not provide adequate protection in the event of an accident.

- ▶ Always refer to the separate installation instructions for your child restraint systems.
- ▶ Do not use child restraint systems on bucket seats.
Refer to chapter “Installing child restraint systems on different seat variants” on page 84.
- ▶ When using a child restraint system, always comply with the legal regulations that apply in your country.
- ▶ Use only child restraint systems recommended by Porsche.
These restraint systems have been tested and adjusted to suit the interior of Porsche vehicles and the appropriate child weight classes. Other systems have not been tested and could present an increased risk of injury.
- ▶ Always switch off the passenger airbag before using child restraint systems on the passenger’s seat.

Porsche recommends Porsche Tequipment child restraint systems.

For information on installation options:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Use of child restraint systems – secured with seat belt” on page 80.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Use of recommended child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system” on page 82.



Child restraint system on passenger seat

The passenger airbag offers protection only for persons of a certain minimum size and minimum weight. If a child restraint system is fitted on the passenger seat or the seated passenger is a small or light person, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury from the passenger airbag triggering.

- ▶ Always switch off the passenger airbag before installing child restraint systems on the passenger’s seat.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Switching passenger airbag on and off – PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator” on page 84
-
- ▶ Always switch off the seat heating if child restraint systems are installed.



Fig. 49: Airbag warning sticker on the sun visor

- ▶ Never remove, deface or render illegible sticker **A** with airbag warning and warning signs.

Taiwan only:

- ▷ According to Taiwan related regulations, "DO NOT carry babies, infants and children on the front passenger seat".



Classification of child restraint systems in weight classes

Children in group 0 and 0+: Up to 13 kg

Children in this group must be carried in a child restraint system that is fitted **facing backward**.

Children in group I: 9 to 18 kg

Children in this group must be carried in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

Children in group II: 15 to 25 kg

Children in this group must be carried in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

Children in group III: 22 to 36 kg

Children in this group must be carried in child restraint systems **facing forward**.

A Use of child restraint systems – secured with seat belt

B Recommended child restraint systems – secured with seat belt

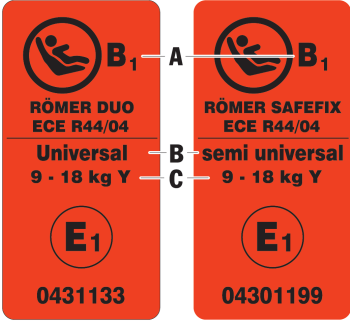
C Refer to chapter “Use of child restraint systems – secured with seat belt” on page 81.

D	Weight class	Manufacturer	Type	Authorisation number	Porsche part number	Installation on passenger seat
E	Group 0 and 0+: Up to 13 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Baby Seat G0+	E1 04301146	955.044.802.94	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Installed facing backward – Adjust passenger seat to rear, upper position – Only if passenger airbag is switched off
F	Group I: 9 to 18 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Seat ISOFIX G1	E1 04301199	955.044.802.88	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Installed facing forward – Adjust passenger seat to rear, upper position – Only if passenger airbag is switched off
G	Group II: 15 to 25 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Plus G2 + G3	E1 04301169	955.044.802.90	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Installed facing forward – Adjust passenger seat to rear, upper position – Only if passenger airbag is switched off
H	Group III: 22 to 36 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Plus G2 + G3	E1 04301169	955.044.802.90	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Installed facing forward – Adjust passenger seat to rear, upper position – Only if passenger airbag is switched off

Use of child restraint systems – secured with seat belt

Overview of how child restraint systems secured with the seat belt can be used in accordance with standard ECE-R 16. The marking “Universal” is shown on the orange ECE sticker on the child restraint system (Fig. 50).

Weight class	Child restraint system on passenger seat ^{1) 2)}
Group 0: Up to 10 kg	U/L
Group 0+: Up to 13 kg	U/L
Group I: 9 to 18 kg	U/L
Group II: 15 to 25 kg	U/L
Group III: 22 to 36 kg	U/L



SF1-529

Fig. 50: ECE sticker

- A** Size category
- B** “Universal” or “semi universal” marking
- C** Weight class

- 1) Only if passenger airbag is switched off. Refer to the notes on installing child restraint systems on the passenger seat on page 80.
- 2) Adjust passenger seat to rear **upper** position.

X: Seat is not suitable for child restraint systems of this weight class.
 U: Suitable for child restraint systems with the “Universal” category approved for use for this weight class.
 L: Suitable for particular child restraint systems listed on page 80.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Use of recommended child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system

Recommended child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system

Refer to chapter “Use of child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system” on page 83.

Weight class	Manufacturer	Type	Authorisation number	Porsche part number	Installation on passenger seat
Group 0 and 0+: Up to 13 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Baby Seat G0+ Only together with: ISOFIX base	E1 04301146	955.044.802.94 Only together with: 955.044.802.95	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Installed facing backward – Adjust passenger seat to rear, upper position – Only if passenger airbag is switched off
Group I: 9 to 18 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Seat ISOFIX G1	E1 04301199	955.044.802.88	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Installed facing forward – Adjust passenger seat to rear, upper position – Only if passenger airbag is switched off
Group II: 15 to 25 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Plus ISOFIT G2 + G3	E1 04301198	955.044.802.96	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Installed facing forward – Adjust passenger seat to rear, upper position – Only if passenger airbag is switched off
Group III: 22 to 36 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Plus ISOFIT G2 + G3	E1 04301198	955.044.802.96	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Installed facing forward – Adjust passenger seat to rear, upper position – Only if passenger airbag is switched off

Use of child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system

Overview of how child restraint systems secured with ISOFIX system can be used in accordance with standard ECE-R 16.

The marking “Universal” or “semi universal” is shown on the orange ECE sticker on the child restraint system.

Weight class	Size category	Fixture	ISOFIX attachment points on the passenger's seat ^{1) 2) 3)}
Baby carrier (left or right-facing child restraint systems)	F	ISO/L1	X
	G	ISO/L2	X
Group 0: Up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	IL/SU
Group 0+: Up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	IL/SU
	D	ISO/R2	IL/SU
	C	ISO/R3	X
Group I: 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	IL/SU
	C	ISO/R3	X
	B	ISO/F2	IL/SU
	B1	ISO/F2X	IL/SU
	A	ISO/F3	IL/SU
Group II: 15 to 25 kg			IL/SU
Group III: 22 to 36 kg			IL/SU

1) Only if passenger airbag is switched off. Refer to the notes on installing child restraint systems on the passenger seat on page 82.

2) Adjust passenger seat to rear **upper** position.

3) In vehicles with ISOFIX anchorage system on the **passenger seat**, child restraint systems marked “semi universal” may be installed on the passenger seat. Please refer to the vehicle list enclosed with the child restraint system and the child restraint systems recommended by Porsche on page 82.

X: Seat is not suitable for child restraint systems of this size category.

SU: The seat is suitable for fitting a child restraint system with an ISOFIX system that has the “semi universal” marking. Please refer to the vehicle list provided with the child restraint system.

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems listed on page 82.

A Installing child restraint systems

B Installing child restraint systems on different seat variants

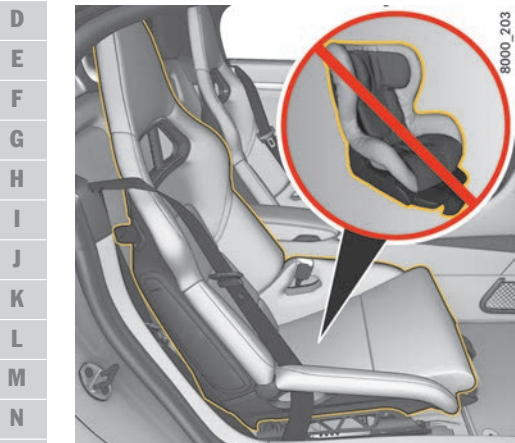


Fig. 51: Bucket seat

Child restraint systems must not be used on sports bucket seats (Fig. 51).

Recommended child restraint systems may be used on all other seat variants.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Seats” on page 213.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Recommended child restraint systems – secured with seat belt” on page 80.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Recommended child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system” on page 82.

Baby carriers

Left or right-facing child restraint systems from size categories F and G (e.g. baby carriers) should not generally be used on any of the seat variants.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Use of child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system” on page 83.
- Porsche recommends Porsche Tequipment child restraint systems (e.g. Porsche baby seat ISOFIX GO+).
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Recommended child restraint systems – secured with seat belt” on page 80.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Recommended child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system” on page 82.

Switching passenger airbag on and off – PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator

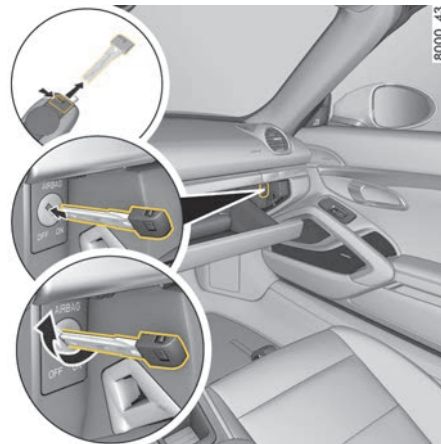


Fig. 52: Switching passenger airbag on and off

Taiwan only:

The key switch for switching the passenger airbag on and off is not installed.

- ▷ According to Taiwan related regulations, “DO NOT carry babies, infants and children on the front passenger seat”.
1. Switch ignition off.
 2. Open the glove box.
 3. Remove the emergency key from the driver’s key.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Using emergency key” on page 102.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the key switch and airbag system.

- ▶ Only turn the emergency key if it is inserted to the second point of resistance in the key switch.
- ▶ Only switch the passenger air bag on or off when the ignition is switched off.

4. Insert the emergency key to the second point of resistance in the key switch.

The emergency key bit should reach approx. 3/4 of the way into the key switch.

5. Using the emergency key, switch the passenger airbag off (switch position **OFF**) or on (switch position **ON**) without exerting excessive force.

The **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator lights up.

⚠ DANGER

Risk of serious or fatal injury due to the passenger airbag triggering inadvertently

If the emergency key is left in the key switch during driving, it may inadvertently turn in the key switch due to vibration, possibly triggering the airbag.

- ▶ Never leave the emergency key in the key switch when driving.

6. Remove the emergency key from the key switch.
7. Close the glove box.

⚠ DANGER

Passenger airbag switched off

If the passenger airbag remains switched off after removal of the child restraint system, it will not be triggered in an accident.

- ▶ Only switch off the passenger airbag if a child restraint system is fitted on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Switch the passenger airbag back on once the child restraint system has been removed.

i Information

When the passenger airbag is switched off, the seat belt warning message for the passenger side is also deactivated.

i Information

The driver's key switch for switching off the passenger airbag, the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator and the ISOFIX restraint system on the passenger seat are only installed in certain equipment versions. They can be retrofitted (but not to vehicles with bucket seats). The adjustment range of the passenger seat backrest is restricted when this equipment is installed.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

If the airbag on the passenger's side (seat **2**) is switched off, the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator on the overhead console remains continuously lit when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

8000_42



Fig. 53: PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator

Taiwan only:

The **PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF/ON** warning light is not installed.

According to Taiwan related regulations, "DO NOT carry babies, infants and children on the front passenger seat".

⚠ DANGER

Failure or malfunction of the passenger airbag

If the **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator does not light up when the ignition is on and the passenger airbag has been switched off, there could be a fault in the system.

- ▶ Do not install any child restraint systems on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Have the fault corrected immediately. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Installing child restraint systems with ISOFIX system

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Recommended child restraint systems – secured with ISOFIX system” on page 82.
- ▷ Refer to the separate installation instructions for your child restraint system.

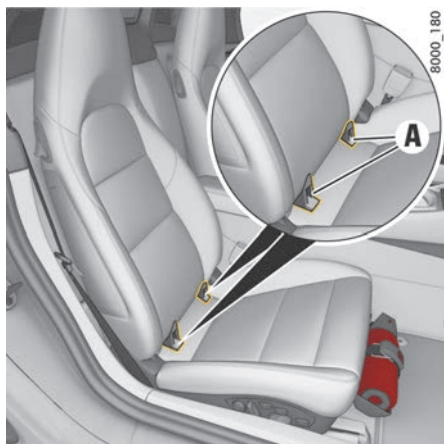


Fig. 54: ISOFIX restraint system for passenger seat

The retaining lugs **A** of the ISOFIX child restraint system anchorage points are located on the seat surface of the passenger seat (depending on equipment).

1. Switch off the passenger airbag with the emergency key.

The **PASS AIR BAG OFF** indicator in the overhead console must light up.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Switching passenger airbag on and off – PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator” on page 84.

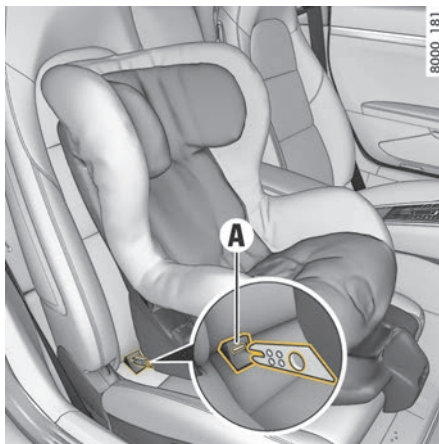


Fig. 55: Installation of child restraint system with ISOFIX system

2. Secure the child restraint system in retaining lugs **A** as described in the instruction manual for the child restraint system.
3. Pull the child restraint system to check that both anchorage points are properly engaged.

Taiwan only:

The ISOFIX restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat.

According to Taiwan related regulations, “DO NOT carry babies, infants and children on the front passenger seat”.

Connectivity

Establishing data connection via external SIM card

When an external SIM card is inserted, it deactivates the function of the embedded SIM (availability dependent on country). Additional costs may be incurred for the data connection (e.g. due to data roaming).

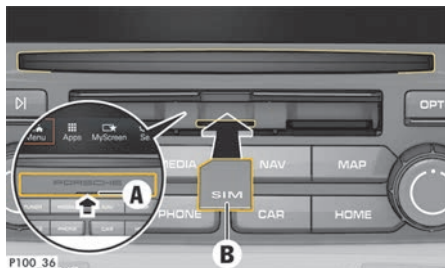


Fig. 56: Inserting and removing external SIM card

✓ SD and SIM card reader cover **A** is open.

1. Insert external SIM card **B** (mini-SIM, dimensions: 25 x 15 mm) (missing corner at front left, chip facing downwards).
2. SIM card **with** PIN:
 - a. Enter the PIN for the external SIM card and confirm with **OK**.
 - b. Select **Store PIN**.
3. Select **Enable** to enable the data connection. Activate **Don't ask again** to disable the repeated prompt.
The data connection is established.
 - ▶ To remove the external SIM card, press on the inserted card and remove it.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to PCM if SIM cards are not used properly.

If a SIM card adapter is used, there is a risk of the SIM card falling out of the adapter if shaken and the card pieces remaining stuck in the PCM.

- ▶ Do not use adapters for SIM cards.

i Information

If several access points are available, the message **Several access points (APN) are available**.

Please select one. appears. A list of available access points (APNs) is displayed.

- ▶ Select the desired access point (APN).
- ▶ If no access points are configured on the external SIM card, find out the APN settings from the mobile phone provider. To configure the access point (APN) settings on the PCM:

PHONE button ▶ **OPT** button ▶

SET PHONE ▶ **Data connections** ▶

Select **Configure access point**.

Use **Reset access point configuration** to reset the settings.

i Information

If a data connection cannot be established, check the following:

- External SIM card has sufficient data volume and is inserted correctly.
- External SIM card is not damaged and is working properly.
- APN settings (Internet access) are correct. The APN settings can be checked by contacting the network operator.
- Abroad: Data roaming is allowed on the external SIM card and enabled in the PCM.
- The vehicle is in an area with sufficient network reception (not a coverage blackspot).
- Restart the PCM if necessary.

For information on data connection settings:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Configuring data connections” on page 247.

For information on PIN settings for the SIM card and other telephone settings:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Changing phone settings” on page 246.

For information on connecting a mobile phone to the PCM using Bluetooth®:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Telephone” on page 238.

Establishing data connection via embedded SIM (availability dependent on country)

- ✓ The SIM card reader is **empty**.
- The data connection is established immediately when the ignition is switched on.

For information on data connection settings:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Configuring data connections” on page 247.

Information

If a data connection cannot be established, check the following:

- The vehicle is in an area with sufficient network reception (not a coverage blackspot).
- Restart the PCM if necessary.

Displaying data packages

- ▶ **HOME** button ▶ **Apps**  ▶ **Data packages**

Information about the booked data package is displayed.

Establishing a data connection via external WiFi hotspot

- ✓ The SIM card reader is **empty**.
- ✓ Vehicles with embedded SIM (availability dependent on country): PCM phone is switched off.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Changing phone settings” on page 246.

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET PHONE** ▶ **WiFi settings**
2. If necessary, activate WiFi function via **Activate WiFi**.
3. Activate **Use external data connection**.
4. Select **Connect external WiFi hotspot**.
5. Search for a WiFi hotspot (e.g. public hotspot or the mobile phone’s personal hotspot) and enter the WiFi access data in the PCM. When entering the data, pay attention to upper and lower case.
A connection is established to the external WiFi hotspot.

For further information on WiFi settings:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Configuring WiFi settings” on page 247.

Using connectivity

Activating services in the Porsche Connect portal

Before starting to use the Porsche Connect services for the first time, they must be activated/configured.

- ▶ Activate Porsche Connect services using the Porsche Connect portal. For further information on activating/configuring services:
 - ▷ Visit www.porsche.com/connect.

Using services in the navigation system and voice control system

- ✓ Data connection is successfully established via the embedded SIM, an external SIM card or an external WiFi hotspot.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87.
- Load the Online search function for entering navigation destinations as well as portal POIs and other POI categories from the Porsche Connect portal.
- Additional map display.
- Realtime traffic information about accidents, roadworks, traffic flow information and other incidents from the Internet.
- Dictate online language search as well as text messages/e-mails.

Using services in the “Apps” menu

- ✓ Data connection is successfully established via the embedded SIM, an external SIM card or an external WiFi hotspot.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87.

▶ **HOME** button ▶ **Apps** 

Available services are displayed.

For further information on the Porsche Connect App functions:


- ▶ Refer to chapter “Porsche Connect App” on page 193.

Information

- The Porsche Connect services (including the Car Connect services, but not the Safety and Security services) offer a free inclusive period, which varies in length for each services package and country, but is always at least 3 months. Further information about the free inclusive periods as well as subsequent costs and information about the availability of individual services for your country is available online at www.porsche.com/connect or from your Porsche partner.
- Depending on the country, the Porsche Connect Services can be used via the embedded SIM or a data-enabled external SIM card. A separate, fee-based contract with a mobile phone provider is required for the external SIM card.
- You may incur additional charges when receiving data packages from the Internet, depending on your mobile phone tariff and whether you are abroad. A flat-rate data plan is recommended.
- The availability, scope and provider of the services may vary depending on the country, model year, device and tariff.


Porsche Connect login

A pairing code must be entered in the PCM for some services in order to retrieve personal settings from the Porsche Connect portal.


1. **HOME** button ▶ **Apps**  ▶ **OPT** button
2. **Porsche Connect login** ▶ **Create new user** ▶ **Enter pairing code.**
3. Enter the pairing code that is displayed in the Porsche Connect portal after you have successfully activated/configured the services.

Porsche Connect logout


- ✓ A Porsche Connect user is created and registered.

1. **HOME** button ▶ **Apps**  ▶ **OPT** button
2. **Porsche Connect logout**
The user currently logged in is logged out.

Updating contents

- ▶ **HOME** button ▶ **Apps**  ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **Reload services**
The contents of the purchased services are updated.

Displaying service information

- ▶ **HOME** button ▶ **Apps**  ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **Services information**
Information about the services purchased and contract duration is displayed.



Activating the PCM WiFi hotspot (wireless Internet access)

Up to 8 WiFi devices can be connected to the hotspot.

- ✓ Data connection is established via the external SIM card or embedded SIM.

Information

In order to activate a PCM WiFi hotspot via the embedded SIM, a suitable data package must be booked. The data package can be booked via the Porsche Connect Store.

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status) ▶ **Hotspot.**
2. Confirm message by clicking **OK.** WiFi access data of the PCM (device name and WiFi password) is displayed.
3. Enter the WiFi access data of the PCM into the WiFi settings on the device.
A connection is established to the PCM's wireless Internet access.

For further information on WiFi settings:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Configuring WiFi settings” on page 247.

Information

- You may incur additional charges when receiving data packages from the Internet, depending on your mobile phone tariff and whether you are abroad. A flat-rate data plan is recommended.

Convertible Top

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Care” on page 65.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to convertible top and convertible-top drive.

- ▶ Do not operate convertible top:
 - At temperatures below 0 °C.
 - When one side of the vehicle is on a kerb, a lifting platform or a jack.
- ▶ Avoid frequent convertible top operation with the engine off so that the vehicle battery does not rapidly discharge.
- ▶ Only drive with the convertible top fully open or closed.
- ▶ When opening or closing the convertible top, ensure that there is sufficient clearance above it (e.g. in the garage).
- ▶ To prevent damp stains and abrasion damage, open the convertible top only when it is in a dry, clean state.
- ▶ Park the vehicle in the shade if possible, since continuous exposure to the sun attacks textiles, rubber and paint.
- ▶ The convertible top may only be operated when driving on a level road surface.
- ▶ Do not operate the convertible top in strong winds or storms.

Opening and closing the convertible top

⚠ WARNING

Opening and closing the convertible top

When opening and closing the convertible top, parts of the body can become trapped between the convertible-top mechanism or convertible-top compartment lid and fixed vehicle parts.

- ▶ Make sure that nobody is at risk of injury from the convertible-top mechanism or the convertible-top compartment lid.
- ▶ Do not operate the convertible top with the driver's key if the vehicle is out of your sight.
- ▶ In order to interrupt convertible-top operation in the event of danger, immediately release the button or driver's key button.
- ▶ Keep the covers of the vanity mirrors in the sun visors closed when closing the convertible top.

The front side windows are automatically opened and automatically closed again during **opening and closing of the convertible top** if convertible top operation is continued after it has reached its final position.

Opening and closing the convertible top using the button in the vehicle interior

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ Maximum speed of up to approx. 50 km/h (30 mph).

The opening/closing operation is interrupted if the maximum speed is exceeded.

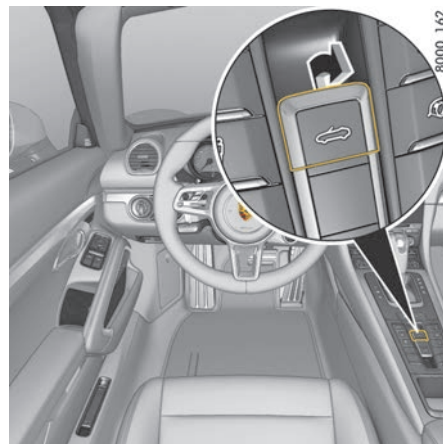


Fig. 57: **Opening** the convertible top with the button

Opening the convertible top (up to a speed of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph), depending on country)

- ▶ Pull and hold the button for opening the convertible top continuously until the convertible top has reached its final position or until the windows are in the desired position. The corresponding message on the multi-function display goes out.
- In the event of danger:
- ▶ Release the button. Convertible top operation stops.

Opening the convertible top at a speed from approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) to approx. 50 km/h (30 mph) (depending on country)

- ▶ Briefly pull the button for opening the convertible top.
The convertible top opens automatically.
The corresponding message on the multi-function display goes out.
- In the event of danger:
- ▶ Pull the button again briefly.
Convertible top operation stops.

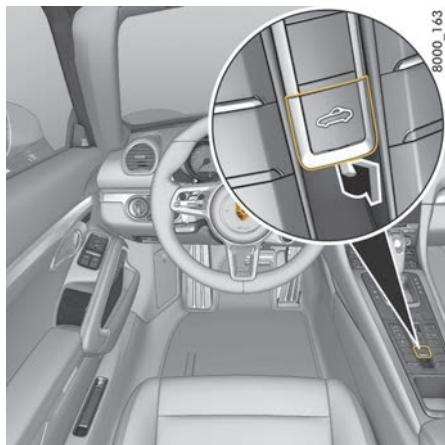



Fig. 58: **Closing** the convertible top with the button

Closing the convertible top

- ▶ Pull and hold the button for closing the convertible top continuously until the convertible top has reached its final position or until the windows are in the desired position.
The corresponding message on the multi-function display goes out.
- In the event of danger:
- ▶ release the button.
Convertible top operation stops.

Closing convertible top using the driver's key (depending on the country)

1. Unlock the vehicle.
 2. Press and hold the driver's key button  until the convertible top has reached its end position or until the windows are in the desired position.
- In the event of danger:
- ▶ release the button.
Convertible top operation stops.

Removing and installing wind deflector

NOTICE

- ▶ Make sure that all wind deflector parts are properly and securely fastened, particularly when driving with the convertible top open.

Installing outer wind deflector parts

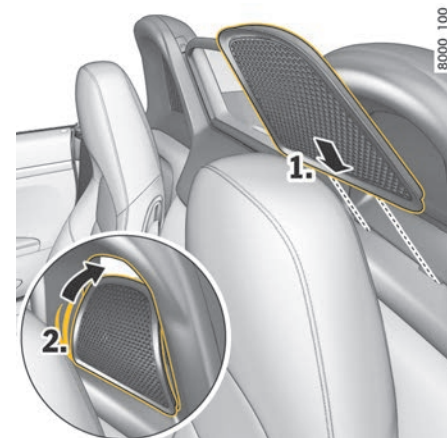


Fig. 59: Installing outer wind deflector parts

1. Insert wind deflector part from the front at the bottom into the roll-over bar.
2. Bend the wind deflector part slightly and engage at the top in the roll-over bar.
3. Make sure that the wind deflector parts engage completely in the roll-over bar.

Removing outer wind deflector parts

- ▶ Push the wind deflector part out of the roll-over bars against the direction of travel, and remove.

Installing centre wind deflector

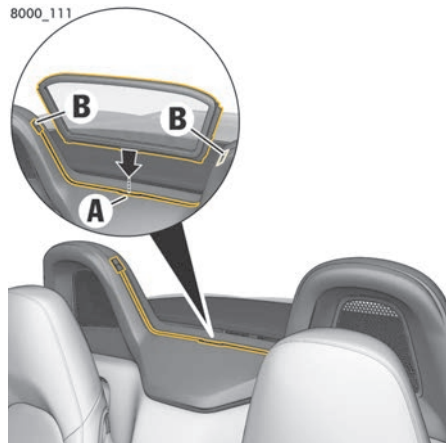


Fig. 60: Installing centre wind deflector

- ▶ Insert wind deflector from above into mounting **A** and then push successively downwards until the wind deflector engages audibly into place at the locking points **B**.

Removing centre wind deflector

- ▶ Press one of the locking points **B** and pull the wind deflector upwards out of the mounting **A**.

i Information

It is advantageous to remove the centre wind deflector to ensure good ventilation in the passenger compartment or of the rear window when the convertible top is closed. This applies in particular when the weather is wet and cold.

Performing emergency operation of convertible top

⚠ WARNING

Moving convertible top parts during emergency operation

- ▶ Always carry out emergency operation with the greatest care.
- ▶ During emergency operation, do not operate the convertible top using the button or driver's key.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to convertible top and convertible-top drive.

- ▶ During or after emergency operation, do not operate the convertible top using the button or driver's key.
- ▶ Drive slowly and carefully.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Checking the convertible top system

Before implementing emergency operation, check:

- Was the ignition switched on during operation of the convertible top via the button?
- Are the fuses defective?
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Checking and changing fuses" on page 113.
- ▶ Remove the driver's key so that the wind deflector and convertible top are not activated unintentionally.

Step 1: Accessing the convertible top drive

1. Move the driver's and passenger's seat forward and fold the backrests forwards.

⚠ CAUTION

Sharp edges

Sharp edges on the belt reel trim may cause grazes or cuts to the skin.

- ▶ Exercise caution when handling these trims.

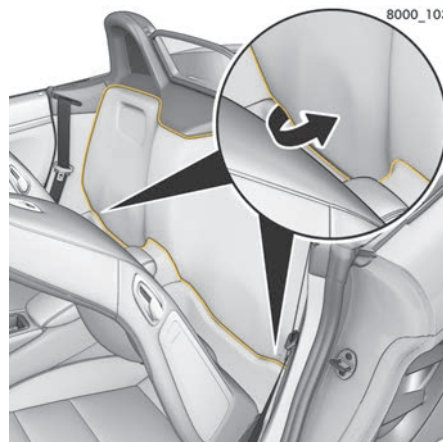


Fig. 61: Accessing the convertible top drive

2. Insert your hand between the gap in the carpet (Fig. 61) and carefully pull out the carpeting from below along the belt reel trim and fold over.

Step 2: Releasing convertible top drive

1. Take open-ended spanner (13 A/F) from the tool kit.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit” on page 140.

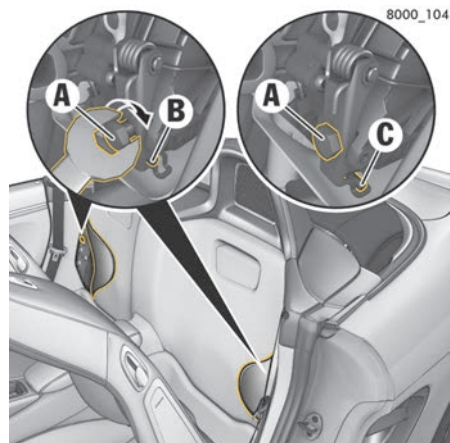


Fig. 62: Releasing convertible top drive

2. Using the open-ended spanner, turn the screw **A** clockwise through 360° approximately three times until the guide pin **B** is in position **C**.
3. Repeat the procedure on the opposite side.

Step 3: Pulling the convertible top out of the storage compartment

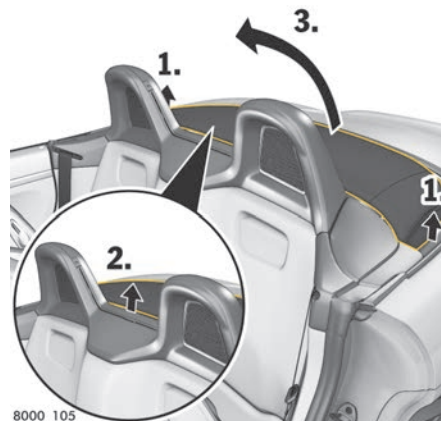


Fig. 63: Pulling the convertible top out of the storage compartment.

- ▶ Enter the vehicle.
1. Lift the convertible top with one hand on the right or left-hand side.
 2. Grasp the convertible top at the centre with the other hand.
 3. Pull the convertible top out of the storage compartment until it is approximately half closed.

Step 4: Closing the convertible top

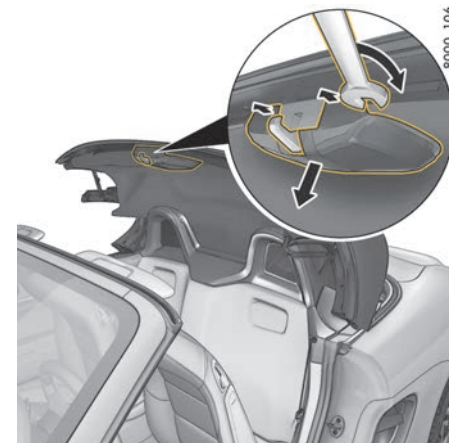


Fig. 64: Removing cover of convertible top lock

1. With an open-ended wrench, carefully lever the plastic cover of the convertible-top lock out of the locking points (Fig. 64), and remove.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

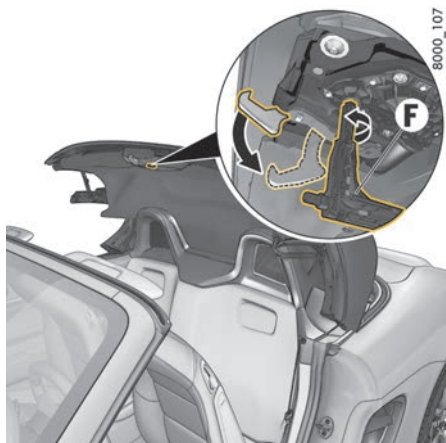


Fig. 65: Extending the convertible top latching hook

2. Remove the key **F** for emergency operation of convertible top from the tool box.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit” on page 140.
3. Insert the key **F** into the convertible top lock (Fig. 65) and turn anti-clockwise until the latching hook is fully extended (noticeable resistance when turning).

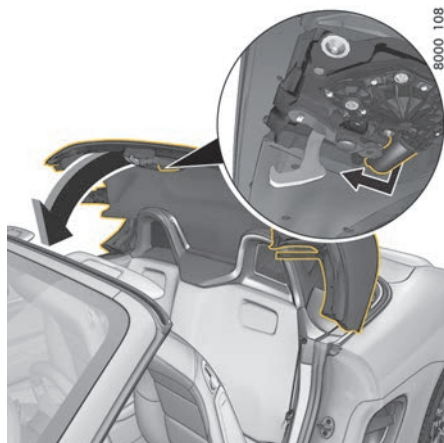


Fig. 66: Pulling convertible top to windscreen frame

4. Using your hand, grasp the convertible top at the convertible top motor (Fig. 66) and pull it to the windscreen frame.

CAUTION Risk of injury due to crushing during closing

If body parts are located within the range of movement of the convertible top or in the area of the convertible top lock during closing, there is a risk of pinching or crushing.

- ▶ Pay attention to the following:
 - that no persons are within the range of movement of the convertible top during closing.
 - that hands cannot be pinched or crushed by parts of the convertible-top lock.

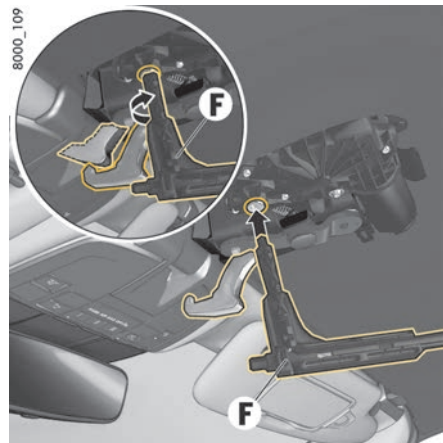


Fig. 67: Locking convertible top

5. To fully close the convertible top, turn the key **F** clockwise until the latching hook fully engages in the catch and the convertible top is completely closed (noticeable resistance when turning Fig. 67).

Coolant



The coolant provides year-round protection from corrosion and freezing down to -37°C .

Regular checking of the coolant level is part of servicing.

- ▶ Use only antifreeze authorised by Porsche. Porsche recommends Glysantin® G40® or alternatively antifreeze in accordance with G12++/VW TL 774-G

Responding to warning symbol

NOTICE

The symbol  appears on the multi-function display if the coolant temperature is too high. If the  symbol appears, the coolant level is too low.

If the vehicle continues to move after the red warning message is displayed, there is a risk of engine damage.

- ▶ Switch engine off and let it cool.
- ▶ Do not continue driving if the warning persists even when the engine coolant level is correct. Have the fault corrected. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 278.

Checking coolant level and adding coolant

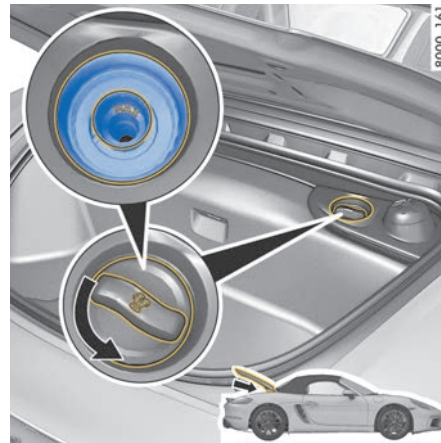


Fig. 68: Boxster coolant reservoir

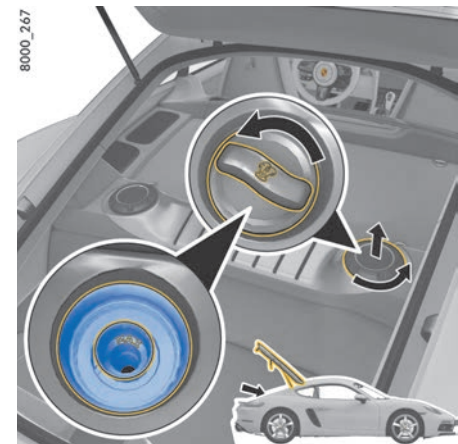


Fig. 69: Cayman coolant reservoir





⚠ WARNING

Hot engine parts and hot coolant

The engine and adjacent components, the exhaust system and the coolant become very hot when the engine is running.

The coolant tank is pressurised. Hot coolant can spray out suddenly if the coolant tank is not opened with care.

- ▶ Take care when working near hot vehicle parts, particularly the engine and the exhaust system.
- ▶ Top up coolant only with the engine stopped and ignition switched off.
- ▶ Do **not** open the cap on the coolant reservoir when the engine is hot. Wait until the coolant temperature gauge displays a temperature below 60°C .
- ▶ Refer to chapter "B – Coolant temperature" on page 264.

- ✓ Vehicle is horizontal.
 - ✓ Engine cold and coolant temperature gauge below 60 °C.
 - ✓ The symbol  or  with a message requesting that the coolant be topped up appears in the multi-function display.
 - ✓ If the symbol  or  is **not** displayed with a message requesting that the coolant be topped up, **only** top up if no coolant is visible at the base of the standpipe. The MAX marking only applies during refilling itself as the level in the standpipe drops after the engine is first started.
1. Open the rear luggage compartment.
 2. Cayman: Turn cap anticlockwise and remove (Fig. 69).
 3. Open cap on the coolant reservoir carefully and allow any overpressure to escape.
 4. Unscrew the cap completely.
 5. Read off the engine coolant level. The coolant level must be below the MAX marking. (no coolant level visible at base of standpipe).
 6. If necessary, top up the coolant to the MAX marking, do **not** fill above the MAX marking. Only add a mixture of antifreeze and distilled water in equal parts.
The MAX marking only applies during refilling itself as the level in the standpipe drops after the engine is first started.
 7. Screw the cap on the coolant reservoir closed until it is felt to reach the end stop.
 8. Cayman: Fit cap and turn clockwise (Fig. 69).
 9. Have the cooling system checked.
Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Information

If pure water is added in an emergency, the mixing ratio will have to be corrected.

A significant loss of coolant indicates a leak in the cooling system.

- ▶ Eliminate the cause without delay. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Cruise Control

Cruise control maintains the selected speed between approx. 30 km/h and 240 km/h (20 mph and 150 mph) without the accelerator having to be used.

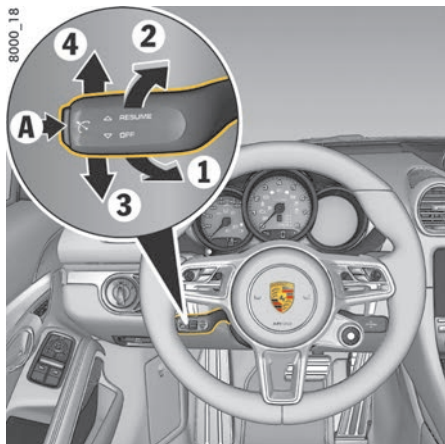


Fig. 70: Control stalk for cruise control

- A** Switching cruise control on/off
- 1** Setting/increasing the desired speed
- 2** Reducing the desired speed
- 3** Interrupting cruise control operation (OFF)
- 4** Resuming the stored speed (RESUME)

i Information

Active braking intervention is carried out automatically to help maintain the pre-selected speed (especially when driving downhill).

! WARNING

Unsafe traffic situation and unfavourable road conditions

The use of cruise control can cause an accident if the current driving situation is not conducive to driving at a sufficient distance and constant speed.

- ▶ Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on twisting roads or under unfavourable road conditions (e.g. wintry or wet conditions or varying road surfaces).

Switching cruise control readiness on

- ▶ Press button **A** on the control stalk.



Cruise control readiness

The grey symbol on the multi-function display indicates readiness.

Maintaining and storing speed

- 1.** Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed using the accelerator pedal.
- 2.** Press the control stalk on the steering wheel forward (position **1**).



Desired speed

The current driving speed is displayed under the cruise control symbol which has now turned orange and is automatically maintained.

Changing speed

- ▶ To increase the speed, press the control stalk on the steering wheel forwards (Fig. 70: **1**).
Brief press = 1 km/h (1 mph),
press and hold = 10 km/h (5 mph)
- ▶ To reduce the speed, pull the control stalk towards the steering wheel (Fig. 70: **2**).
brief pull = 1 km/h (1 mph),
pull and hold = 10 km/h (5 mph)
The new desired speed is displayed on the multi-function display.

i Information

The speed can be increased as usual with the accelerator pedal. This does not change the saved value; the car returns to the stored speed when you ease off the accelerator.

Interrupting cruise control operation – OFF

The speed driven before the interruption remains stored in the memory and can be reactivated by pressing the control stalk.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Resuming the stored speed – RESUME” on page 98.
- ▶ Press the control stalk down (Fig. 70: **3**)
– or –
- ▶ Operate brake or clutch pedal.
– or –
- ▶ Move selector lever to **N** position.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Cruise control operation is interrupted automatically:

- If the set vehicle speed is exceeded by more than approx. 25 km/h (16 mph) for over 20 seconds.
- If the actual vehicle speed falls below the set vehicle speed by approx. 60 km/h (37 mph) for longer than 60 seconds (e.g. gradients).
- If Porsche Stability Management (PSM) intervenes for longer than 0.5 seconds.

Resuming the stored speed – RESUME

- ▶ Press the control stalk up (Fig. 70: 4).
Cruise control accelerates/decelerates the vehicle to the stored speed.

Switching cruise control readiness off

- ▶ Press button **A** on the control stalk.
The memory is cleared and the readiness symbol disappears.

Information

The stored speed is deleted by turning off the ignition.

Cupholders

Using cupholders

There are two folding cupholders behind the panel above the glove box.

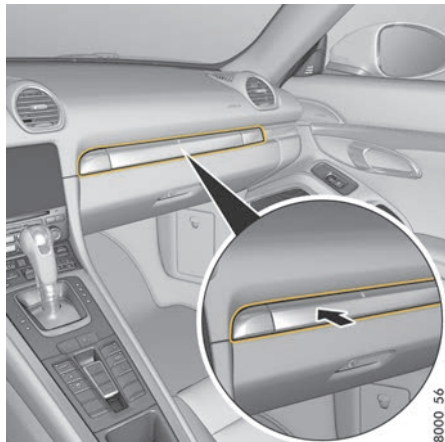


Fig. 71: Cupholder

CAUTION

Spilling hot beverages

Hot beverages can cause scalding if spilt.

- ▶ Only use containers that fit.
- ▶ Never put overfull containers in the cupholder.
- ▶ Not suitable for containers filled with hot beverages.
- ▶ Keep the cupholders closed while driving.

NOTICE

Risk of damage due to beverages being spilt.

- ▶ Only use containers that fit.
- ▶ Never put overfull containers in the cupholder.

Opening the cupholders

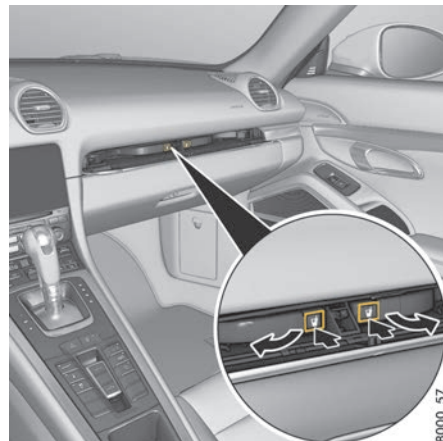


Fig. 72: Opening the cupholders

1. Press the cupholder panel (Fig. 71).
The panel opens.
2. Press the symbol for the left or right cupholder.
The cupholder folds out.
3. Close the panel in the middle to secure the cupholder.

Pulling cupholder out

The cupholders can be pulled out in order to fit larger containers.

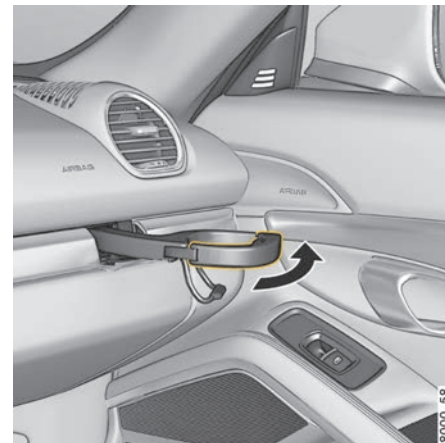


Fig. 73: Pulling cupholder out

1. Pull out the holder (Fig. 73).
2. Insert a cup/container.
3. Carefully press in the holder to adjust it to the size of the cup/container.

Folding cupholder in


1. Push cupholder drawer in.
2. Open the panel in the middle.
3. Fold the cupholder in and engage it.
4. Close the panel in the middle.

Device Manager

Opening the Device Manager



Fig. 74: Opening the Device Manager

- ▶ Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).

– or –

- ▶ **PHONE** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶
Select **Device manager**.

The following connections can be managed centrally using the Device Manager:

- **Telephone**: Connect PCM to mobile phone via Bluetooth®.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connecting mobile phone via Bluetooth® (mobile phone preparation)” on page 239.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connecting and using a second mobile phone” on page 240.
- **Bluetooth audio**: Connect PCM to external Bluetooth® media source.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connecting an external device via Bluetooth®” on page 183.

- **Data connection**: Establish data connection via the embedded SIM, an external SIM card or external WiFi hotspot.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87.
- **Hotspot**: Use the PCM's wireless Internet access.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Activating the PCM WiFi hotspot (wireless Internet access)” on page 89.
- **Porsche Connect App**: Connect Porsche Connect App to the PCM using WiFi.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Porsche Connect App” on page 193.
- **Smartphone link**: Use Apple® CarPlay.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Apple® CarPlay” on page 48.

Displaying connection status

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Displaying connection status” on page 241.

Information

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.

Diagnostic Socket



Fig. 75: Diagnostic socket in the fuse box in the left footwell

The diagnostic socket **A** is for connecting diagnostic equipment in qualified specialist workshops.

⚠ WARNING

Improper interventions in the vehicle electrical system

External equipment or devices (e.g. navigation units, heads-up displays, etc.) connected to the diagnostic socket can impair the function of the vehicle systems.

- ▶ Do not connect any equipment or devices to the diagnostic socket.

⚠ WARNING

Loose equipment/devices or hanging cables in the driver's footwell

Loose equipment/devices or hanging cables in the driver's footwell can obstruct clearance around the pedals or become caught between the pedals when braking or changing direction.

- ▶ Do not place any equipment/devices or cables in the driver's footwell.

NOTICE

Operating external equipment or devices (e.g. navigation units, heads-up displays, etc.) from the diagnostic socket when the ignition is switched off will run down the battery. If the vehicle is parked for an extended period, the battery can run down fully and be damaged (exhaustive discharge).

- ▶ Do not connect any equipment or devices to the diagnostic socket.

Driver's Key

Using driver's key



8000_32

8000_199

Fig. 76: Driver's key

- A** Unlock the vehicle
- B** Lock the vehicle
- C** Unlock front luggage compartment lid and doors
- D** Unlock rear luggage compartment lid and doors

There is always an emergency key integrated in the driver's keys. The driver's keys can be used to lock and unlock all the locks on the vehicle.

- ▶ Take care of your driver's keys: do not part with them except under exceptional circumstances.
- ▶ Always remove the driver's key and take it with you even if you are only leaving the vehicle briefly.
- ▶ Do not leave the driver's key in the vehicle.

Using emergency key

Removing emergency key



Fig. 77: Removing emergency key

1. Push the release button to the side (Fig. 77).
2. Pull out the emergency key.

Inserting emergency key

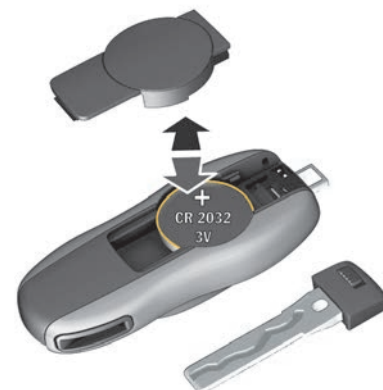
- ▶ Push the emergency key into the driver's key until the release button audibly engages.

Replacing battery in driver's key

If the battery in the driver's key becomes too weak and the battery needs replacing, a message appears on the multi-function display.

Information

- ▶ Observe the disposal instructions for batteries.



9000_232

Fig. 78: Changing battery

Changing battery (CR 2032, 3 V)

1. Remove the emergency key.
2. Lever off the cover on the back of the driver's key housing using a suitable object (e.g. emergency key).
3. Change the battery (check polarity).
4. Re-fit cover and press together firmly.
5. Insert the emergency key.

Performing emergency release of driver's key/control unit

If the vehicle battery is flat, the driver's key can be removed only if emergency release is performed. Interference in radio transmission between the vehicle and driver's key or a discharged driver's key battery can disable the Porsche Entry & Drive comfort function.

In this case, the control unit can be removed from the ignition lock and the vehicle can be started using the driver's key.



Fig. 79: Removing the metal hook

1. Grasp the fuse box cover on the driver's side at the handle and pull it off.
2. Unclip metal hook **A** on the inside of the fuse box cover.

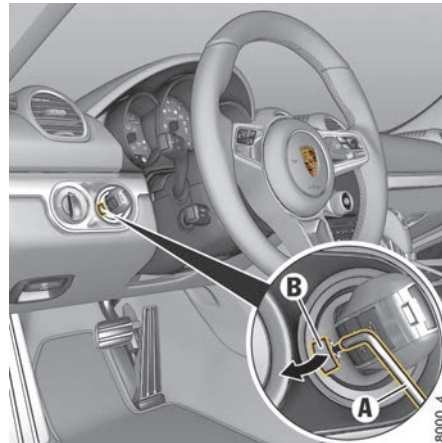


Fig. 80: Removing the plastic cover from the ignition lock

3. Use metal hook **A** to remove the plastic cover **B** from the ignition lock.
4. Make sure that plastic cover **B** is not lost.

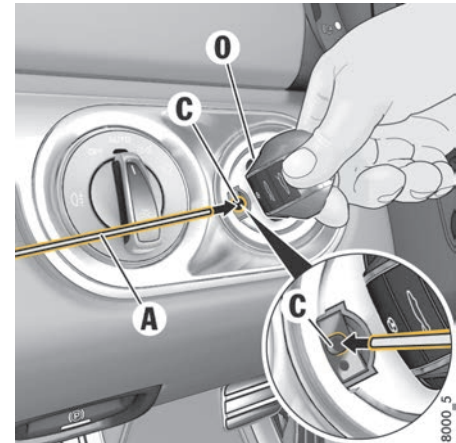


Fig. 81: Performing emergency unlocking

5. Turn control unit/driver's key to ignition lock position **O** (initial position).
6. Press metal hook **A** into opening **C**. You will hear the driver's key/control unit unlocking.
7. Remove control unit/driver's key in initial position **O**.
8. Re-fit the plastic cover **B**.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Ordering and storing replacement keys

Driver's keys can only be ordered from a Porsche partner. Sometimes, this may take a long time.

- ▶ Therefore always have a replacement key available.
- ▶ Store the replacement key in a safe place, but under no circumstances in or on the vehicle.

To teach a new driver's key to the vehicle:

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Teach all driver's keys belonging to the vehicle again.

Information

A total of eight driver's keys can be taught.

Information

- ▶ If a driver's key is lost or stolen, have a Porsche partner disable this driver's key in the vehicle and change the mechanical locks if necessary.
 - ▶ Inform the insurance company of any loss or theft of driver's keys or if extra or replacement keys have been cut.
-

Driving Data Display (Trip Information)

An array of driving data such as the journey time, distance driven, average speed and average fuel consumption is displayed in the trip menu.

Information

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.

For information on using the multi-function display:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display without multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display with multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.

Displaying driving data on multi-function display

1. Select **Trip** menu.
2. Select entry from the list:


- **Since:** Driving data since the last vehicle start. The driving data is reset automatically once the vehicle has remained stationary for 2 hours (with the ignition switched off).
- **Total:** The driving data is added progressively until a reset is performed. The driving data is retained even if the vehicle is parked for an extended period (with the ignition switched off).
- **To destination:** If route guidance is active, the driving data is calculated and displayed up to the navigation destination.

Resetting driving data using the multi-function display

1. **Trip** ▶ **Reset**
2. Select entry from the list:

- **Since**
- **Total**
- **all:** Reset the **Since** and **Total** driving data.


Displaying and resetting driving data in the PCM

1. **CAR** button ▶ **Trip** 
2. Browse (wipe) to desired view level:

- **Personal trip:** The driving data can be grouped into four data fields as required.
- **Trip since:** Driving data since the last vehicle start. The driving data is reset automatically once the vehicle has remained stationary for 2 hours (with the ignition switched off).
- **Total trip:** The driving data is added progressively until a reset is performed. The driving data is retained even if the vehicle is parked for an extended period (with the ignition switched off).
- 3. Select **Reset** to reset the desired driving data.

Setting the content of the personal display in the PCM

The content of the individual data fields can be configured individually in the **Personal trip** menu. The user can choose between general information such as the date, time and outside temperature or arrival times, average speeds, fuel consumption data and selected vehicle parameters in different data fields from the navigation area.

1. **CAR** button ▶ **Trip**  ▶ **Personal trip** ▶ **Config**
2. Select the data field you wish to modify.
3. Select the desired content for the data field.

Information

If the menu item **Distance to next petrol station** is assigned to the data field, briefly pressing the symbol displayed on the touchscreen starts route calculation to this petrol station. Select to start route guidance to this petrol station.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Electrical Socket

Using the 12-volt plug socket

Electrical accessories can be connected to the 12-volt plug socket.

The 12-volt plug socket is located in the footwell on the passenger's side.

Connecting the charging adapter

i Information

- The 12-volt plug socket and the connected electrical accessories function even if the ignition is switched off or the driver's key is removed.
- If the engine is not running and the accessories are switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. The power supply is interrupted after about 30 minutes to protect the vehicle battery. If the load is to be switched on again, the ignition must be switched on once.
- The maximum load capacity of a 12-volt plug socket or cigarette lighter is 20 A but only if one load is operating. Do not exceed a 10 A load per 12-volt plug socket or cigarette lighter if several loads are operating simultaneously.
- Unshielded devices and equipment can cause interference to radio reception and malfunctions in the vehicle electronics.

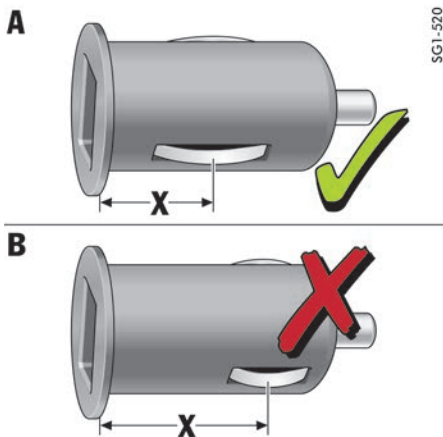


Fig. 82: Charging adapter for 12-volt plug sockets and cigarette lighter

- A** Suitable charging adapter
- B** Unsuitable charging adapter

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system.

- ▶ Only use suitable charging adapters (**A**): The **distance X** between the earth connection and the upper edge of the charging adapter must be **less than approx. 16 mm**.
- ▶ Unsuitable charging adapters (**B**) where the **distance X** between the earth connection and the upper edge is more than 16 mm can damage the 12-volt plug sockets.



Engine Oil

Checking engine-oil level

The oil level should be checked regularly (e.g. every time vehicle is refuelled).

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Before driving on race circuits” on page 15.

Responding to oil level warning

If the oil level is too low, the symbol  or  appears on the multi-function display together with a warning message, indicating that the engine must be topped up with oil immediately.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Reading off engine-oil level on multi-function display

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage.

If the oil level has dropped below the minimum mark, the engine will not be adequately lubricated.

- ▶ Check the oil level regularly.
 - ▶ Do not allow the oil level to fall below the minimum mark.
-
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Measuring and displaying engine oil level” on page 160.

Selecting and topping up engine oil

WARNING Burning engine oil

Cloths containing residues of engine oil that are thrown away or stored without ventilation can ignite by themselves and cause a fire.

- ▶ Soak up spilled engine oil with cloths.
- ▶ Keep cloths saturated with engine oil in a ventilated place until they are disposed of.

WARNING Hot exhaust system

The engine, adjacent components and the exhaust system become very hot when the engine is running.

- ▶ Take care when working near hot vehicle parts, particularly the engine and the exhaust system.
- ▶ Top up engine oil only with the engine stopped and ignition switched off.

NOTICE

Insufficient or excessive engine oil will damage the engine. Excessive engine oil may result in blue smoke formation and cause long-term damage to the catalytic converters.

- ▶ Do not allow the oil level to fall below the minimum mark.
- ▶ Do not fill engine oil beyond the maximum mark. In the event of overfilling, have the oil quantity corrected at the next opportunity. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

NOTICE

Risk of damage through overflowing engine oil. The luggage compartment or items of luggage may become soiled in this event.

- ▶ Take care not to soil the luggage compartment or items of luggage when checking and topping up engine oil.

Always observe the following points:

- Use only engine oils approved by Porsche. Observe the service intervals.
- Oils approved by Porsche can be mixed with each other.
- Do not mix with oil additives.

Selecting engine oil

Porsche recommends **Mobil 1**.

Vehicle	Approval	SAE viscosity class
All	Porsche A40	SAE 0W-40 ¹⁾ SAE 5W-40 ²⁾ SAE 5W-50 ²⁾

1) For all temperature ranges.

2) For the temperature range above –25 °C.

Information

Generally, you can find details on the manufacturer approvals on the oil containers or as a notice displayed by the retailer. In order to find out the approval status: Contact your Porsche partner.

Topping up engine oil

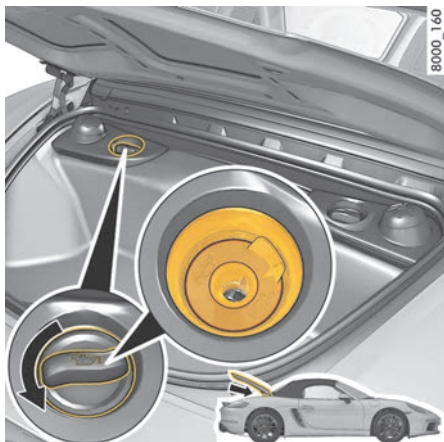


Fig. 83: Boxster oil filler opening

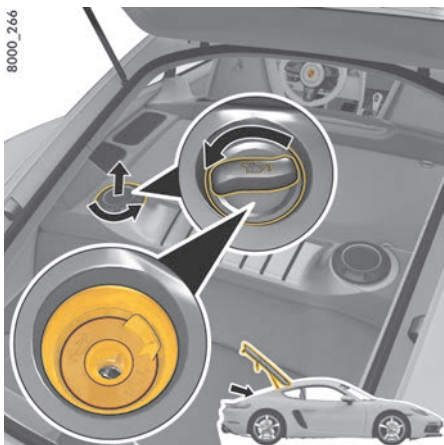


Fig. 84: Cayman oil filler opening

1. Read off the engine-oil level on the multi-function display.
- ▷ Refer to chapter "Measuring and displaying engine oil level" on page 160.
2. Open the rear luggage compartment.
3. Cayman: Turn cap anti-clockwise and remove.
4. Unscrew cap on the oil filler opening.
5. Add the quantity of engine oil shown on the multi-function display.
Never add more than the indicated quantity of engine oil. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 1 litre.
- ▷ Refer to chapter "Measuring and displaying engine oil level" on page 160.
6. Cayman: Fit cap first and then turn it clockwise.
7. Carefully close cap on the oil filler opening.

Fire Extinguisher

In order to ensure correct, safe operation of the fire extinguisher, observe the following points:

- ▶ Observe the fire extinguisher inspection intervals. If the fire extinguisher is used after its inspection interval has elapsed, it may not work.
- ▶ Always read the operating instructions on the fire extinguisher.
- ▶ Observe the fire extinguisher manufacturer's safety instructions on the label at the fire extinguisher handle.
- ▶ The fire extinguisher should be checked to ensure correct operation by a specialist workshop every 1 – 2 years.
- ▶ Have the fire extinguisher refilled after use.

8000_84

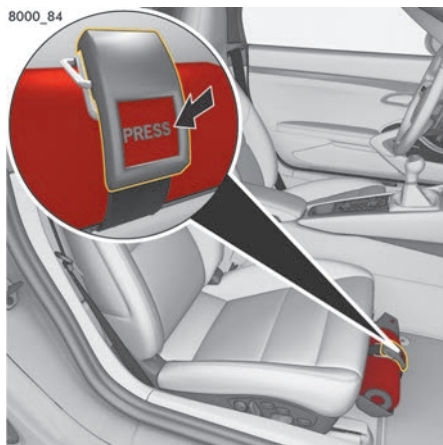


Fig. 85: Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat


Removing the fire extinguisher

In vehicles with a fire extinguisher, the extinguisher is located under the front passenger seat.

- ▶ To remove the fire extinguisher in case of an emergency, hold the extinguisher with one hand and press the button **PRESS** on the fire extinguisher holder with the other hand.

Flat Tyre

Responding to warning message

If the  symbol appears with a warning message in the multi-function display, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring system has detected a severe pressure loss. Pressure loss can be an indication of damage to the tyres.

- ▶ Stop in a suitable place and check the tyres indicated for damage.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Park the vehicle in a safe place

1. Stop the vehicle as far away from the driving lane as possible. The vehicle must be parked on a firm and flat surface offering adequate grip.
2. Switch hazard warning lights on.
3. Activate the electric parking brake.
4. Engage 1st gear.
– or –
Move the selector lever to position **P**.
5. Straighten the front wheels.
6. To lock the steering and prevent the engine from being started: Remove the driver’s key. Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: Remove control unit.
7. Get all passengers to leave the vehicle. When doing so, pay attention to other traffic.
8. Set up the warning triangle at a suitable distance.
9. Secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g. by means of wedges under the wheels on the opposite side.

Sealing defective tyres



WARNING

Temporarily repaired tyres

If driving at an inappropriate speed or under continuous load, damaged tyres with tyre sealing compound can burst or lose pressure.

- ▶ Sealing the tyre with tyre sealing compound is only an emergency repair to enable you to drive to the nearest specialist workshop.
- ▶ Use the tyre sealing compound only for cuts or punctures no larger than 4 mm.
- ▶ Never use the tyre sealing compound if the rim is damaged.
- ▶ Have the tyre replaced by a specialist workshop as soon as possible. Inform the specialist workshop that the tyre contains tyre sealing compound.
- ▶ Tyres **must not** be repaired.
- ▶ Avoid hard acceleration and high cornering speeds.
- ▶ Do not drive any faster than the maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
- ▶ Observe the safety and operating instructions, which can be found in the separate operating instructions for the tyre sealing compound and compressor.

In the event of a flat tyre, tyre damage can be temporarily sealed using the tyre sealing compound provided in the vehicle. The following is required in order to seal a defective tyre properly:

- The **tyre sealant set** can be found in the front luggage compartment and consists of:
 - Filler bottle
 - Filling hose
 - Valve turner
 - Replacement valve insert
 - Sticker with the maximum permitted speed
 - Operating instructions
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit” on page 140.
- The **compressor** is located in the front luggage compartment:
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre filling compressor” on page 141.

Filling in tyre sealant



WARNING

Flammable and harmful sealant

The sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health.

- ▶ Do not smoke in the vicinity of the tyre sealing compound and do not use a naked light or flame.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing.
- ▶ Keep tyre sealant away from children.
- ▶ Do not inhale vapours.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

CAUTION

Contact with tyre sealing compound

Irritation or allergic reactions following contact with tyre sealing compound.

- ▶ Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing.
- ▶ If tyre sealing compound gets on your skin or into your eyes, thoroughly rinse the affected part of your body immediately with plenty of water.
- ▶ Change soiled clothing immediately.
- ▶ See a doctor immediately in the event of an allergic reaction.
- ▶ If tyre sealing compound is swallowed, thoroughly rinse out your mouth immediately and drink plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting. See a doctor immediately.

WARNING

Pressure loss in tyre

A tyre pressure sensor soiled with tyre sealing compound cannot correctly determine the tyre pressure.

- ▶ When changing the defective tyre, also have the tyre pressure sensor replaced.

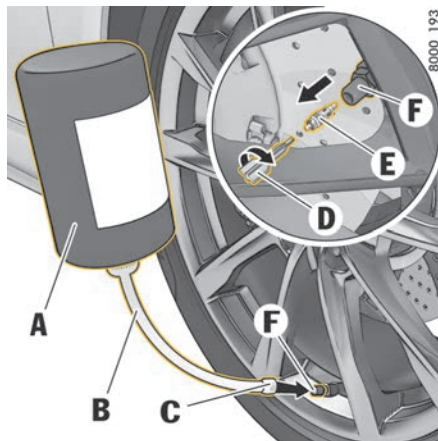


Fig. 86: Filling in tyre sealant

- A** Filler bottle
- B** Filling hose
- C** Filling hose plug
- D** Valve turner
- E** Valve insert
- F** Tyre valve

Preparing to fill

1. Leave the object that caused the puncture in the tyre.
2. Remove tyre sealing compound and the enclosed sticker from the front luggage compartment. The tyre sealing compound can be found in the right-hand box in the luggage compartment. The compressor is located under the cover in the luggage compartment.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre filling compressor” on page 141.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit” on page 140.

3. Stick the sticker in the driver’s field of vision.

Filling in tyre sealant

- ▶ Follow the separate operating instructions for using the tyre sealing compound.

1. Shake filler bottle **A**.
2. Screw filler hose **B** onto the filler bottle. The filler bottle is open.
3. Unscrew valve cap from the tyre valve **F**.
4. Remove valve insert **E** from the tyre valve with valve turner **D**.
If a replacement valve insert is not available, keep the valve insert in a clean, dry place.
5. Remove plug **C** from the filling hose **B**.
6. Push filler hose onto the tyre valve.
7. Hold the filler bottle higher than the level of the tyre valve and squeeze it forcefully until the bottle is completely emptied into the tyre.
8. Pull filler hose off the tyre valve.
9. If available, screw the replacement valve insert or alternatively valve insert **E** with valve turner **D** firmly into the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyres

- ▶ Follow the operating instructions on the compressor.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Inflating tyres” on page 257.
1. Connect the compressor to a plug socket in the vehicle and inflate the tyre to at least 2.5 bar (36 psi). If this tyre pressure cannot be reached, the tyre is too severely damaged. You may not continue driving with this tyre.
 2. Screw valve cap onto the tyre valve **F**.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Checking pressure

- ▶ Check the tyre pressure after driving for approx. 10 minutes.
If the tyre pressure is less than 1.5 bar (22 psi), do not continue driving. If a value of more than 1.5 bar (22 psi) is indicated, correct the pressure to the prescribed value.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Tyre pressure” on page 313.

Replacing the tyres

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Replacing tyres and wheels” on page 259.

The tyre settings on the multi-function display must be updated after changing a wheel.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “TPM menu (TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)” on page 162.

Fuses

⚠ WARNING Short circuit

Working on the vehicle's electrical system can cause short circuits. Such short circuits can cause a fire.

- ▶ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.

⚠ WARNING Improper intervention and wrong accessories

Improper intervention in the fuse box and the use of the wrong accessories can cause damage and faults in electrical or electronic systems.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Use only accessories approved by Porsche. For information on approved accessories: Contact your Porsche partner.

Relays

Have a qualified specialist workshop check and change relays.

Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Checking and changing fuses



Fig. 87: Elements in the fuse box in the left footwell

- 1 Spare fuses
- 2 Plastic gripper

In order to prevent damage to the electrical system due to short circuits and overloads, the individual circuits are protected by fuses. The fuse boxes are located in the side walls of the driver's and passenger's footwell respectively. The plastic gripper and spare fuses can be found in both fuse boxes under the top cover.

1. Switch off the load with the defective fuse if possible.
2. Detach the plastic cover at the finger hole.
3. Remove the fuse from its slot using the yellow plastic gripper **2** in order to check it. A blown fuse can be identified by the melted metal strip.
4. Insert the new fuse. Only use fuses with the same rating as replacements. Spare fuses **1** can be found in the left-hand fuse box, next to the yellow plastic gripper **2**.

i Information

If the same fuse blows repeatedly, the cause of the fault must be corrected immediately.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Fuses on driver's side

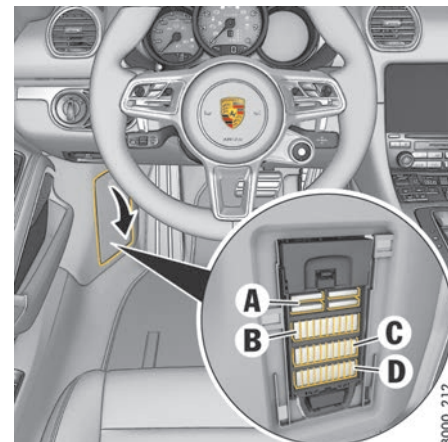


Fig. 88: Fuse carrier in the footwell on the driver's side

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Row A

- 1** Lower left: Air-conditioner blower (right-hand drive vehicles only) 40 A ■
- 2** Upper left: PSM control unit 40 A ■
- 3** Lower right: Adjusting seats and driver seat control unit 25 A ■
- 4** Upper right: Boxster: Convertible top 40 A ■

Row B

- 1** Headlight adjustment for LHD/RHD 40 A ■
Front lid light
Front lid actuator
High beam headlight, left
Dipped beam headlight, left
Side marker light, front right
Direction indicator, rear left and front left
- 2** Exhaust flap control 15 A ■
Raised brake light, rear wing
Rear lid actuator
Rear fog light, right
Brake light, left
Reversing light, left
Tail light, left
Daytime running light, left
- 3** Alarm horn 15 A ■

- 4** Interior lighting 15 A ■
Hall sensors
Orientation light
Heated rear window relay
Central locking LED
Door panels LED
Ambient light
Number plate light
Rear fog light, left
Raised brake light
Brake light, right
Reversing light, right
Tail light, right
Daytime running light, right
Cayman: Rear wiper electronics activation
- 5** Fuel pump system relay and control unit 20 A ■
- 6** Filler flap lock 10 A ■
Electric steering column lock
Terminal 30
Washer pump, front and rear
- 7** Not used
- 8** Air conditioning control unit 7.5 A ■
- 9** Not used
- 10** Steering column 15 A ■
Stopwatch

Row C

- 1** Centre console button panel 10 A ■
Gateway control unit
Diagnostic socket
Ignition lock
Steering column lock
Light switch
ERA-GLONASS control unit (only left-hand drive, Russia)
Cayman: Luggage compartment light
- 2** Footwell lights 40 A ■
Electric ignition lock anti-removal lock
Direction indicator, front right and rear right
Hazard warning light button LED
Electric ignition lock light
Side direction indicator, front right and front left
High beam headlight, right
Dipped beam headlight, right
Side marker light, front left
- 3** VTS control unit 5 A ■
- 4** Horn 15 A ■
- 5** Filler flap 30 A ■
Rear wing control extend and retract
Boxster: Convertible-top lock closing aid
Boxster: Opening and closing convertible top compartment catch

6 Power window control unit, left Door control unit, left	25 A	■
7 Headlight cleaning system	30 A	■
8 PSM control unit	25 A	■
9 Alarm siren	5 A	■
10 Passenger compartment monitoring sensor	5 A	■

Row D

1 Cayman: Rear wiper	15 A	■
2 Garage door opener	5 A	■
3 Left headlight	15 A	■
4 Front camera control unit PDC control unit Gateway/diagnostic socket Air quality sensor Headlight control unit	5 A	■
5 PSM control unit	5 A	■
6 Steering column switching module Electrical steering gear Refrigerant pressure sensor Radiator fan relay	5 A	■
7 Selector lever control unit Clutch switch sensor	5 A	■
8 Right headlight	15 A	■
9 Interior mirror	5 A	■
10 Seat ventilation, left	5 A	■

Fuses on passenger's side

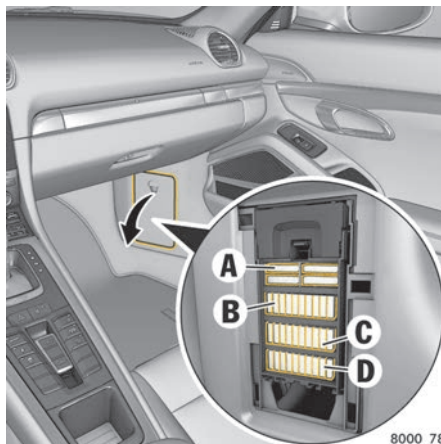


Fig. 89: Fuse carrier in the footwell on the passenger's side

Row A

1 Lower left: DC/DC converter PCM	40 A	■
2 Not used		
3 Lower right: Fresh-air blower motor and fan control (LHD only)	40 A	■
4 Upper right: Adjusting seats and passenger seat control unit	25 A	■









Row B

1 Rain sensor	5 A	■
2 Air conditioning/seat heating control unit	25 A	■
3 PCM components: (reversing camera, antenna amplifier, control unit display, USB hub, coupling antenna, card reader)	5 A	■
4 Central computer with external booster	7.5 A	■
Central computer with internal booster	20 A	■
5 TPM control unit Air conditioning control unit	5 A	■
6 Sound system amplifier	40 A	■
7 Burmester® subwoofer booster	40 A	■
8 Not used		
9 Instrument cluster	10 A	■
10 Door handle proximity sensor	5 A	■

Row C

1 ERA-GLONASS TSX808 diagnostic socket (only left-hand drive, Russia)	5 A	■
2 Electric parking brake switch	5 A	■
3 Overhead console	5 A	■
4 PDK control unit	25 A	■
5 Not used		
6 Front wiper motor	30 A	■
7 Power window control unit, right Right door control unit	25 A	■

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A	8 Steering column adjustment	25 A 
B	9 Not used	
C	10 Not used	
D	Row D	
E	1 Airbag control unit	5 A 
F	Seat occupancy detection control unit	
G	2 PASM control unit	5 A 
H	3 Not used	
I	4 ACC control unit	5 A 
J	5 Not used	
K	6 Seat ventilation, right	5 A 
L	7 Start-relevant loads	5 A 
M	DME, PDK, VTS, ERA-GLONASS control units (only left-hand drive, Russia)	
N	Rear BCM	
O	ERA-GLONASS diagnostic socket (only left-hand drive, Russia)	
P		
Q	8 Not used	
R	9 Centre console socket Cigarette lighter	20 A 
S	10 Socket in passenger footwell	20 A 
T		
U		
V		
W		
X		
Y		
Z		

Garage Door Opener (HomeLink®)

Using the garage door opener on the vehicle

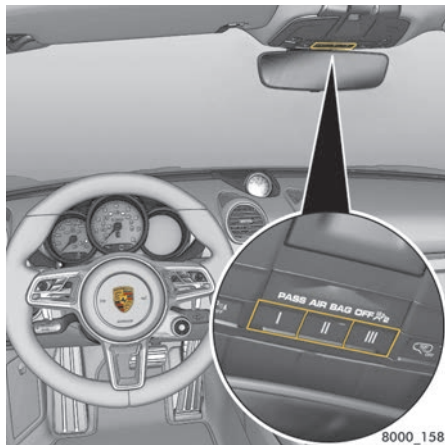


Fig. 90: Buttons on the HomeLink® system

With the HomeLink® system, remote-controlled equipment (e.g. garage door/gate to your property, security systems, house lights) can be activated from inside the vehicle.

The HomeLink® system replaces up to three different original remote controls. The signal for a remote control can be assigned to one of the three memory buttons on the overhead console. The relevant device can then be operated via the programmed button.

- ▶ Please read the instructions for the original remote control.

i Information

For information on the compatibility of the HomeLink® system on the vehicle with the original hand transmitter:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ Visit www.homelink.com or call the free HomeLink® hotline (0)0800 046 635 465 or (0)08000 HOMELINK.

⚠ WARNING

Pinching, crushing or knocking against the operated equipment

Risk of accidents when using or programming the garage door opener if persons or animals are within the range of movement of the equipment that is being operated.

- ▶ When using or programming the HomeLink® system, make sure that no persons, animals or objects are within the range of movement of the equipment that is being operated.
- ▶ Observe the safety notes for the original remote control.

i Information

- ▶ Before selling the vehicle, delete the programmed signals for the garage door opener.

Operating the garage door opener

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ Vehicle aligned towards the receiver and within range of the receiver (signal is transmitted forwards in direction of travel).
- ▶ Press and hold the corresponding HomeLink® button on the overhead console. During signal transmission, the indicator light **A** on button **II** (Fig. 91) lights up.

Programming garage door opener

Programming of the HomeLink® system is carried out from the overhead console and in the direct vicinity of the vehicle front.

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ Direction indicators switched off.
- ✓ Engine not running.
- ✓ Vehicle aligned towards the receiver and within range of the receiver (signal is transmitted forwards in direction of travel).

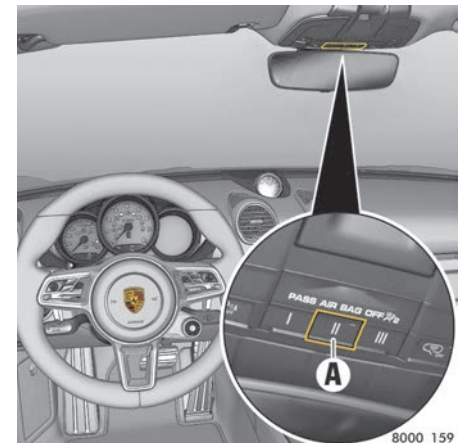


Fig. 91: Programming garage door opener

Deleting programmed signals from the buttons

This process deletes the entire HomeLink® programming. It is not possible to individually clear the programmed buttons.

- ▶ Do not repeat this process if you want to assign additional signals to the buttons.

1. Keep the two outer buttons **I** and **III** on the overhead console pressed for approx. 20 seconds until the indicator light **A** starts to flash quickly.
2. Release the buttons.
The assignment of the HomeLink® buttons is deleted. The HomeLink® buttons can be reprogrammed.

Assigning garage door opener signal to button – fixed code system

On the overhead console

1. Delete the standard factory-set codes before programming **for the first time**.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Deleting programmed signals from the buttons” on page 118.
2. Press and hold the desired button on the overhead console until the indicator light **A** starts to flash slowly.
You now have 5 minutes to teach the button.
3. Stand in front of the vehicle with the original remote control of the system to be programmed.

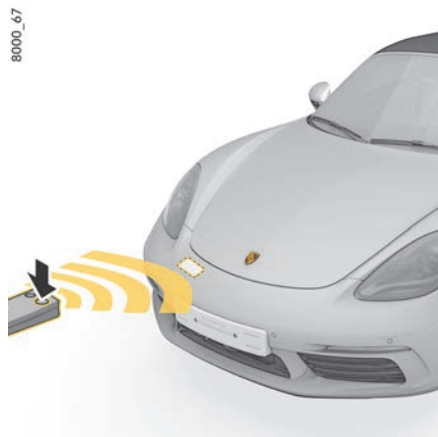


Fig. 92: Positioning the original hand transmitter in front of the vehicle

In front of the vehicle

4. Hold the original remote control approx. 20 cm away from the marked position (Fig. 92) and press and hold the transmit button (for more than approx. 1 minute in some cases) until the vehicle's direction indicators flash on and off three times or the indicator light **A** on the overhead console starts flashing quickly. The vehicle's direction indicators flash three times and the indicator light **A** flashes quickly to confirm that the new signal has been programmed successfully.
Several attempts with different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control may be necessary.
With some systems, the transmit button on the original remote control may need to be pressed again when the indicator light on the original remote control goes out.

5. The vehicle's direction indicators flash once when the 5-minute teaching readiness period has elapsed: Repeat steps 2 to 4.
6. To assign signals to the remaining buttons: Repeat steps 2 to 4.

Assigning garage door opener signal to button – changeable code system

With some systems, a changeable code also needs to be programmed for the HomeLink® system. A second person makes programming easier.

Identifying the changeable code

- ▶ Press and hold the previously programmed HomeLink® button.
If the indicator light **A** flashes quickly and then lights up continuously after approx. 2 seconds, this means that the device has a changeable code system.
- ▶ For information on synchronisation, please also refer to the operating instructions for the equipment being programmed.

Assigning garage door opener signal to button

On the overhead console

1. Delete the standard factory-set codes before programming **for the first time**.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Deleting programmed signals from the buttons” on page 118.
2. Press and hold the desired button on the overhead console until the indicator light **A** starts to flash slowly.
You now have 5 minutes to teach the button.
3. Stand in front of the vehicle with the original remote control of the system to be programmed.

In front of the vehicle

4. Hold the original remote control approx. 20 cm away from the marked position (Fig. 92 on page 118) and press and hold the transmit button (for more than approx. 1 minute in some cases) until the vehicle's direction indicators flash on and off three times or the indicator light **A** on the overhead console starts flashing quickly.

The vehicle's direction indicators flash three times and the indicator light **A** flashes quickly to confirm that the new signal has been programmed successfully.

Several attempts with different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control may be necessary.

With some systems, the transmit button on the original remote control may need to be pressed again when the indicator light on the original remote control goes out.

5. The vehicle's direction indicators flash once when the 5-minute teaching readiness period has elapsed: Repeat steps 2 to 4.
6. To assign signals to the remaining buttons: Repeat steps 2 to 4.
7. Locate the programming button on the receiver of the system to be programmed, e.g. on the motor unit of the garage door opener.

Synchronising the system

8. Press the programming button on the receiver of the system to be programmed or get a second person to press the button. Then initiate the next step within approx. 30 seconds (depending on the system) (a setting indicator is usually activated on the motor unit).

9. Press the button you selected in step 2 on the overhead console three times (on some systems, you must press the button several times to complete the setting process).
 - ▶ Repeat steps 2 to 9 to assign signals to the other buttons.

After completing programming, the system should recognise the HomeLink® signal and launch as soon as the memory button is pressed.

Reprogramming an individual button on the keypad

A HomeLink® button can be individually reprogrammed without deleting the rest of the button assignments.

On the overhead console

1. Press and hold the desired button on the overhead console until the indicator light **A** starts to flash slowly. You now have 5 minutes to teach the button.
2. Stand in front of the vehicle with the original remote control of the system to be programmed.

In front of the vehicle

3. Hold the original remote control approx. 20 cm away from the marked position (Fig. 92 on page 118) and press and hold the transmit button (for more than approx. 1 minute in some cases) until the vehicle's direction indicators flash on and off three times or the indicator light **A** on the overhead console starts flashing quickly. The vehicle's direction indicators flash three times and the indicator light **A** flashes quickly to confirm that the new signal has been programmed successfully.

Several attempts with different distances between the vehicle and the original remote control may be necessary.

With some systems, the transmit button on the original remote control may need to be pressed again when the indicator light on the original remote control goes out.

4. The vehicle's direction indicators flash once when the 5-minute teaching readiness period has elapsed: Repeat steps 2 to 3.
5. To assign signals to the remaining buttons: Repeat steps 2 to 3.

i Information

If you have not been able to successfully assign signals to the buttons even though you have carefully followed the instructions in this section and the operating instructions for the original remote control:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ Make sure that the battery in the remote control for the garage door opener is new. If the battery voltage is inadequate, faults may occur in signal transmission. The system in the vehicle then learns the wrong code, which will not be recognised reliably by the garage door opening mechanism.

Headlights

NOTICE

Abrasion and excessive temperatures can damage the headlights.

- ▶ Do not affix any coverings (e.g. stone guards or films) in the area of the headlights.

i Information

The headlights can mist up due to temperature and humidity. This misting will disappear after you have driven a sufficient distance.

- ▶ To ensure optimum ventilation, do not cover the gap between headlight and body.

Headlight adjustment

- ▶ Adjustment of the headlights should only be performed at a qualified specialist workshop with suitable adjustment equipment. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Changing headlights with dynamic cornering light for driving on the left or right

- ✓ Vehicles with the Porsche Dynamic Light System (PDLS) or the Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus).

When you cross the border into a country where traffic drives on the other side of the road, the headlights must be converted in the multi-function display. The dipped beam then lights symmetrically and drivers of oncoming vehicles are not dazzled.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Converting headlights for left or right-hand traffic" on page 267.

i Information

After conversion, a message appears on the multi-function display each time the ignition is switched on.

- ▶ Readjust headlights on the return journey.

i Information

Bi-Xenon headlights **without** dynamic cornering light (PDLS/PDLS Plus) cannot be converted for left or right-hand traffic. The light distribution of this headlight type is homogeneous on both sides of the road, which prevents dazzling of the oncoming traffic.

Replacing light-emitting diodes and long-life bulbs

Various lights, e.g. direction indicator lights, gas-discharge headlights in Bi-Xenon headlights, tail lights, number plate lights and interior lights are equipped with light emitting diodes and long-life bulbs.

The LEDs cannot be replaced individually.

Replacement of the long-life bulbs involves a greater amount of installation work.

- ▶ Have defective LEDs and long-life bulbs replaced at a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Heated Rear Window and Exterior Mirror Heating


Heating rear window and exterior mirrors



8000_166


Fig. 93: Heated rear window and exterior mirror heating button

Switching on heated rear window and exterior mirror heating


- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press the  button.
The indicator light on the button lights up.

Depending on the outside temperature, rear window and exterior mirror heating switches off automatically after approx. 5 to 20 minutes.

Switching back on

- ▶ Press the button  again.
The indicator light on the button lights up

Switching off heated rear window and exterior mirror heating

- ▶ Press the  button.
The indicator light on the button goes out.

Information

If the battery voltage is too low, rear window and exterior mirror heating is restricted initially and then switched off.

HOLD Function: Drive-Off Assistant, Standstill Management

The HOLD function is an assistance function that assists the driver when stopping and driving off on upward slopes.

The vehicle is automatically prevented from rolling back away from the desired direction of travel.

When the HOLD function is active, the indicator light **HOLD** on the instrument panel comes on.

When adaptive cruise control is operating normally, the HOLD function actively holds the vehicle at a standstill following automatic braking. If the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened while the HOLD function is active, the electric parking brake is activated automatically.

Driving off with Drive-Off Assistant

- ✓ Vehicles with manual transmission.
- ✓ Engine is running.
- 1. Hold the vehicle securely on the slope with the footbrake.
- 2. Press the clutch pedal fully.
- 3. Engage a gear corresponding to the direction of travel up the slope (1st gear or reverse gear).
- 4. Release the footbrake while keeping the clutch pedal pressed.
The vehicle is held on the slope to facilitate driving off and prevent it from rolling back.
- 5. Drive off as usual.

i Information

If the vehicle is held on the slope by the electric parking brake, drive off in the usual way. The electric parking brake detects the driver's intention to drive off and is released automatically.
▶ Refer to chapter "Brakes" on page 63.

i Information

The Drive-Off Assistant will not function in the following cases:

- Clutch not pressed
- Vehicle not stationary
- Engine not running
- Gradients of less than 5 %
- Pressure on brake pedal too low

Driving off with standstill management

- ✓ Vehicles with PDK.
- The vehicle is stopped and prevented from rolling back away from the desired direction of travel even without pressing the brake. The HOLD function is only available in an active transmission range (not **P** or **N**).

i Information

The HOLD function can be activated, irrespective of the gradient, by flooring the pressed brake pedal while the vehicle is stationary. This prevents the vehicle from moving without having to keep the brake pedal pressed. A quick change of the PDK selector-lever position does not deactivate the HOLD function in this case.

! WARNING

Slight rolling back on uphill gradients

If the vehicle comes to a standstill on a steep uphill gradient without operation of the footbrake by the driver, the vehicle may roll back slightly before the HOLD function is activated. In this situation, the driver can reduce the roll-back by pressing the footbrake.

- ▶ Assist holding of the vehicle by increasing the braking force with the footbrake.

i Information

When the HOLD function is active, the brake pedal may feel different and you may hear hydraulic noises. This behaviour is normal for the system. It is not a fault.

! WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle

Responsibility for driving off on upward slopes is still the driver's, despite the HOLD function. Assistance by the HOLD function is not always guaranteed when stopping and driving off on a slippery surface (e.g. on icy or loose surfaces). In this case, the vehicle can slip.

- ▶ Always adjust your driving style to the driving conditions and vehicle load. Use the footbrake if necessary.

If the Drive-Off Assistant is not functioning, the driver cannot be assisted when driving off on hills.

- ▶ Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.

Instrument and Interior Lighting

Adjusting brightness of instrument lighting

8020_46



Fig. 94: Adjustment button

The lighting is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness via light sensors.

In addition, when the vehicle lighting is switched on, the instrument and switch brightness can be adjusted manually.

- ▶ Turn adjustment button **A** in the appropriate direction and hold it until the desired brightness has been reached.



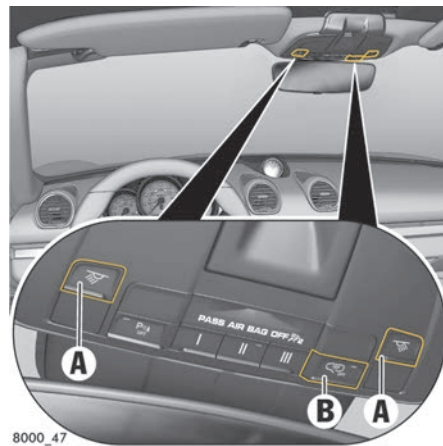
WARNING

Adjusting the brightness while driving

Adjusting the brightness while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Do not reach through the steering wheel spokes while driving.

Switching interior lighting on and off



8000_47

Fig. 95: Buttons for interior/reading lights

- A** Button for interior/reading lights
- B** Switching automatic interior lighting on and off

Switching interior/reading lights on and off

- ▶ Press button **A**.

Adjusting brightness (dimming)

- ▶ Press and hold button **A** for at least 1 second until the desired level of brightness is reached.

Switching automatic interior lighting on and off

Depending on equipment, the automatic interior lights can be switched on and off using button **B** or in the menu of the **multi-function display**.

Using button B:

- ▶ Press button **B**.

When interior lighting is switched off, the indicator light in the button lights up.

When interior lighting is switched on and once it gets dark, the interior lighting is

- **switched on:** when a door is unlocked or opened, or when the driver's key is removed from the ignition lock.
- **switched off:** when both doors have been closed, after a delay of approx. 120 seconds. The off delay time can be preset on the multi-function display. The interior lighting goes out as soon as the ignition is switched on or the vehicle is locked.

On the multi-function display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Activating or deactivating interior lights when the door is opened" on page 268.

Switching off interior lighting to protect battery

In darkness, the interior lighting is switched off automatically approx. 15 minutes after the engine stops to preserve the vehicle battery.

In daylight conditions, interior lights that were switched on manually are switched off automatically after approx. 1 minute.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Orientation lighting

Lights in the overhead console and at the ignition lock help vehicle occupants to locate important controls in the vehicle in darkness and ensure better overall orientation. The lights are switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off again automatically when the vehicle is locked.

The brightness of the orientation lighting is adjusted (dimmed) on the multi-function display.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Adjusting brightness of orientation lighting” on page 268.

Ambient lighting

If the vehicle is driven at night, a discreet light provides subtle illumination for the passenger compartment. The ambient lighting is switched off automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Instrument Panel

8020_1

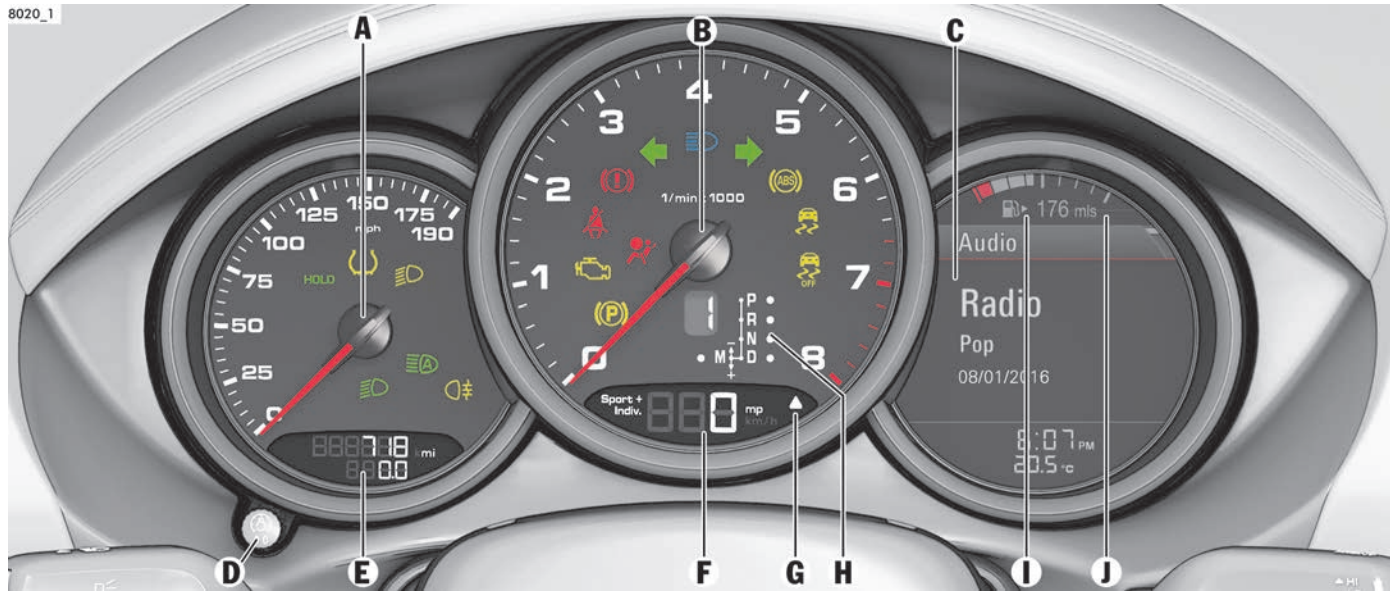


Fig. 96: Displays on the instrument panel

A – Speedometer**B – Tachometer**

The start of the red zone on the tachometer scale is a visual warning of the maximum permissible engine speed.

C – Multi-function display

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Multi-Function Display” on page 157.

D – Reset button for trip counter, instrument lighting and PCM brightness setting

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Instrument and Interior Lighting” on page 123.

E – Total distance and trip meter

The upper display counts the total mileage, the lower display shows individual trips. After exceeding 9,999 kilometres or 6,213 miles, the trip display returns to “0”. Resetting trip display manually:

- ▶ Press and hold the trip display reset button **D** for approx. 1 second. The trip display is reset to “0”.

F – Digital speedometer**G – Upshift indicator**

The consumption-oriented upshift indicator lights up – prompting you to shift up to the next-higher gear – depending on the selected gear, engine speed and accelerator pedal position. The upshift prompt is only available in manual selection mode.

- ▶ Change to the next-higher gear when the upshift indicator lights up.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z**H – Selector-lever position and engaged gear display****I – Filler flap location indicator**

The arrow is pointing towards the side of the vehicle on which the filler flap is located.

J – Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge displays the contents of the tank when the ignition is on.

► Refer to chapter “Refuelling” on page 209.

If the vehicle’s inclination changes (e.g. driving uphill or downhill), minor deviations in the indication may occur.

Fuel reserve warning

If there is less than a certain amount (which varies depending on the model) remaining in the tank or the minimum fuel range is exceeded, the warning light lights up when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running and a fuel range warning message is displayed.

► Refuel at the next opportunity.

NOTICE

A shortage of fuel may damage the emission control system.

- Never drive the tank dry.
- If the warning light has come on or the fuel range warning message has appeared, do not take bends at high speed.

Warning and indicator lights**NOTICE**

All the warning lights and some of the indicator lights light up briefly when the ignition is switched on. Faults are indicated by the warning lights.

Consult a qualified specialist workshop in the following cases:

- The warning light does not come on briefly when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning light lights up or flashes when the engine is running or during driving.

Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

**Information**

The corresponding warning light only goes out when the cause of the fault has been rectified.

In the speedometer

HOLD HOLD function indicator light



Tyre pressure warning light

Causes of light flashing or staying on:

- Learning new fitted wheels (tyre pressure sensors), as long as the wheels have not yet been recognised
- Defect in Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) or a temporary fault
- Pressure loss in a tyre
- In the event of pressure loss: Stop in a suitable place. Do not continue driving.
- Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.
- Refer to chapter “TPM menu (TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)” on page 162.



PDL warning light



Dipped beam indicator light



Dynamic high beam indicator light



Rear fog light indicator light

In the tachometer



Sport/Sport+/Individual indicator light



Electric parking brake warning light

Emission control warning light
(Check Engine)

Causes of light flashing or staying on:
Malfunctions (e.g. engine misfiring) that could increase pollutant emissions or cause consequential damage.

- ▶ Reduce engine speed and load immediately.
- ▶ If necessary, stop in a suitable safe place. Make sure that combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves cannot come into contact with the hot exhaust system.
- ▶ Initiate measures to resolve the emission control fault:
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.



Airbag warning light



Seat belt warning light



Brake warning light



Direction indicator, left



High beam indicator light



Direction indicator, right



ABS warning light



PSM warning light



PSM OFF warning light

Jack and Lifting Platform

There are arrow markings on the side skirt in the area of the jacking points.

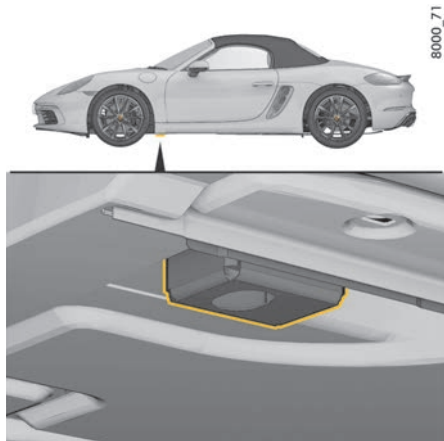


Fig. 97: Front jacking point for lifting platform and jack

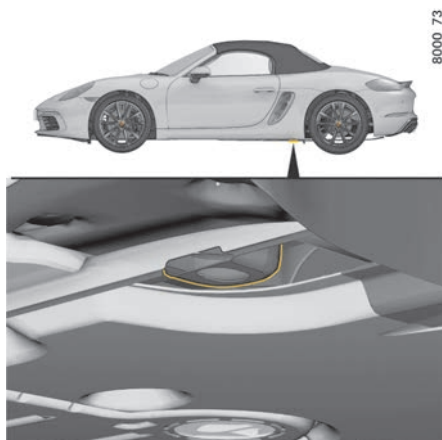


Fig. 98: Rear jacking point for lifting platform and jack

⚠ WARNING

Insufficiently secured vehicle

A vehicle that is not secured or that is incorrectly secured may move unintentionally or tip or fall off lifting equipment, e.g. jack or lifting platform. This can result in serious injuries and damage.

- ▶ The vehicle must be raised using the jack only when on a solid and level surface.
 - ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points (Fig. 97, Fig. 98) on the vehicle underbody.
 - ▶ Always place the vehicle on solid supports when carrying out work under the vehicle.
 - ▶ Never start the engine once the vehicle is raised. Engine vibration may cause the vehicle to fall.
 - ▶ When working on the engine while it is running, always apply the electric parking brake **and** move the gearshift lever into the neutral position or the selector lever to the **P** position.
-
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Changing a wheel” on page 260.

Jump-Lead Starting

If the battery is flat, another vehicle's battery can be used for starting and as an external power supply with the help of jump leads. Both batteries must be 12 V batteries. The capacity (Ah) of the donor battery must not be substantially less than that of the flat battery. The flat battery must be connected correctly to the vehicle's electrical system.

▷ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 59.

Repeated jump-lead starting under normal operating conditions may indicate that the battery is damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable jump leads and incorrect procedures

A short circuit may be caused if unsuitable jump leads are used or if jump-lead starting is not performed properly. Such short circuits can cause a fire.

- ▶ Use only standard jump leads with sufficient cross section and completely insulated clamps. Follow the instructions provided by the jump lead manufacturer.
- ▶ The vehicles must not touch, otherwise current might flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- ▶ Ensure that conductive jewellery (e.g. rings, chains, watch straps) does not come into contact with live parts of the vehicle.
- ▶ Never connect jump leads directly to the battery. Always connect jump leads to the jump-lead starting terminals.

⚠ WARNING

Jump-lead starting a frozen or damaged battery

When jump-lead starting a frozen or damaged battery, there is a danger of explosion and chemical burns.

- ▶ **Never** jump-lead start a frozen or damaged battery.

⚠ CAUTION

Corrosive electrolyte

Lead batteries contain highly caustic battery acid that can cause damage to the skin and clothing in the event of contact.

- ▶ Wear safety gloves and eye protection.
- ▶ To prevent acid from leaking out, do not tilt the battery.

Jump-lead starting

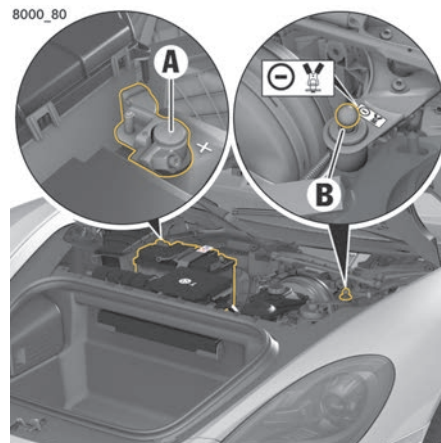


Fig. 99: Pole

A Positive terminal +

B Ground point -

1. Open front luggage compartment lid.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter "Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid" on page 146.
2. Remove cover in front luggage compartment.
 - ▷ To remove the cover: Refer to chapter "Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit" on page 140.
3. Connect the red positive cable to the positive terminal **A** of the flat battery.
4. Connect the red positive cable to the positive terminal of the donor battery.
5. Connect the black negative cable to the negative terminal of the donor battery.
6. Connect the black negative cable to the ground point **B**.
 - Never** connect the black negative cable directly to the battery.
7. Allow the engine of the donor vehicle to run at a higher engine speed.
8. Start the engine. An attempted start using jump leads should not last more than 15 seconds. Then wait for at least one minute.
9. With engine running: First, disconnect the black negative cable from the ground point **B** then from the negative terminal on the donor battery.
10. With engine running: Disconnect the red positive lead from the positive terminal on the donor battery first, then from the positive terminal **A** on the flat battery.

Lane Change Assist (LCA)

Lane Change Assist (LCA) warns the driver about vehicles approaching from behind or those in the blind-spot. This applies when overtaking other vehicles and when being overtaken. Integrated warning indicators in both mirror attachment point finishers light up as soon as a dangerous situation is identified and changing lanes seems essential.



Fig. 100: Warning indicator **A** on the mirror attachment point finisher

! WARNING

Lack of attention

Even with Lane Change Assist, absolute care and attention on the part of the driver is still required while driving. Ultimately, the driver is still responsible for changing lanes.

- ▶ Keep the direction of travel and the relevant area around the vehicle in view at all times.

! WARNING

Impaired radar sensor vision

The view of the radar sensor can be reduced in tight bends, when approaching crests and in adverse weather conditions (rain, snow, ice, heavy spray). Vehicles will not be detected properly or may not be detected at all.

- ▶ Keep the direction of travel and the relevant area around the vehicle in view at all times.

! WARNING

Vehicles not detected

- Lane Change Assist cannot alert you in good time to vehicles approaching at high speed from behind or vehicles that are falling back.
- Lane Change Assist will not work in tight bends (corner radius of less than approx. 100 m).
- Lane Change Assist will only alert you to approaching vehicles or vehicles in the blind-spot area when you are driving at approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) or faster.
- ▶ Keep the direction of travel and the relevant area around the vehicle in view at all times.

General information

- The system helps when driving at speeds between approx. 30 km/h and 250 km/h (20 mph and 156 mph).
- The warning indicator is designed so that it can be noticed merely by glancing at the mirror attachment point finisher.
- Lane Change Assist is not available if it detects that the radar sensors for Lane Change Assist are covered.
- The radar sensors can sometimes detect other objects (e.g. high or raised crash barriers), not just vehicles.

i

Information

- ▶ If the positions of the radar sensors were changed following a rear-impact collision, for example, always have the Lane Change Assist system checked at a specialist workshop for safety reasons.

Activating and deactivating Lane Change Assist

Lane Change Assist is activated and deactivated in the multi-function display.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Switching Lane Change Assist (LCA) on and off" on page 266.

i

Information

To ensure that Lane Change Assist can work properly:

- ▶ Do not cover the radar sensor area on the rear bumper (Fig. 101) with objects (e.g. stickers). Also remove any dirt, snow and ice from this area.
- ▶ Do not cover the warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher (e.g. with stickers).



Fig. 101: Radar sensors in the rear bumper

Operating principle

Lane Change Assist measures the distance and speed difference of detected vehicles compared to your vehicle using the radar sensors integrated in the rear bumper. The radar sensors calculate an area of around 70 m to the rear (approach zone) and the blind-spot.

Whenever Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance as critical for changing lanes, this is indicated on the relevant mirror attachment point finisher.

Both sides of the vehicle are displayed separately. This is how the warning indicator in the left mirror attachment point finisher assists the driver when changing to the left lane, for example.

If a vehicle regarded as critical has set its direction indicator, the respective warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher flashes brightly and briefly several times.

When another vehicle is slowly overtaken (speed difference of less than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph)), the warning indicator lights up as soon as this vehicle is in your blind-spot area and is detected by Lane Change Assist. If there is a greater speed difference, this is not indicated on the exterior mirror.

i Information

The radar sensors cover the adjacent lane to the left and right. Other lanes are **not** covered by the radar sensors.

Information and warning stage

Lane Change Assist has 2 warning indicator stages that are activated accordingly depending on whether the direction indicator was set or not.

Information stage

If the direction indicator is not set, Lane Change Assist will inform you about detected vehicles that will be regarded as critical for a possible lane change. Whenever Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance of a detected vehicle as critical, a **weak** light appears in the warning indicator on the relevant mirror.

Warning stage

If the direction indicator is set and Lane Change Assist has detected a vehicle on this side which it regards as critical, the warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher on this side will start to flash **brightly**. When the warning stage flashes brightly and briefly several times, this is an indication for you to check the driving situation again by looking in the exterior mirror and looking over your shoulder.

i Information

The brightness of the warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher can be adjusted.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Setting display brightness of Lane Change Assist (LCA) on exterior mirror" on page 267.

i Information

- The faster a vehicle is approaching, the earlier the warning indicator on the exterior mirror lights up. You are alerted to all vehicles detected by Lane Change Assist when they are in the "blind-spot area" at the latest.
- Changing lanes can already be critical when there are fast approaching vehicles if there is still no indication on the mirror attachment point finisher.

Driving situations

The following driving situations describe possible scenarios and the associated warning indicators of Lane Change Assist.

Driving situation – vehicle approaching fast

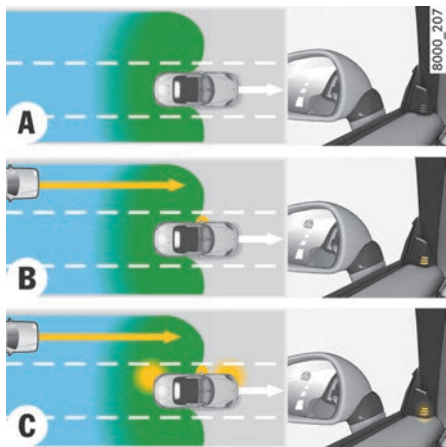


Fig. 102: Vehicle approaching fast

A – Warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher does not light up

The sensors do not detect a vehicle. No lights on the warning indicator on the exterior mirror.

B – Warning indicator lights up in information stage

The sensors detect a fast approaching vehicle – in the left lane in the example. This vehicle is already regarded as critical for changing lanes due to the significant speed difference even though it is still a good distance away. The warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher lights up.

C – Warning indicator flashes in warning stage

When the direction indicator is set to driving situation **B**, the warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher flashes briefly several times. Lane Change Assist is telling you that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

Driving situation – vehicle approaching slowly

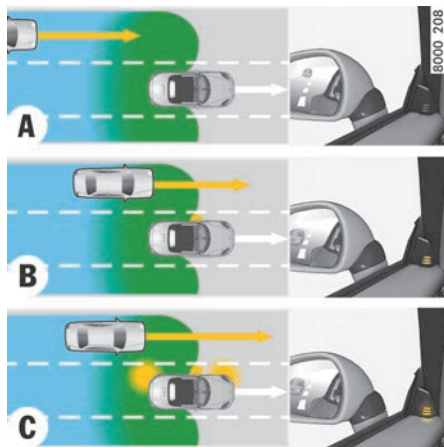


Fig. 103: Vehicle approaching slowly

A – Warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher does not light up

The sensors detect a slowly approaching vehicle – in the left lane in the example. Given the small speed difference and the long distance, this is not indicated on the mirror attachment point finisher.

B – Warning indicator lights up in information stage

The slowly approaching vehicle is now closer. The warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher lights up.

Only when Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance as critical for changing lanes will this be indicated on the mirror attachment point finisher. You are alerted to all vehicles detected by Lane Change Assist when they are in the “blind-spot area” at the latest.

C – Warning indicator flashes in warning stage

When the direction indicator is set to driving situation **B**, the warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher flashes briefly several times. Lane Change Assist is telling you that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

Driving situation – vehicles falling back slowly

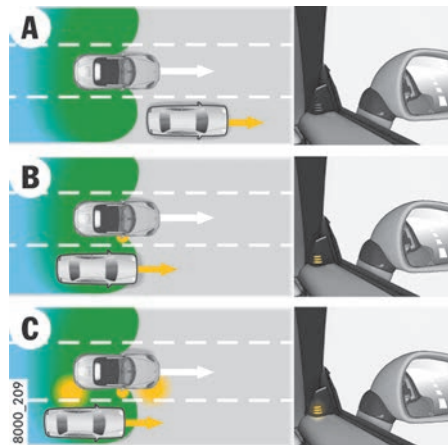


Fig. 104: Vehicle falling back slowly

A – Warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher does not light up

Lane Change Assist has not yet detected the overtaken vehicle. No indication on the mirror attachment point finisher.

B – Warning indicator lights up in information stage

Lane Change Assist detects the vehicle that is falling back slowly (speed difference of less than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph)), in the right lane in the example. The warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher lights up.

C – Warning indicator flashes in warning stage

When the direction indicator is set to driving situation **B**, the warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher flashes briefly several times. Lane Change Assist is telling you that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

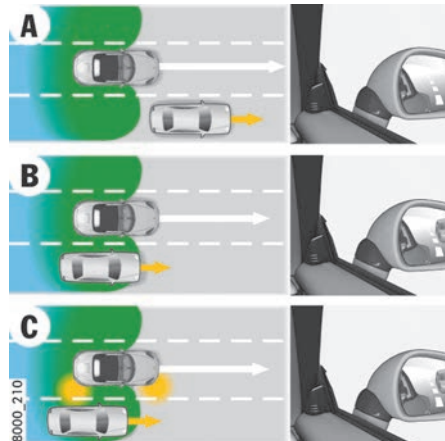
Driving situation – vehicles falling back fast

Fig. 105: Vehicle falling back fast

A – Warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher does not light up

Lane Change Assist has not yet detected the overtaken vehicle. No indication on the mirror attachment point finisher.

B – Warning indicator in the mirror attachment point finisher does not light up

Lane Change Assist detects the vehicle that is falling back fast (speed difference of more than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph) – in the right lane in the example – but does not regard it as critical for changing lanes because it is falling back fast. No indication on the mirror attachment point finisher.

C – Warning indicator in the mirror attachment point finisher does not light up

When the direction indicator is switched to driving situation **B**, there is still no indication on the mirror attachment point finisher.

Driving around bends

When driving around a bend, Lane Change Assist may react to a vehicle driving two lanes over from you and the warning indicator on the exterior mirror may light up.

Lane Change Assist cannot detect vehicles in tight bends (corner radius of less than approx. 100 m).

- ▶ Be particularly careful when driving around bends and when driving in lanes that are not of standard width.

Lane width

The Lane Change Assist detection area covers the two adjacent lanes (left and right) on lanes of standard width regardless of whether you are driving exactly in the middle or at the edge of the lane.

When driving on narrow lanes, this area can cover even more lanes, particularly when driving at the edge of a lane. In situations like this, vehicles driving two lanes over from you can also be detected and Lane Change Assist could switch to the information or warning stage.

Likewise, when driving on very wide lanes, vehicles in the next lane may not be detected because they are outside of the detection area.

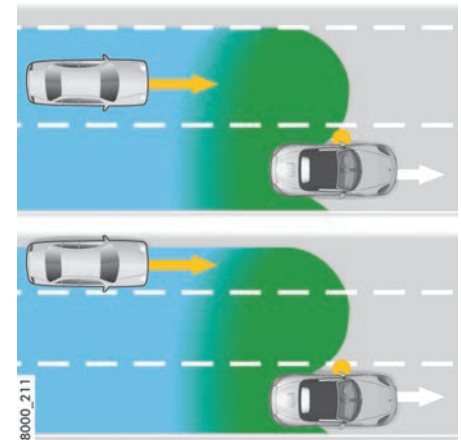


Fig. 106: Lane width and detection area

- A
- B
- C
- D
- E
- F
- G
- H
- I
- J
- K
- L**
- M
- N
- O
- P
- Q
- R
- S
- T
- U
- V
- W
- X
- Y
- Z

Setting the brightness of the warning indicator on the mirror attachment point finisher

The brightness of the warning indicator for both the information stage and warning stage is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

The basic brightness can also be adjusted as required on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Setting display brightness of Lane Change Assist (LCA) on exterior mirror” on page 267.

Information

Lane Change Assist is not active while you are adjusting the brightness. The warning indicator lighting up briefly should only help you set the brightness.

Lights

Setting light switch

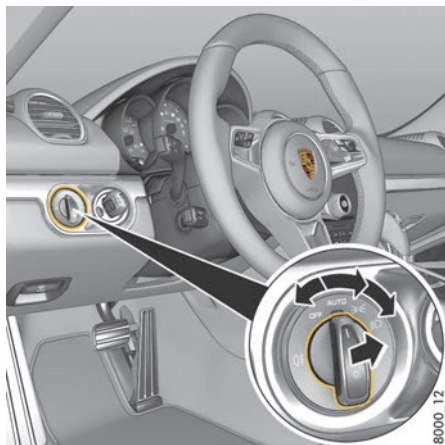


Fig. 107: Light switch



OFF

Light switch

Light off

Daytime running lights are switched on when the ignition is switched on.

AUTO

Automatic driving light assistant

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically during daylight when the ignition is switched on.



Side lights

Number plate light, instrument lighting and daytime running lights switched on.



Dipped beam/driving light

Only with ignition on. Fog lights, motorway light, daytime running lights and dynamic high beam are switched off.



Rear fog light

Pull the switch in the dipped beam position. Indicator light comes on.



Information

If the driver's key is removed and the door is opened when the lights are on, an audible signal (gong) warns of possible battery discharge. Depending on the country deviations are possible.

Dipped beam/driving light

If the light switch is set to the position **AUTO**, the dipped beam is switched on automatically in the following situations:

- Dusk
- Darkness
- Driving through tunnels
- Rain
- Motorway driving (on vehicles with Porsche Dynamic Light System PDLs)

When the dipped beam is switched on, the indicator light on the speedometer comes on.



Information

Fog is not recognised.

- ▶ In the event of fog, switch on the driving light manually.

Motorway function in daylight

The driving lights are switched on at speeds of more than approx. 140 km/h (90 mph) under bright conditions. When driving at a speed of less than approx. 65 km/h (40 mph), the driving lights are switched off after a delay of approx. 4 minutes, depending on external lighting conditions.

Rain function

The driving light is switched on automatically after five seconds of continuous wiper operation. If the wipers have not been used for approx. 4 minutes, the driving lights are switched off, provided the lighting conditions permit.

Automatic driving light assistant

The driving light (dipped beam) is switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The automatic headlights function also controls the daytime running lights, automatic Coming Home lights and the equipment-dependent dynamic cornering light.

Activate automatic driving light assistant:

- ▶ Turn light switch to position **AUTO**.



Information

Despite possible support by the driving light assistant, it is the responsibility of the driver to switch on the driving light using the conventional light switch in accordance with the relevant national regulations.

Activating the headlights using the driving light assistant therefore does not absolve the driver of responsibility for correct operation of the driving light.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

WARNING Driving without lights

If you drive without lights, this may significantly restrict your visibility and also the ability of other road users to see your vehicle.

- ▶ Always carefully monitor the automatic driving light control.

Switching on Automatic Coming Home lights

- ▶ Set light switch to **AUTO**.

The following lights remain switched on for a certain period to allow you to get in and out of the vehicle safely and with improved visibility in darkness:

- Daytime running lights
- Door courtesy lights in the folded-out exterior mirrors (on vehicles with electrically folding mirrors)
- Rear side marker lights
- Number plate lights

Welcome Home function (off delay)

When the vehicle is locked, the lights remain switched on for the duration of the off delay preset on the multi-function display.

For information on adjusting the off delay of the external lights on the multi-function display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Adjusting off delay of exterior lights for Welcome Home and Entry functions” on page 267.

Entry function/Exit function

When the vehicle is unlocked, the area around the vehicle is illuminated for the duration of the off delay preset on the multi-function display.

The lights are switched off in the following cases:

- Ignition is switched on.
- Light switch leaves **AUTO** position.

For information on adjusting the off delay of the external lights on the multi-function display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Adjusting off delay of exterior lights for Welcome Home and Entry functions” on page 267.

Porsche Dynamic Light System (PDLS)

Activation of the dynamic cornering light as well as the motorway function in darkness:

- ▶ Turn light switch to position **AUTO**.

Dynamic cornering light

At speeds greater than approx. 8 km/h (5 mph), the dipped beam headlight is swivelled in the direction of the curve to illuminate the road more clearly, depending on the speed of the vehicle and the extent to which the steering wheel is turned. In the event of a fault in the dynamic cornering light, the PDLS warning light in the instrument panel flashes.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Motorway function in darkness

The distribution characteristics of the driving light change when driving in darkness at vehicle speeds of more than approx. 130 km/h (80 mph). The light beam becomes longer, thus the field of vision increases.

Fog lights

When the fog lights are switched on, the driving light distribution changes at speeds of less than approx. 70 km/h (43 mph). The light beam becomes wider, thus glare is reduced.

Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus)

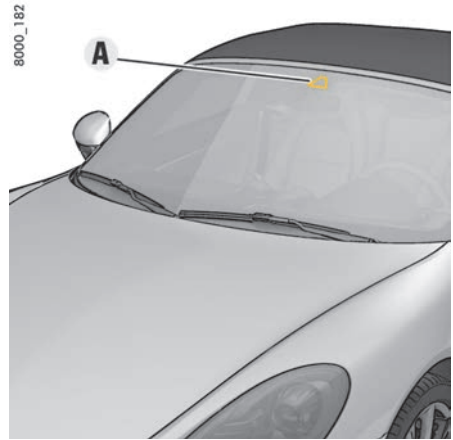


Fig. 108: Camera position

Dynamic high beam

With dynamic high beam, the camera **A** in the vicinity of the interior mirror detects the light sources of preceding and oncoming vehicles and gradually adjusts the cut-off line of the driving lights in several stages between dipped beam and full high beam lighting. The stage is selected in such a way that the cut-off line of the driving light reaches to the next recognised vehicle.

The function is activated in darkness if the following conditions are present:

- ✓ The light switch position **AUTO** is selected.
- ✓ Vehicle speed is more than approx. 60 km/h (37 mph).
- ✓ Dynamic high beam is activated on the multi-function display.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Activating and deactivating dynamic high beam” on page 267.
- ✓ Dynamic high beam is switched on.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Actuating high beam” on page 138.

In order to avoid full high beam lighting within built-up areas, dynamic high beam is not available at speeds below approx. 35 km/h (22 mph).

In addition, full high beam lighting is automatically switched to dipped beam if two or more street lamps are recognised by the camera.



WARNING

Lack of attention

In spite of dynamic high beam, it is always the driver's responsibility to manually adapt high beam according to light conditions, visibility and traffic conditions during driving, for example. The system is no substitute for careful attention on the part of the driver. Manual intervention may be necessary in the following situations:

- In adverse weather conditions such as rain, fog, snow, ice or heavy spray.
 - On roads where oncoming traffic is partly obscured, e.g. motorways.
 - Where there are poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists.
 - On tight bends, or on sharp humps or dips.
 - In poorly lit built-up areas.
 - Where there are strong reflections e.g. signs.
 - Where the windscreen in the camera area is misted, dirty, icy or covered with stickers.
- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
 - ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.
 - ▶ Adjust high beam manually where necessary according to light, visibility and traffic conditions.



Information

- ▶ To ensure that there is no interference with camera operation:
Do not cover the camera area on the interior mirror (see Fig. 108 on page 136) with objects (e.g. stickers).
- ▶ The camera must always be kept free of dirt, ice and snow to ensure that it can function correctly.
 - ▷ For car care instructions: Refer to chapter “Care” on page 65.

Operating indicator and high beam stalk

In addition the direction indicators and high beam, the parking light and headlight flasher can also be operated using the stalk.



Fig. 109: Indicator and high beam stalk


- 1 Direction indicator, left
- 2 Direction indicator, right
- 3 High beam, dynamic high beam
- 4 Headlight flasher

Operating direction indicators

- ▶ Push the stalk past pressure point **1** or **2**. The direction indicator remains active until the stalk is returned to the initial position manually or automatically due to steering wheel movement.
- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **1** or **2**. The direction indicators flash three times.

Actuating high beam

Switching high beam on and off (vehicles WITHOUT dynamic high beam)


- ▶ **Switching on:** Press the stalk once to pressure point **3**. The indicator light  comes on.
- ▶ **Switching off:** Press the stalk once to pressure point **4**.


Activating and deactivating dynamic high beam


The following conditions must be met before dynamic high beam is activated:

- ✓ Darkness
- ✓ The light switch position **AUTO** is selected.
- ✓ Vehicle speed is more than approx. 60 km/h (37 mph).
- ✓ Dynamic high beam is activated on the multi-function display.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Activating and deactivating dynamic high beam” on page 267.

- ▶ **Activating:** Press the stalk once to pressure point **3**.

The indicator light  comes on. Changes are made automatically in several stages between dipped beam and full high beam lighting.


If the high beam is partly or fully activated, the indicator light  comes on.

- ▶ **Deactivating:** Press the stalk once to pressure point **4**. Dynamic high beam can only be deactivated if the indicator light  comes on.

Switching dynamic high beam on and off manually

If the dynamic high beam was deactivated or if the requirements for the dynamic high beam are not met, high beam can be switched on and off manually.

The following conditions must be met:

- ✓ Darkness
- ✓ The light switch position **AUTO** is selected.
- ▶ **Switching on:** Press the stalk twice to pressure point **3**. The indicator light  comes on.
- ▶ **Switching off:** Press the stalk once to pressure point **4**.

Operating the headlight flasher

- ▶ Press the stalk once to pressure point **4**. The indicator light  comes on briefly.

Switching parking light on and off

- ✓ Ignition is switched off.
- ▶ Press the stalk past upper **2** or lower **1** pressure point to switch on the right or left parking light.

If the parking light is switched on, a message appears on the multi-function display after the ignition is switched off and the door is opened.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Switching hazard warning lights on and off



Fig. 110: Hazard warning light button on the centre console

The hazard warning lights function even when the ignition is switched off.

Switching hazard warning lights on and off

- ▶ Press the hazard warning light button on the centre console.
All direction indicators and the indicator light in the button light up.

Deactivating hazard warning lights after emergency braking

If the vehicle is travelling at a speed of more than approx. 70 km/h (43 mph) and is braked fully to a standstill, e.g. if the vehicle suddenly approaches the end of a traffic jam, the hazard warning lights are activated automatically and the brake light flashes during braking.

- ▶ Press the hazard warning light button on the centre console to deactivate the hazard warning lights.
The hazard warning lights are deactivated automatically when the vehicle begins to move again.

Deactivating hazard warning lights after accident

The hazard warning lights are activated automatically in the event of an accident.

- ▶ To deactivate the hazard warning lights, switch the ignition off and then on again.

Replacing light-emitting diodes and long-life bulbs

Daytime running lights, front side lights, direction indicator lights, gas-discharge bulbs in Bi-Xenon headlights, tail lights, number plate lights, additional brake light and interior lights are equipped with light emitting diodes and long-life bulbs.

The LEDs cannot be replaced individually.

Replacement of the long-life bulbs involves a greater amount of installation work.

- ▶ Have defective LEDs and bulbs replaced in a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Luggage Compartment

Stowing loads



WARNING Changed vehicle handling when vehicle is loaded

Vehicle handling changes depending on the vehicle load.

- ▶ Adapt driving style to the changed vehicle handling.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum gross weight and axle load.
- ▷ Refer to chapter "Weights" on page 309.

Removing warning triangle

The warning triangle is located on the back of the front luggage compartment (Fig. 111, **A**), depending on the country.

Securing and removing first aid kit

The first aid kit can be secured to the carpet in the front luggage compartment (Velcro strip, Fig. 112, **B**), depending on the country.

Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit

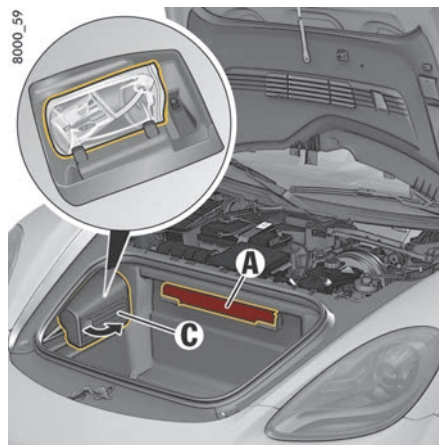


Fig. 111: Plastic box **C** containing **tyre sealing compound**

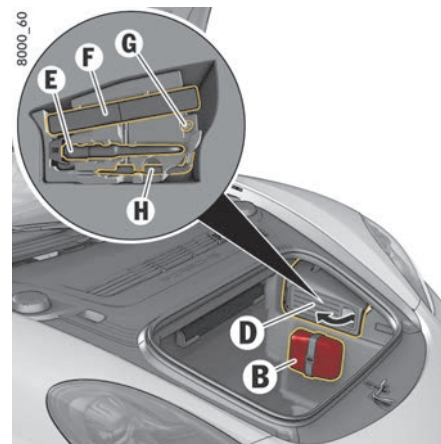


Fig. 112: Plastic box **D** containing **tool kit**

- E** Towing lug
- F** Tool set
- G** Adapter for security wheel bolts
- H** Key for emergency operation of convertible top (718 Boxster)

Removing tyre sealing compound or tool kit

- ▶ Grasp respective plastic box at the handle recess and remove.

Stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit

1. Insert lug at the rear.
2. Engage the plastic box at the front.

Removing and stowing tyre filling compressor

Removing the tyre filling compressor

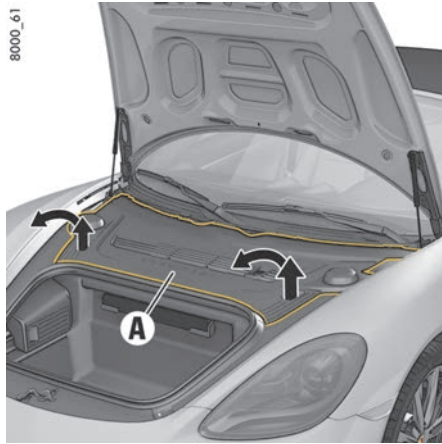


Fig. 113: Detaching and lifting plastic cover

1. Lift plastic cover **A** by the handle recesses (**arrows**) until the latch audibly disengages.
2. Pull the plastic cover forwards slightly and lift at the front.

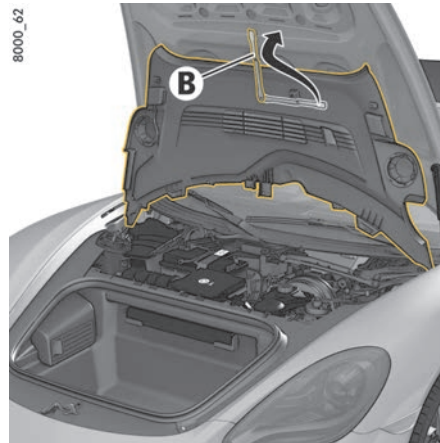


Fig. 114: Attaching the plastic cover

3. Release retaining strap **B** on the underside of the plastic cover and attach to the luggage compartment lid.

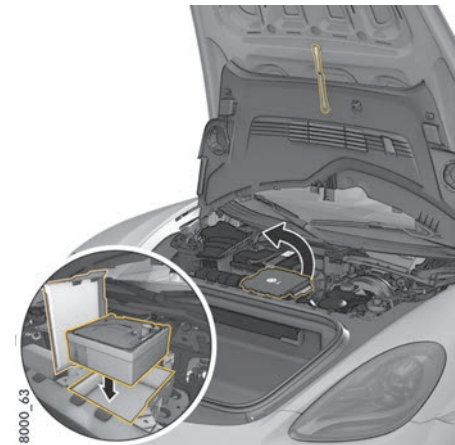


Fig. 115: Opening storage compartment for tyre filling compressor

4. Open the storage compartment for the tyre filling compressor (Fig. 115).
5. Remove the tyre filling compressor from the storage compartment.

Stowing tyre filling compressor

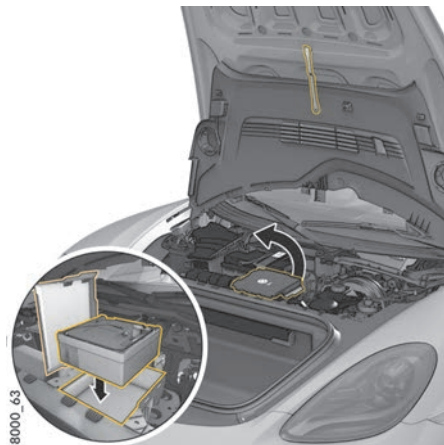


Fig. 116: Replacing tyre filling compressor

1. Place the tyre filling compressor in the storage compartment (Fig. 116).
2. Close the cover on the storage compartment.

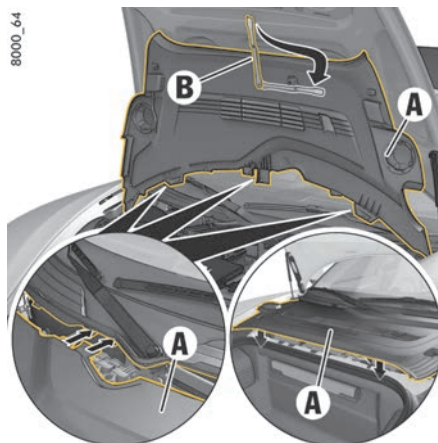


Fig. 117: Closing the plastic cover

3. Unhook retaining strap **B** and engage in the plastic cover.
4. Insert plastic cover **A** with the guides at the rear edge and lay it on the holder. Lower the plastic cover at the front.
5. Ensure that the centring pins on the underside of the cover engage in the respective guides. Press the cover downwards at the handle recesses until the latch audibly engages.

Removing or installing the luggage cover

✓ 718 Cayman

The luggage cover protects luggage in the rear storage area from direct sunlight and curious eyes.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to luggage cover from sharp-edged or sliding pieces of luggage.

- ▶ Always remove luggage cover if pieces of luggage might damage the luggage cover.

Removing the luggage cover

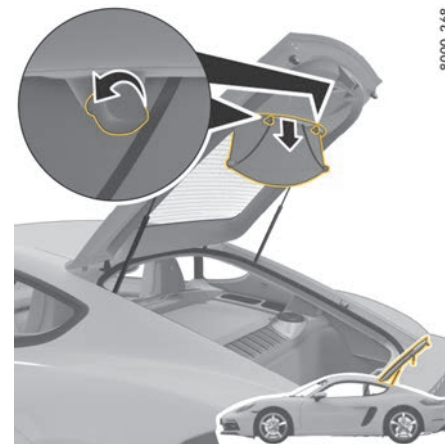


Fig. 118: Removing the luggage cover

1. Hold luggage cover with one hand and turn both turn-locks anticlockwise.
2. Remove the luggage cover using both hands.

Installing the luggage cover

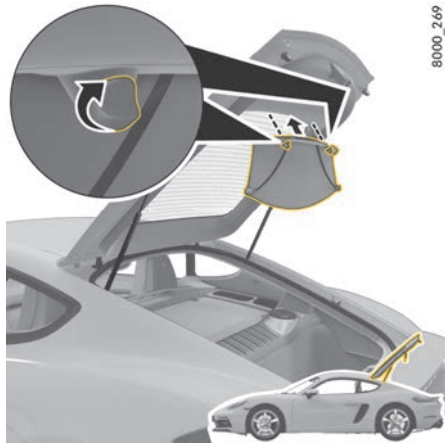


Fig. 119: Installing the luggage cover

- ▶ Insert luggage cover into the mounting with both hands, hold it with one hand and turn both turn-locks clockwise.

Luggage Compartment Lid

Opening and Locking Luggage Compartment Lids

Opening front luggage compartment lid using button in passenger compartment

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the luggage compartment lid or windscreen wipers.

- ▶ Make sure that the windscreen wipers are not folded forward when opening the luggage compartment lid.
- ▶ Always switch off windscreen wipers before opening the luggage compartment lid (wiper switch in position **O**).
- ▷ Refer to chapter "Operating the windscreen wipers" on page 301.

i Information

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the front luggage compartment lid can only be opened by connecting an external electrical power source.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid" on page 146.

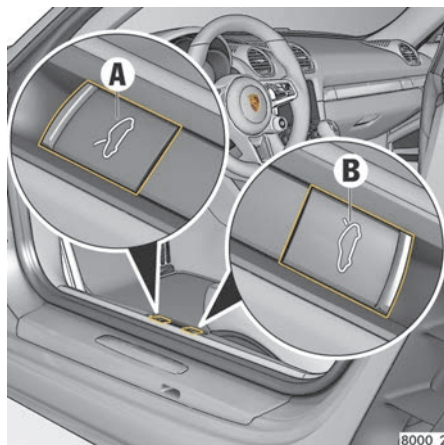


Fig. 120: Unlocking the front luggage compartment lid

- A** Front luggage compartment lid button
- B** Rear luggage compartment lid button

1. Pull button **A**.
The lid is unlocked.



Fig. 121: Unlocking the front luggage compartment lid

2. Lift the lid up slightly and release the safety latch (**arrow**).
3. Open the lid completely.

Opening rear luggage compartment lid using button in passenger compartment

1. Pull button **B**.
The lid is unlocked.
2. Lift the lid up slightly and open fully.

Locking the rear luggage compartment lid

- ✓ 718 Cayman

The luggage compartment lid can be locked in 2 positions while open.

- ▶ **Position 1:** Raise luggage compartment lid up to pressure point.
- ▶ **Position 2:** Raise luggage compartment lid beyond the pressure point.

Opening luggage compartment lids with driver's key

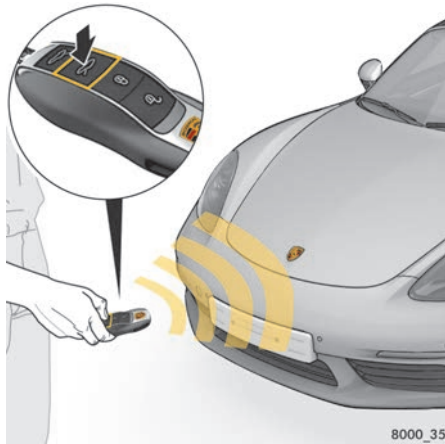




Fig. 122: Opening luggage compartment lid with driver's key

1. Press the  or  button.
The relevant lid is unlocked.
2. Lift up the lid slightly.
3. Front luggage compartment lid: release the safety catch.
4. Open the lid completely.

Information

When the luggage compartment lids are unlocked using the driver's key, the vehicle doors are also unlocked.

Opening front luggage compartment lid with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)

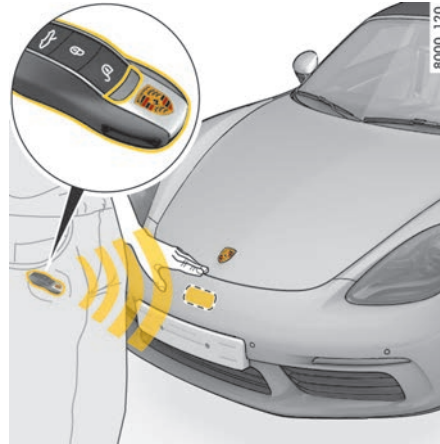


Fig. 123: Opening front luggage compartment lid with Porsche Entry & Drive

- ✓ Driver's key is located in the front area of the vehicle.
1. Hold your hand between the Porsche Crest and the number plate (Fig. 123).
The lid is unlocked.
 2. Lift the lid up slightly and release the safety latch.
 3. Open the lid completely.

Opening rear luggage compartment lid with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)



Fig. 124: Opening rear luggage compartment lid with Porsche Entry & Drive

- ✓ Driver's key is located in the rear area of the vehicle.
1. Hold your hand between the rear wing and the number plate (Fig. 124).
The lid is unlocked.
 2. Lift the lid up slightly and open.

Closing luggage compartment lid

1. Lower the relevant lid and let it fall into the lock. Push the lid closed with the palm of your hand in the area of the lock.
2. Check that the lid has engaged correctly in the lock.
3. If a lid is not closed properly, a message appears on the multi-function display when driving.

Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid

If the battery is discharged, the front luggage compartment lid can only be unlocked with the aid of a donor battery.

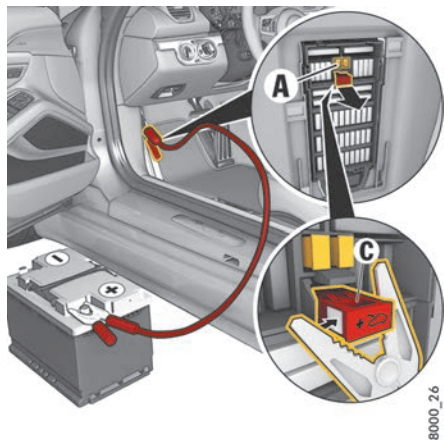


Fig. 125: Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid – connecting positive terminal

- A** Plastic gripper (yellow)
- C** Positive terminal (red)

1. Use the emergency key to unlock the vehicle at the door lock.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Using emergency key” on page 102.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Performing emergency door unlocking” on page 76.
2. Remove the plastic cover from the left-hand fuse box.
3. Pull out positive terminal **C** (red) in the fuse box using the plastic gripper **A** (yellow).

4. Use the red jump lead to connect the positive terminal of the donor battery to the positive terminal **C** in the fuse box.

i Information

If the vehicle was locked, the alarm horn from the alarm system will sound when the negative terminal is connected.

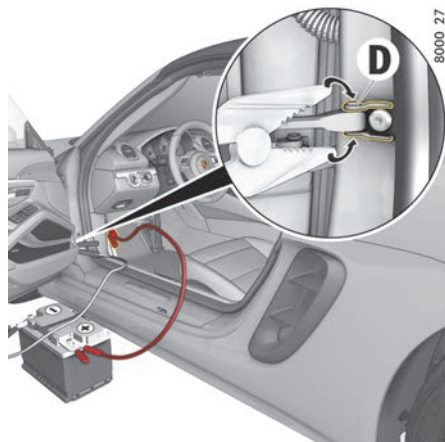



Fig. 126: Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid – connecting negative terminal

5. Use the black jump lead to connect the negative terminal of the donor battery to the door arrester **D**.
6. Press and hold the  button on the driver's key for approx. 2 seconds.

The front luggage compartment lid is unlocked and the alarm system is deactivated.

7. Disconnect the negative lead first, then the positive lead.
8. Push positive terminal **C** (Fig. 125) into the fuse box and fit the plastic fuse box cover.

Measurement on the Test Stand

⚠ WARNING

Inhalation of toxic exhaust gases

Risk of serious or fatal injury as a result of inhaling toxic exhaust gases.

Exhaust gas contains colourless and odourless carbon monoxide, which is toxic even in low concentrations.

- ▶ Perform work with the engine running only in the open or with suitable extraction systems for the exhaust gases.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficiently secured vehicle

A vehicle that is not secured or that is incorrectly secured may move unintentionally or tip or fall off lifting equipment, e.g. jack or lifting platform. This can result in serious injuries and damage.

- ▶ The vehicle must be raised using the jack only when on a solid and level surface.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points (Fig. 97 on page 128, Fig. 98 on page 128) on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Always place the vehicle on solid supports when carrying out work under the vehicle.
- ▶ Never start the engine once the vehicle is raised. Engine vibration may cause the vehicle to fall.

Performing test stand measurement

Performance test

Performance tests on roller-type test stands are not approved by Porsche.

Performing brake tests

- ▶ Perform brake tests only on roller-type test stands.

The following limit values must not be exceeded:

- Test speed 7.5 km/h (4.7 mph)
- Test duration 20 seconds

Testing the electric parking brake

- ▶ Electric parking brake tests on the brake test stand **must only be performed with the ignition switched on and with the manual gearshift lever in neutral or with the Porsche Doppelkupplung selector lever in position N.**

The vehicle switches automatically to brake test stand mode, in which the electric parking brake can be tested. A message appears on the multi-function display in the instrument panel.

Media

Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided under “Media”. Safety instructions and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.

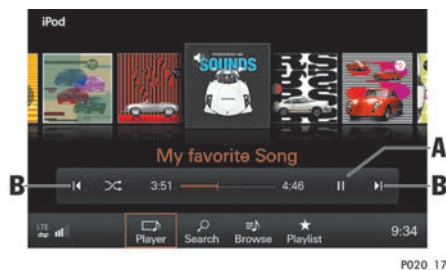


Fig. 127: Media source, e.g. iPod®

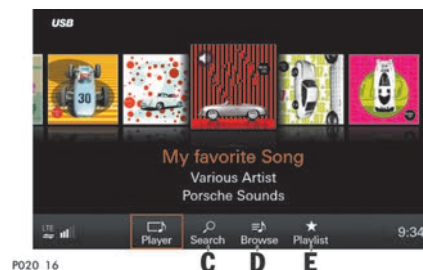


Fig. 128: Media source, e.g. USB

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
Play music and video files from an array of media sources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Insert a CD/DVD. ▶ Import media content to jukebox (internal memory). ▶ Insert an SD card. ▶ Connect an external device via USB or AUX (depending on equipment). ▶ Connect an external device via Bluetooth®. ▶ Open online radio services via Porsche Connect App. 	181 151 182 182 183 193
Select media source	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ SOURCE button ▶ Select desired media source. – or – Press MEDIA button repeatedly. 	149
Play/pause music	▶ MEDIA button ▶ Player ▶ Select or (see A).	149
Jump forward/back during playback	▶ MEDIA button ▶ Player ▶ Select or (see B).	149
Search media library	▶ MEDIA button ▶ Select Search (see C) or Browse (see D).	150
Open playlists	▶ MEDIA button ▶ Select Playlist (see E).	151
Listen to similar music	▶ MEDIA button ▶ OPT button ▶ More Like This	150
Import audio/video files to jukebox	▶ MEDIA button ▶ OPT button ▶ Import to jukebox	151

Inserting/connecting media sources

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Loading the CD/DVD drive” on page 181.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Inserting an SD card” on page 182.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Connecting an external device” on page 182.

Selecting media source

- ▶ Press **SOURCE** button and select the desired media source.
- or –
- ▶ Press **MEDIA** button until the desired media source is selected.
- or –
- 1. Press the media source displayed in the headline.
The available sources are displayed.
- 2. Select the media source.

Playing media

Audio and video formats must meet certain requirements to be played using the media function. For information on supported media and file formats:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 315.

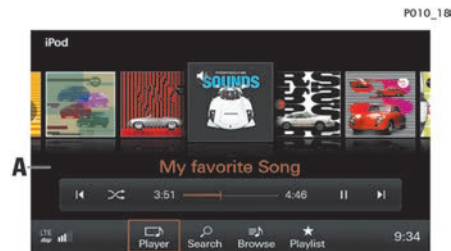


Fig. 129: Playing music

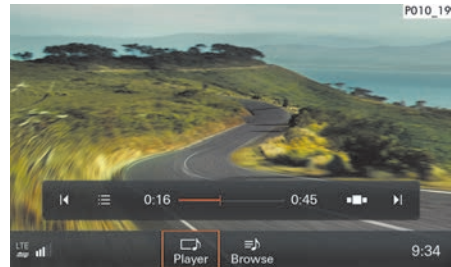


Fig. 130: Playing a video

Function	Button
Playing media	
Pausing media	
Jump forward in media tracks/ next chapter	
Jump back in media tracks/ previous chapter	
Random music playback	
Display coverflow view	

Function	Button
Display video in full-screen mode	
Open coverflow view or available video source	
Return to video main menu	

Playing music

- ✓ Audio source is selected.





1. **MEDIA** button ▶ **Player**
2. In coverflow view **A** (Fig. 129), swipe left or right until the desired album is displayed enlarged in the centre.
– or –
Select to play the album.
– or –
Select the album and desired music track.
If an audio source was selected, the first track on the medium starts playing automatically. When you use the jukebox, the track that was played last is played.

Jumping forward and back in a media track

- ✓ Media source is selected.
- ▶ Select or press the button to jump back.
If the media track has only just started, the previous track is played. If the media track has played for more than 3 seconds, the current track starts again.
- ▶ Select or press the button to jump forward.


Fast forward or rewind

✓ Media source is selected.


- ▶ Press and hold   or the   buttons until the desired position is reached.
 - or –
 - Slide the time bar to the desired position.

Switching random playback on and off

✓ Media source is selected.


- ▶ Select . Random playback is switched on.
- ▶ Press the button again to switch off random playback.


Viewing similar music

1. Press button .
2. Select **More Like This**.

Repeating music tracks




✓ Media source is selected.
 ✓ Album or playlist is selected.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Repeat track**.
Repeat mode appears in the headline.

- ▶ Press the  button and select **Repeat off** to switch off repeat mode.

Playing videos

✓ Video source is selected.

- ▶ Select .
 - or –
 - Select the desired video.
 - or –
 - Select  and the desired chapter.
- ▶ Select  to return to the video main menu.

Selecting tracks from active audio source using multi-function display

For information on using the multi-function display:


- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display without multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display with multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.

1. Select the **Audio** menu.
2. Select tracks from the active audio source (e.g. disc).

Searching through media source


Searching for tracks or videos

✓ Media source is selected.

1. Select **Search** .
2. Select **Search** and enter the desired track in the free text search.
 - or –
 - Select a category (**Genres, Artists, Albums, Tracks, Videos**) to be used in the search.
3. Select the desired track.

Browsing through media

✓ Media source is selected.


1. Select **Browse** .
2. Select the desired folder and media track.
 - ▶ Select the desired media folder in the headline to navigate back to the folder structure.

Opening playlists

Additional playlists are available for media playback, depending on the media source selected.

Opening a playlist

✓ Audio source is selected.

1. Select **Playlist** .
2. Select the desired option:

- **Current playback list:** The folder structure or track/chapter list for the selected source is displayed.
- **Last played**
- **Most played**
- Track incl. star rating

Importing and deleting audio/video files in jukebox

Audio and video files on a CD/DVD, USB flash drive or SD card can be imported to the jukebox.

Importing current track or album

- ✓ The media source containing tracks or albums to be copied to the jukebox is selected.
- ✓ Desired track or album is selected.

1. **OPT** button ► **Import to jukebox**
2. Select **Import current track** or **Import current album**.
The track or album is imported.

Importing folders or files

✓ Media source is selected.

1. **OPT** button ► **Import to jukebox**
2. Select **Import files/folders**.
All available folders and files are displayed.
3. Use **Select/Deselect** to select the desired files or folders.
4. Select **Copy** to start importing media.

Deleting media content from jukebox

✓ The jukebox is selected as a media source.

1. **MEDIA** button ► **OPT** button ► **Jukebox settings**
2. Select the desired option:

- **Delete current track**
- **Delete current album**
- **Delete files/folders:** Use **Select/Deselect** to select files or folders and then press **Delete** to confirm.

Displaying available and occupied storage space

✓ The jukebox is selected as a media source.

1. **MEDIA** button ► **OPT** button ► **Jukebox settings**
2. Select **Source details**.

Changing settings

General media settings

1. **MEDIA** button ► **OPT** button ► **SET MEDIA**
2. Select the desired option:

- **Smartphone link:** Manage smartphones connected via USB.
- **AUX:** Switch universal, equipment-dependent audio interface (AUX) on and off.
- **Bluetooth audio:** Switch the Bluetooth® connection on and off.
- **Gracenote Online:** Album covers are downloaded when the function is activated and the data connection is active.
- **Bluetooth:** Manage Bluetooth® functions and devices.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Deleting a Bluetooth® device or displaying Bluetooth® information” on page 240.

Video settings

✓ A DVD containing video files is inserted.

1. **MEDIA** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶
DVD settings

2. Select the desired option:

- **Aspect ratio:** Set the aspect ratio.
- **Soundtrack:** Set the soundtrack and tone distribution.
- **Subtitles:** When the function is activated, subtitles are displayed (if available).
- **Child lock:** To restrict the playback of video files, enter a password and select **OK** to confirm (default password: 1234).
 - **DVD safety level:** Select a safety level. If safety level 5 is selected, all DVDs from safety level 1 – 5 are played. The playback of DVDs with a higher safety level is blocked. Select **Level 0** if no safety category is required.
- **Change passcode:** A new password can be entered for the child lock.

Information

- The child lock can be activated/deactivated depending on the DVD inserted.
 - If the child lock password has been entered incorrectly three times:
 - ▶ Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
-

Mirrors

Using the exterior mirrors

The convex mirror on the passenger's side and the aspherical mirror on the driver's side provide a larger field of view.

⚠ WARNING

Assessment of the traffic situation as a result of distorted representation of surroundings in the exterior mirrors

Vehicles or objects appear smaller in convex mirrors and further away than they are in reality.

- ▶ Bear distortion in mind when estimating the distance of vehicles behind you and when reversing into a parking space.
- ▶ Use the interior mirror for judging distance as well.

⚠ CAUTION

Electrolyte fluid may escape if the mirror glass is broken

Electrolyte fluid can leak from broken mirror glass. This fluid irritates the skin and eyes.

- ▶ If the electrolyte fluid should come into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse it off immediately with clean water.
- ▶ Seek medical attention if necessary.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to paintwork, leather, plastic parts and clothing.

Electrolyte fluid can be removed only while it is still wet.

- ▶ Clean the affected parts with water.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the exterior mirrors when washing the vehicle in a car wash

- ▶ Fold in exterior mirrors before using the car wash.

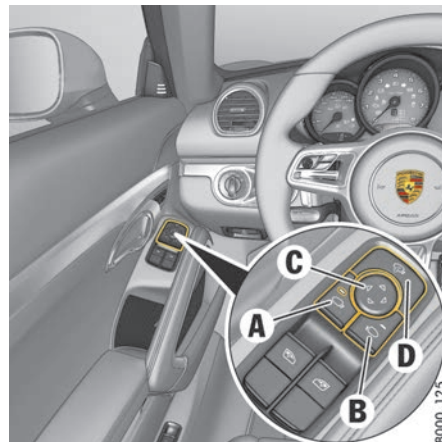


Fig. 131: Exterior mirror operation

- A** Exterior mirror selection on the driver's side
- B** Exterior mirror selection on the passenger's side
- C** Adjusting exterior mirrors
- D** Folding exterior mirrors in and out

Adjusting exterior mirrors

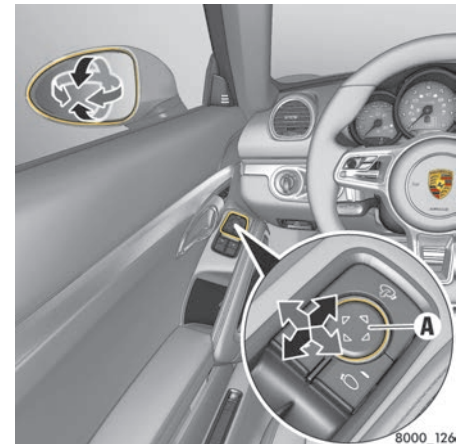


Fig. 132: Adjusting exterior mirrors

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
 - or –
 - ✓ Ignition switched off, driver's or passenger's door not yet opened (for a maximum of 10 minutes).
1. Press button **A** for the driver's side and button **B** for the passenger's side. The indicator light on the selected button comes on.
 2. Move the exterior mirrors to the correct position by pressing the adjustment button **C**.
- If the electrical adjustment facility fails**
- ▶ Adjust the mirror by pressing on the mirror face.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out

Folding in exterior mirrors manually

- ▶ Swivel the mirror housing diagonally upwards by hand as far as it will go.

Folding out exterior mirrors manually

- ▶ Swivel the mirror housing diagonally downwards by hand as far as it will go.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out electrically


- ✓ Maximum speed of approx. 50 km/h (30 mph).
- ▶ Press button **D** (see Fig. 131 on page 153). Both exterior mirrors fold in or out.

If the electrical folding function fails

- ▶ Fold mirror in or out manually.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out from the outside

The exterior mirrors can be folded in when the vehicle is locked.

- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the driver's key for at least 1 second.
On vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: Touch the proximity sensor on the door handle of the driver's side for at least 1 second. The exterior mirrors fold in.

Folding exterior mirrors out automatically

- ▶ Switch on ignition.
The exterior mirrors fold out automatically.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out automatically

- ✓ Function activated.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Switching automatic folding of exterior mirrors off and on" on page 269.

Folding exterior mirrors in automatically

- ▶ Lock the vehicle.
The exterior mirrors fold in automatically.

Folding exterior mirrors out automatically

- ▶ Switch on ignition.
The exterior mirrors fold out automatically.

Information

The exterior mirrors do not fold out automatically after the ignition is switched on if they were folded in manually beforehand using button **D** (Fig. 131 on page 153).

Storing exterior mirror settings

In vehicles with memory package, individual exterior mirror settings can be stored on the memory buttons on the driver's door and on the driver's key.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 188.

Switching automatic dimming function of exterior mirrors on and off

The exterior mirrors change to dimmed position automatically in synchronisation with the interior mirror.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Switching automatic dimming function of the interior mirror on and off" on page 155.

Swivelling down mirror glass as parking aid

On vehicles with memory package, the mirror on the **passenger's side** swivels down slightly to show the kerb area when reverse gear is engaged.

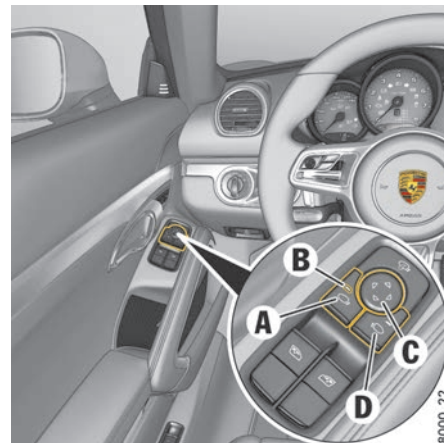


Fig. 133: Swivelling down mirror glass as parking aid

Swivelling down mirror glass automatically

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ Function activated.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Lowering exterior mirror on passenger's side when engaging reverse gear" on page 268.

Swivelling down mirror glass manually

1. Engage reverse gear.
Indicator light **B** on button **A** for adjusting the exterior mirror on the driver's side lights up.
2. Press button **D** for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger's side.
The mirror on the passenger's side swivels down.

Individually adjusting the position of the lowered mirror glass:

- ▶ Move the exterior mirror glass to the correct position by pressing adjustment button **C**.

In vehicles with memory package, this setting is stored on the memory buttons in the driver's door or on the driver's key.

For information on retrieving and storing vehicle settings:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 188.

Moving mirror to its initial position

The mirror swivels back to its initial position:

- after a certain time delay, if the vehicle is shifted out of reverse gear, or
- immediately, if the vehicle reaches a speed of more than 15 km/h (9 mph).

Moving the mirror glass on the passenger's side to its initial position manually:

- ▶ Press button **A** for the exterior mirror on the driver's side.

Dimming interior mirrors manually



Fig. 134: Dimming interior mirrors manually

When the mirror is being adjusted, the anti-dazzle lever **A** must point towards the passenger compartment.

- ▶ Basic setting – swivel lever towards the passenger compartment.
- ▶ Anti-dazzle position – swivel lever towards the windscreen.

Switching automatic dimming function of the interior mirror on and off

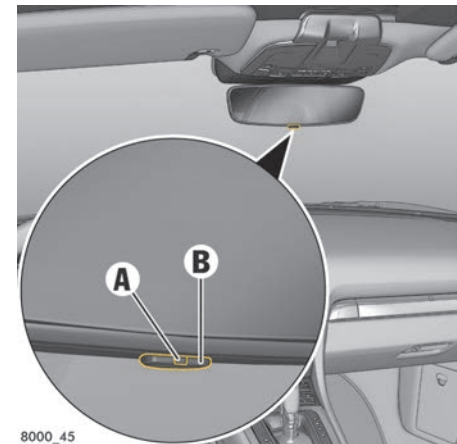


Fig. 135: Automatic dimming function of the interior mirror

Switching on automatic anti-dazzle function

- ▶ Press button **B**
Indicator light **A** lights up.
The interior mirror automatically changes to anti-dazzle position or reverts to its normal state depending on the light intensity.

i Information

The interior mirror does not dim when reverse gear is engaged **or** the interior lighting is switched on.

Switching off automatic anti-dazzle function

- ▶ Press button **B**
Indicator light **A** goes out.

⚠ CAUTION

Electrolyte fluid may escape if the mirror glass is broken

Electrolyte fluid can leak from broken mirror glass. This fluid irritates the skin and eyes.

- ▶ If the electrolyte fluid should come into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse it off immediately with clean water.
- ▶ Seek medical attention if necessary.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to paintwork, leather, plastic parts and clothing.

Electrolyte fluid can be removed only while it is still wet.

- ▶ Clean the affected parts with water.

i Information

The incident light on the interior mirror must not be restricted (e.g. by stickers on the rear window or items of luggage in the luggage compartment or on the luggage compartment cover). Likewise, the incident light coming through the windscreen to the front light sensor must not be restricted (e.g. by stickers).

Multi-Function Display

Not all functions are described in detail in this manual. The examples clearly demonstrate the functional principle and clarify the menu structure.

⚠ WARNING

Setting and operating when driving

You may be distracted from paying attention to the road if you set or operate the multi-function display, multi-function steering wheel, radio, navigation system, telephone or other equipment when driving and control over the vehicle may be lost.

- ▶ Operate the equipment when driving only if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.
- ▶ Carry out any complicated operating or setting procedures only while the vehicle is stationary.



Fig. 136: Position of the multi-function display

i Information

The multi-function display is only active when the ignition is on.

For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

Operating multi-function display without multi-function steering wheel

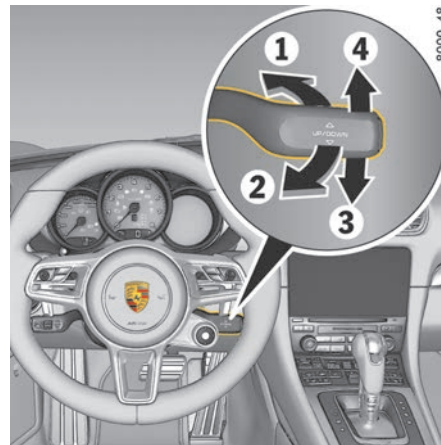


Fig. 137: Functions of the control stalk on the steering column

Selecting menus and functions/options (scrolling)

- ▶ Press the control stalk downwards **3** or upwards **4**.

Confirming selection (Enter)

- ▶ Push control stalk forward **1**.

Moving back one or several selection levels

- ▶ Pull the control stalk towards the steering wheel **2** once or several times.

Skipping to the first letters of the desired entry in long telephone and audio lists

- ▶ Press the control stalk downwards **3** or upwards **4** and hold. A letter selection screen appears.
- ▶ Select the desired first letters. The marking skips to the first list entry beginning with the selected letter.

Operating multi-function display with multi-function steering wheel

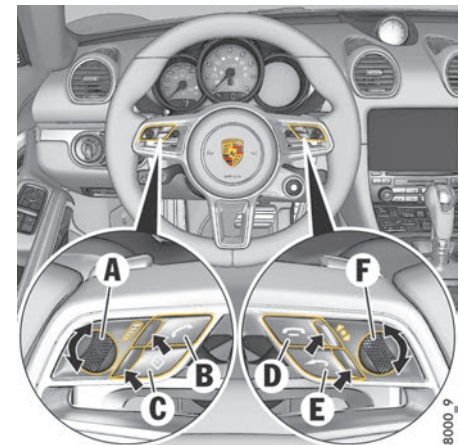


Fig. 138: Function buttons on the multi-function steering wheel

i Information

The Porsche communication systems cannot be switched on and off using the multi-function steering wheel.

Increasing and decreasing the volume

- ▶ Turn volume control **A** upwards or downwards.

Switching mute on and off

- ▶ Press volume control **A**.

Selecting menus and functions/options (scrolling)

- ▶ Turn rotary knob **F** upwards or downwards.

Skipping to the first letters of the desired entry in long telephone and audio lists

- ▶ Quickly turn rotary knob **F** upwards or downwards.
A letter selection screen appears.
- ▶ Select the desired first letters.
The marking skips to the first list entry beginning with the selected letter.

Confirming selection (Enter)

- ▶ Press rotary knob **F**.

Activating the stored function

- ▶ Press \diamond button **C**.

The button can be assigned individually. Audio source selection is preset by default.

For information on separate assignment of the button:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Changing button assignment on multi-function steering wheel" on page 268.

Moving back one or several selection levels

- ▶ Press back button **E**.

Accepting telephone calls

- ▶ Press handset Pickup button **B**.

Ending or rejecting telephone calls

- ▶ Press handset hangup button **D**.

Areas on the multi-function display

Fig. 139: Areas on the multi-function display

A/D – Upper and lower status area

Basic information, such as the compass, time and temperature are displayed in the upper and lower status areas.

The status area display can be individually adapted.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Adapting appearance of multi-function display" on page 263.

B – Title area with menu indicator

The menu item currently selected is displayed in the title area.

The menu indicator (grey bar) on the right shows the position of the current menu item in the overall menu and displays the number of other menu items on this menu level.

The wider the menu indicator, the fewer menu items the current menu contains.

C – Information area

The information area displays the menu items currently available for selection or after a menu item is selected, information relating to this menu item and other selection options.

Selecting options and activating functions

A symbol positioned in front of an option indicates whether the option is selected or a function is activated.

Selecting one of several options

Option is selected.



Option is not selected.

Activating and deactivating functions

Function is activated.



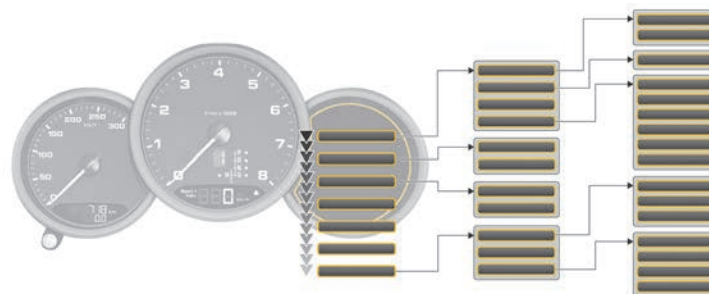
Function is not activated.

Menu overview

On the multi-function display, vehicle information can be viewed, audio sources (radio, CD, iPod®, etc.) controlled, the oil level measured, the tyre pressure checked, the stopwatch used or the navigation system operated, depending on the vehicle equipment. You can also modify different vehicle settings.

Certain menus are only available when the vehicle has stopped, e.g. the adjustment menu for Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM).

8000_214



Menu	What can I do?	Page
▶ Vehicle ▶ Info	Display vehicle information (messages, service intervals)	160
▶ Vehicle ▶ Oil level	Measure and display engine oil level	160
▶ Vehicle ▶ Limits	Set the speed limit	161
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display	Adapt appearance of multi-function display	263
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Date & Time	Adjust the time and date	265
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Assistance systems	Adapt assistance systems	266
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Individual	Adjust Individual drive mode	267
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light & Visibility	Adjust the exterior lights, interior lighting, visual aids for reversing and windscreen wiper setting.	267
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Steering wheel op. ▶ ◊ key	Assign the ◊ button on the multi-function steering wheel	268
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Locking	Adapt the unlocking and locking settings	269
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Air conditioning	Adapt air-conditioning settings	269
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Volume	Adjust volume of warning tones and ParkAssist	269
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Units	Adapt units of measurement for vehicle displays	270
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Language	Change the language	270
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Car Connect	Stop communication between vehicle and Porsche Car Connect App	270
▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Reset	Reset vehicle to factory settings	270

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A	Menu	What can I do?	Page
B	▶ Audio	Select radio station or track from the active audio source.	206/150
C	▶ Phone	Use the telephone	243
D	▶ Map	Show and adapt the map display	173
E	▶ Navigation	Use the navigation system	169
F	▶ Trip	Display and reset driving data	
G	▶ TPM	Display tyre pressure and adjust tyre settings	162
H	▶ Chrono	Measure times with the stopwatch	227
I	▶ Gear shift assist	Use the gear shift assist	165
J	▶ G-Force	Display longitudinal and lateral acceleration forces	166
K	▶ ACC	Use adaptive cruise control (ACC)	32
L	▶ Speed limit	Display speed limits	221

Vehicle menu

Displaying messages

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Info ▶ Messages**

Pending warnings or vehicles messages are displayed.

The warning message in the lower status area indicates the number of pending warning messages.

If several warning messages are pending, you can browse through the message list.

Displaying service intervals

The display indicates when the next service is due.

- 1. Vehicle ▶ Info ▶ Service interval**
- Select the desired service interval.

Measuring and displaying engine oil level

NOTICE

If the oil level has dropped below the minimum mark, the engine will not be adequately lubricated. This may result in engine damage.

- ▶ Regularly check the oil level.
- ▶ Do not allow the oil level to fall below the minimum mark.

Displaying engine-oil level

Information

Under certain circumstances, the oil level cannot be displayed. Causes of this include:

- Engine is cold
- Vehicle parked following full-throttle operation at high engine speeds
- Engine oil temperature too high
- Open rear luggage compartment lid.

A corresponding message appears on the multi-function display.

- ✓ Vehicle is horizontal.
- ✓ Engine at operating temperature and stopped for at least one minute.

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Oil level**

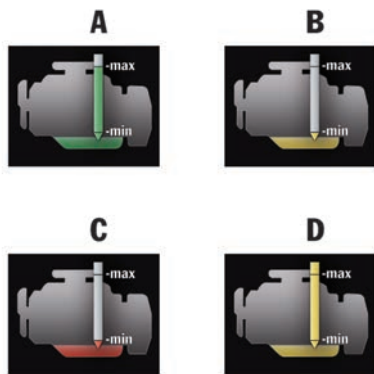


Fig. 140: Oil-level gauge

- A** Oil level OK – maximum reached
B Minimum oil level reached
C Oil level below minimum
D Oil level above maximum

If the display is green **A**, the oil level has reached the maximum mark.

If the bottom tip of the display is yellow **B**, the oil level has reached the minimum mark. A message appears indicating that the oil level is low.

- ▶ Add the quantity of engine oil shown on the multi-function display at the next opportunity.
- ▶ Never add more than the indicated quantity of engine oil. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 1 litre.

SA1-357

If the bottom tip is red **C**, the oil level has dropped below the minimum mark. A message appears indicating that the oil level is too low.

- ▶ Do not continue driving.
- ▶ Add the quantity of engine oil shown on the multi-function display **immediately**.
- ▶ Never add more than the indicated quantity of engine oil. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 1 litre.

If the display is yellow up to the top edge **D**, this indicates that the engine filling capacity has been exceeded. This can cause damage to the vehicle. If too much engine oil was added, a message appears indicating that the oil level has exceeded the maximum.

Have the oil level corrected at the next opportunity.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Topping up engine oil

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Selecting and topping up engine oil” on page 107.

Failure

If oil level measurement fails, a message appears indicating that the oil measurement function is faulty.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Setting the speed limit

If a speed limit is preset and activated, a warning message appears if the speed limit is exceeded. A speed limit can be used to remind the driver to keep to the maximum speed permitted for the tyre type fitted to the vehicle, for example.

1. **Vehicle** ▶ **Limits** ▶ **Limit 1** or **Limit 2**
2. Select the desired limit.

- **Current speed:** Set the current speed of the vehicle.
- **Manual:** Set the desired speed value.
- **Active:**
 - Speed limit activated.
 - Speed limit deactivated.

Adjusting vehicle settings

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Vehicle Settings Using the Multi-Function Display” on page 263.

Audio menu

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Selecting stations using the multi-function display” on page 206.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Selecting tracks from active audio source using multi-function display” on page 150.

Phone menu

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Using a phone via the multi-function display” on page 243.

Map menu

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Displaying and configuring the map view via the multi-function display” on page 173.

Navigation menu

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Entering destination via multi-function display” on page 169.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Starting and stopping route guidance via multi-function display” on page 170.

Trip menu

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Displaying driving data on multi-function display” on page 105.

TPM menu

(TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)

Tyre Pressure Monitoring offers the following functions:

- Permanent monitoring of tyre pressure and temperature.
- Display of actual tyre pressure (actual pressure) while driving.
- Tyre pressure warnings in two stages (yellow and red warning).
- Vehicle is stationary: Display of pressure deviation from the required pressure as well as selected tyre type and comfort pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tyre pressure

Low or high tyre pressure irreparably damages the tyre and the wheel, lengthens the braking distance and greatly increases the risk of an accident.

In spite of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring system, it is still the driver’s responsibility to ensure that the tyres are inflated with the correct tyre pressure and the settings in the TPM menu are correct.

- ▶ Adapt tyre pressure to the fitted tyres.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Tyre pressure” on page 313.
- ▶ Make sure that the settings in the TPM menu on the multi-function display correspond to the tyres fitted on the vehicle. After a wheel change, update the settings in the TPM menu.
- ▶ The new tyre type and tyre size must be selected in the multi-function display, even if the settings for the newly fitted set of wheels are the same as for the old wheels.
- ▶ Incomplete entries or selection of the wrong tyres on the multi-function display affect the accuracy of warnings and messages.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tyre pressure

- ▶ If a red tyre pressure warning appears on the multi-function display: Stop immediately in a suitable place and check tyres for damage. If necessary, remedy the damage with tyre sealant.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Flat Tyre” on page 110.
- ▶ Do **not** continue driving with defective tyres. Have defective tyres replaced immediately. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Do not drive with tyres in which the tyre pressure drops again very quickly. In case of doubt, have tyres checked by a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.




Information

Tyre Pressure Monitoring gives a warning about a pressure drop caused by natural diffusion as well as about a gradual loss of pressure caused by foreign objects.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring cannot warn you about tyre damage that occurs suddenly (e.g. flat tyre due to unexpected external effects).

Faults in Tyre Pressure Monitoring system

In the event of faults, Tyre Pressure Monitoring cannot monitor the tyre pressure.

The tyre pressure warning light  on the instrument panel lights up and a corresponding message appears on the multi-function display.

- ▶ If the fault persists: Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Monitoring may be faulty in the following cases:

- If Tyre Pressure Monitoring is faulty.
- If wheel transmitters for Tyre Pressure Monitoring are missing.
- During the learning phase after the tyre settings have been updated.
- After a wheel change without updating the tyre settings.
- If tyre temperatures are too high.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and indicator lights” on page 126.

Viewing tyre pressure

i Information

After the ignition is switched on, the tyre pressures will only be “taught” and displayed after the vehicle is driven at a speed of approx. 25 km/h (16 mph). Dashes (-) appear instead of the tyre pressures. If the tyre is filled with at least 0.1 bar (1.5 psi), the corresponding tyre pressure will be updated and displayed.

If the tyre is filled with at least 0.1 bar (1.5 psi), the corresponding tyre pressure will be updated and displayed.



Fig. 141: Tyre pressure display

- ▶ Select the **TPM** menu.

The display of the actual pressure is only for information. The tyre pressures change depending on the temperature.

- ▶ Under no circumstances should the tyre pressures be changed based on this display.

Viewing Fill info



Fig. 142: Example of pressure difference

- ✓ Vehicle is stationary.

- ▶ **TPM ▶ Fill info**

The difference to the required pressure is displayed on the relevant wheel.

Example: If **-0.1 bar (-1.5 psi)** is displayed for the rear right wheel, 0.1 bar (1.5 psi) must be added to this tyre.

The displayed pressures take into account the tyre temperature.

- ▶ Always use the pressure difference from the filling info display or from the corresponding tyre pressure warning to correct the tyre pressure.

If the tyres are not yet taught, the new required pressures are displayed instead of the actual pressure differences.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Teaching the Tyre Pressure Monitoring system” on page 164.

Selecting tyre type (type and size of fitted tyre)

Information

The available items depend on the model type. For this reason, some of the selection options shown here may not be available on the multi-function display.

- ▶ Before fitting tyres with dimensions that are not already stored in the multi-function display, have the missing information added to the multi-function display. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Use only tyres approved by Porsche.

✓ Vehicle is stationary.

▶ TPM ▶ Tyre type

Available settings and abbreviations:

- 18" Summer: **18" (S)**
- 18" Winter: **18" (W)**
- 19" Summer: **19" (S)**
- 19" Winter: **19" (W)**
- 20" Summer: **20" (S)**

The selected setting appears as an abbreviation in the **Tyre type** line in the **TPM** main menu.

Selecting comfort or standard pressure

✓ Vehicle is stationary.

▶ TPM ▶ Comfort press.

- **Comfort press.:**
Comfort pressure is activated.
- **Comfort press.:**
Standard pressure is activated.

Information

The tyre pressures can be reduced to increase driving comfort.

If Comfort press. is selected, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring system automatically uses lower pressure values when monitoring tyre pressure.

- ▶ Adapt the tyre pressures for comfort pressure or standard pressure.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Viewing Fill info" on page 163.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Comfort tyre pressure up to 270 km/h (165 mph)" on page 314.

Tyre pressure speed warning

If the maximum speed of the preset comfort pressure is exceeded and/or the tyre pressure is below a critical limit, a warning message appears on the multi-function display.

WARNING

Driving at excessive speeds when the comfort pressure is active


Driving at excessive speeds when the comfort pressure is active will destroy the tyres and wheels.

- ▶ Reduce speed to below the displayed maximum speed.
- ▶ Inflate the tyres to the standard tyre pressure when driving at higher speeds.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 278.

Teaching the Tyre Pressure Monitoring system


Tyre Pressure Monitoring begins to learn the tyres after a wheel change, wheel transmitter replacement or update of the tyre settings. During this process, Tyre Pressure Monitoring recognises the wheels and their locations. Position and pressure information is displayed as soon as Tyre Pressure Monitoring has assigned the wheels recognised as belonging to the vehicle to the correct wheel positions.

During teaching, the required pressures for cold tyres (20 °C) are displayed in the fill info and the message **No monitoring of tyre pressure System learns over 25 km/h (16 mph)** appears on the multi-function display.


The tyre pressure warning light  in the instrument panel remains lit until all wheels have been taught.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and indicator lights" on page 126.

Tyre pressure warnings

The tyre pressure warning light  in the instrument panel and a corresponding message on the multi-function display warn about loss of pressure in two stages (yellow and red tyre pressure warning, depending on the amount of pressure loss).

Information

The tyre pressure warning light  goes out only when the tyre pressure has been corrected.

The yellow tyre pressure warning appears for approx. 10 seconds when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition has been switched off or when the ignition is switched on again.

The yellow tyre pressure warning can be acknowledged when the ignition is switched on. The red tyre pressure warning also appears during driving and can be acknowledged.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Chrono menu

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Sport Chrono Stopwatch” on page 226.

Gear Shift Assist Menu

- ✓ Vehicles with manual transmission.



Fig. 143: Example of gear shift assist

- ▶ Select the **Gear shift assist** menu.

In order to provide assistance during performance-oriented driving, the upshift indicator is displayed. The gearshift assist displays a prompt to shift to the next-higher gear with a pre-indication via segments that fill up. The sequence in which the segments are filled with colour is white, yellow, red.



Fig. 144: Example: higher gear

When all the segments are filled in red, a + sign appears next to the engaged gear in the display as a prompt to shift to the next-higher gear.

G-Force menu



Fig. 145: Example of acceleration forces

- ▶ Select the **G-Force** menu.

The current lateral and longitudinal acceleration forces are shown graphically in the form of a circular diagram.

Displaying maximum longitudinal and lateral acceleration forces

- ▶ **G-Force ▶ Maximum g-force**

Resetting maximum longitudinal and lateral acceleration forces

- ▶ **G-Force ▶ Maximum g-force ▶ Reset**

Speed limit menu

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Speed Limit Display” on page 221.

ACC menu

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)” on page 32.

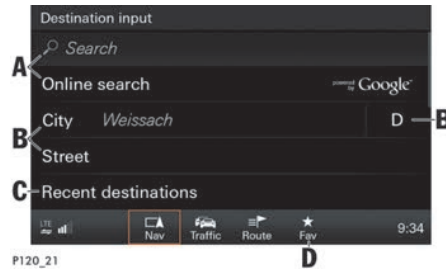
Navigation

Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided under “Navigation”. Safety instructions and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.



P120_21

Fig. 146: Destination input



P010_54

Fig. 147: Map view

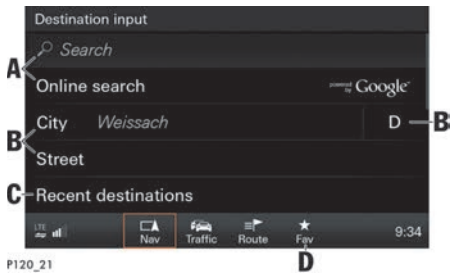
What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
Search for a destination	▶ NAV button ▶ Search or Online search (see A) ▶ Enter/select destination.	168
Enter a destination address	▶ NAV button ▶ City , Street or Country (see B) ▶ Enter a destination address.	168
Select previous destination	▶ NAV button ▶ Recent destinations (see C) ▶ Select entry from list.	168
Enter point of interest	▶ NAV button ▶ Points of interest ▶ Select point of interest option ▶ Select point of interest.	169
Select destination from contacts	▶ NAV button ▶ Fav ★ (see D) ▶ Browse (swipe) to Contacts page ▶ Select entry from list.	168
Start route guidance immediately	▶ MAP button ▶ Select Start 🗺️ (see E).	170
Stop route guidance	▶ MAP button ▶ Select Stop 🗺️ (see E).	170
Enter stopover/plan tour	▶ NAV button ▶ Enter destination ▶ New 🗺️ (see F) ▶ Enter stopover ▶ Select Add ➕.	169
Start stored tour	▶ NAV button ▶ Fav ★ (see D) ▶ Browse (swipe) to Stored destinations page ▶ Tours ▶ Select tour ▶ Select Start .	169
Open map view	▶ Press the MAP button.	172
Display traffic info	▶ NAV button/ MAP button ▶ Select Traffic 🚗 (see G).	173
Display and edit route	▶ NAV button/ MAP button ▶ Select Route 🗺️ (see H).	171

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

⚠ WARNING Risk of accidents

The Porsche navigation system guides you through traffic and makes it easier for you to reach your destination. If a recommended driving instruction contradicts the applicable traffic regulations, the Road Traffic Regulations always take precedence. The driver is always responsible for road safety.

- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation.
- ▶ Adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.



P120_21
Fig. 148: Destination input

Searching for a destination (search/online search)

When you are searching using the **Search** function, the PCM's internal database is accessed. Use the **Online search** function to search for destinations on the Internet.

- ✓ **Online search:** A data connection is established for the online search.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter "Connectivity" on page 87.
1. Press button **NAV**.
 2. Select **Search** or **Online search** (see **A** Fig. 148).
 3. Enter search term (e.g. city, street, name).
 4. Select desired entry from the list of suggestions.
 5. Select **Start**


Entering a destination address

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select **City** or **Street** (see **B** Fig. 148).
3. Enter address (city, street, house number, point of interest).
 Beside the **City** input field, the **Country** of the current vehicle position is displayed. If a destination abroad is to be entered, you will need to select the destination country.
4. Select the desired entry from the list.
5. Select **Start** .


Using stored destination or contact (recent destinations)

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select **Recent destinations** (see **C** Fig. 148).
3. Browse (swipe) to desired page:
 - **Recent destinations:** Recently used destinations.
 - **Stored destinations:** Destinations stored as favourites. Refer to chapter "Retrieving a stored destination (favourite)" on page 170.
 - **Contacts:** Stored contact addresses on a connected phone.
4. Select entry from the list.
5. Select **Start** .

Entering point of interest

1. **NAV** ► **Points of interest**
2. Select desired point of interest option (e.g. **Search around destination**).
3. Enter or select point of interest category or point of interest.
4. Select **Start** .


Information

Use **NAV** ► Nav  ► **Points of interest** ► Select desired point of interest option (e.g. **Search around destination**) ► **Portal List POIs** to load other POI categories from the Porsche Connect portal.

► Refer to chapter “Porsche Connect login” on page 89.


Entering destinations using GPS coordinates

✓ Route guidance has not yet started.

1. **NAV** button ► **OPT** button ► **Enter GPS coordinates**
2. Enter GPS coordinates and confirm with **OK**.
3. Select **Start** .

Accepting destination from map




✓ Route guidance has not yet started.

1. Press the **MAP** button.
2. Select destination on the map (if necessary by pressing the button for longer).
3. Select the destination displayed in the headline.
Destination details are displayed.
4. Select **Start** .


Planning tour (entering stopover)

A tour consists of one destination and a minimum of one and a maximum of 8 stopovers.

Entering and storing tour



1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Enter destination and start route guidance.
3. Select **Route** .
4. Select **Tour**.
5. Select **New** .
6. Enter stopover.
7. Select **Add** .
8. Enter tour name and confirm with **OK**.
Tour is stored.

Information

You can also reorganise the stopovers at a later time. Select **NAV** button ► **Route**  ► **Tour**, then press and hold the relevant stopover and move to the desired position.

Retrieving stored tour

✓ Tour is stored.

1. **NAV** button ► **Fav** 
2. Browse (swipe) to **Stored destinations** page.
3. Select **Tours**.
4. Select the desired tour.
5. Select **Start** .

Entering destination via multi-function display

For information on using the multi-function display:

- Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display without multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.
- Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display with multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.

1. Navigation ► Destination input

2. Select the desired list:
 - **Recent destinations**: Recently used destinations.
 - **Stored destinations**: Permanently stored destinations.
3. Select entry from the list and start navigation.

A Starting/stopping route guidance

B Starting route guidance in the Destination input menu

- ✓ Destination data is entered.
- ✓ Route guidance has not yet started.

▶ **NAV** button ▶ **Start**


C Starting route guidance with the destination input

- ✓ Destination data is entered.
- ✓ Route guidance has not yet started.
- ✓ Destination is displayed in detailed view.

▶ Select **Start** .

D Stopping route guidance in the Destination input menu

- ✓ Route guidance is active.

▶ **NAV** button ▶ **Stop route guidance**
– or –
Select **Stop** .

E Starting and stopping route guidance via multi-function display

- ✓ Destination data is entered.
- ✓ Route guidance has not yet started.


1. Select the **Navigation** menu.
2. Select the desired option:

- **Start route guidance:** Calculate route.
- **Stop route guidance:** Stop route guidance.

F Storing destination and retrieving stored destination (favourite)

G Storing destination (favourite)


- ✓ Destination data is entered.
- ✓ Route guidance has not started.

1. Select **Save** .
2. Confirm destination name with **OK**.
Destination is stored.
– or –
Change destination name and confirm with **OK**.
The destination is stored with the entered name.
– or –
Select a name that has already been assigned (e.g. **Home**) from the list and confirm with **OK**.
The destination information for the existing name is overwritten by the new information.


H Information

Alternatively, a destination can also be stored using the **NAV** button ▶ **Fav**  ▶ **Stored destinations** ▶ **Save as favourite**.


I Retrieving a stored destination (favourite)

1. **NAV** button or **MAP** button ▶ **Fav** 
2. Browse (swipe) to desired page:
 - **Recent destinations:** Recently used destinations.
 - **Stored destinations:** Destinations or tours stored as favourites.
 - **Contacts:** Stored contact addresses on a connected phone.
3. Select entry from the list.

J Information

Select **NAV** or **MAP** button ▶ **Fav**  ▶ **Stored destinations** ▶ **Portal Personal POIs** to load other destinations from the Porsche Connect portal.
▶ Refer to chapter “Porsche Connect login” on page 89.


K Deleting or editing destinations and tours

1. **NAV** button or **MAP** button ▶ **Fav** 
2. Browse (swipe) to desired page:
 - **Recent destinations:** Recently used destinations.
 - **Stored destinations:** Destinations stored as favourites.
 - **Contacts:** Stored contact addresses on a connected phone.
3. Select entry from the list.
4. Press the **OPT** button.

5. Select the desired option:


- **Rename**
- **Delete**
- **Show favourite on map**


Information

To delete all stored destinations or tours, select **NAV** button or **MAP** button ► **Fav**  ► **OPT** button before selecting an entry from the list.

Displaying and editing route

✓ Route guidance has started.

1. **NAV** button or **MAP** button ► **Route** 
2. Select option and change settings:

- **Route options:**
 - **Route type:** Setting for route calculation specifications (fast, short, ecological).
 - **Avoiding options for route calculation:** Settings to avoid or include toll roads, motorways, ferries/car trains, tunnels and mountain passes when calculating the route.
 - **Dynamic reroute:** To bypass tailbacks and obstacles using dynamic traffic management.
 - **Refer to traffic notices.**
- **List view:** Next distinctive route points (POIs, turning-off points) are displayed.
- **Tour:** Destinations and distances for the active tour route guidance are displayed.
- **Alternative routes:** Here you can select alternative routes to the current route guidance route. To start an alternative route, select **Start** .


Using smart routing

The PCM can learn frequently travelled routes and suggest them as a destination for route guidance. A smart route is created automatically as soon as an identical route is travelled twice.

Activating smart routing




1. **NAV** button ► **OPT** button ► **SET NAV / SET MAP**

2. Select **Smart routing**.

The symbol  is displayed at the top right of the map. The PCM records frequently travelled routes, regardless of whether route guidance has started.

Accessing smart routing


✓ Smart routing is activated.

1. **NAV** button or **MAP** button ► **Route**  ► **Smart routing**
– or –
Select the **MAP** button ►
Symbol  at the top right of the map.
2. Select the desired smart route from the list of suggestions.
3. Select **Start** .

Information

- A maximum of 3 suggested smart routes are available. Suggested routes are prioritised according to how frequently an identical route is travelled.
- The traffic situation for available smart routes is displayed depending on the current vehicle position.
- The PCM identifies whether the route is travelled during the week or at the weekend. Recorded smart routes are only displayed at the appropriate time – either at the weekend or during the week.
- Opening **Smart routing** stops active route guidance.

Information

- When a smart route is selected, **Delete**  can only delete stored routes to the currently displayed destination.
- Smart routes that have already been stored remain stored even after the function is deactivated and must be deleted manually.
- For information on deleting routes:
 - Refer to chapter “Changing navigation settings” on page 175.

Opening and configuring map view

Opening map view

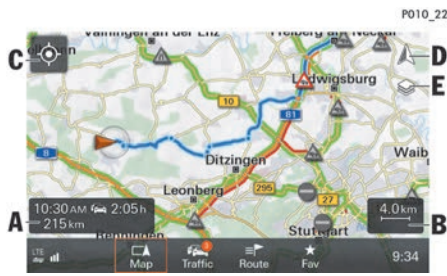


Fig. 149: Map view Map with display and function elements

▶ Press the **MAP** button.

The **Map** menu and a map view of the current location and if applicable the route in the current route guidance are displayed.

- **A:** Route guidance information, duration and distance to destination or arrival time.
- **B:** Switching between scale display and Auto zoom.
- **C:** Centring vehicle position on a map.
- **D:** Selecting map orientation North or in direction of travel.
- **E:** Opening map side menu.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Configuring map content” on page 172.

Configuring map content



Fig. 150: Map content incl. map side menu

1. **MAP** button ▶ Select Side menu
2. Select the desired map content. If necessary, swipe down (scroll) within the side menu using the rotary push button or the touchscreen to display additional menus.

- ✓ All map views that retrieve data from the Internet require an active data connection.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87.

Active map content is shown in red, inactive content in white:

- **A (3D):** 3D view (otherwise 2D view).
- **B (OnlineTraffic):** Show/hide real-time traffic information about accidents, roadworks, traffic flow information and other incidents from the Internet.
- **C:** Show/hide map display of online data with 360° panoramic view.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Activating map view with 360° panoramic view” on page 172.

- **D (Show POI):** Show/hide points of interest on the map.
- **E (Compass):** Show/hide compass on the map.
- **Weather:** Show/hide weather information on the map.
- **Auto zoom:** Show/hide Auto zoom function on the map.

Information

The map side menu provides quick access to functions that can also be set using the

MAP button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET Map** ▶ **Map view** ▶ **Layers**.

Activating map view with 360° panoramic view

- ✓ An active data connection is available.
- ✓ Vehicle is stationary (function is not available when driving).

1. **MAP** button ▶ Select Side menu
2. Activate map content (see **C** Fig. 150).
3. Set map scale to less than 100 m.
4. Select the symbol. 360° panoramic view is activated. Using the touchscreen, you can explore the environment step by step.

Displaying and configuring the map view via the multi-function display

For information on using the multi-function display:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display without multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display with multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.

1. Select the **MAP** menu.
2. Select the desired display option:

- **Auto zoom:** The scale of the map is set automatically from the current position of the vehicle to the next navigation manoeuvre point.
- **3D map:** Three-dimensional map display.
- **North up:** The map always faces north.
- **Manual zoom:** Adjust the zoom factor for the map display.
- **Show destination:** Select the navigation destination as an enlarged section of the map.
- **Show position:** Select the current vehicle position as an enlarged section of the map.

Displaying traffic info

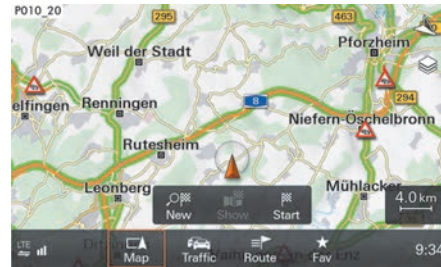


Fig. 151: Displaying traffic info

You can retrieve traffic info on the current location or on the selected route in the **NAV** menu and the **MAP** menu.

The following information is displayed:

- Hatched areas: Identify the length of the traffic disruption.
- Coloured warning symbol: An imminent traffic disruption on the selected route. If route guidance is not active, all current traffic disruptions are highlighted in colour.
- Greyed-out warning symbol: Traffic disruptions that are not on the selected route.

1. Press the **NAV** button or the **MAP** button.
2. Select **Traffic**.
A list of all traffic announcements received is displayed.
The number displayed in the **Traffic** menu shows the number of traffic notices on the selected route.
3. Select traffic announcement.
– or –
Select **Show all traffic notices** to display all the traffic notices found.


Traffic announcements help you to avoid tailbacks and obstacles using dynamic traffic management. The detour can be activated using the **MAP** button ► **Route** ► **Dynamic reroute**.

i Information

The radio stations are responsible for traffic announcements. For that reason, no liability can be accepted for the completeness and correctness of the information.

Displaying realtime traffic information

- ✓ An active data connection is available.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87.

1. **MAP** button ▶ Select Side menu 
2. Select **OnlineTraffic**.

The following traffic flow information is displayed:

- Green lines: Free-flowing traffic.
- Orange lines: Slow-moving traffic.
- Red lines: Tailbacks
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Configuring map content” on page 172.

Information

- The Porsche Connect services (including the Car Connect services, but not the Safety and Security services) offer a free inclusive period, which varies in length for each services package and country, but is always at least 3 months. Further information about the free inclusive periods as well as subsequent costs and information about the availability of individual services for your country is available online at www.porsche.com/connect or from your Porsche partner.
- Depending on the country, the Porsche Connect Services can be used via the embedded SIM or a data-enabled external SIM card. A separate, fee-based contract with a mobile phone provider is required for the external SIM card.

Offroad mode navigation



WARNING

Risk of accidents

Compass errors and malfunctions cannot be ruled out due to system-related inaccuracies and malfunction risks of satellite-based navigation. The driver is always responsible for driving the vehicle.

- ▶ Never rely solely on offroad navigation.
- ▶ Always pay attention to offroad conditions.

Offroad mode allows you to record a route (trace) when travelling in non-digitised areas. This is done by setting waypoints.





Activating and deactivating offroad mode

Offroad mode allows you to navigate freely away from listed streets and routes.

1. **NAV** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET NAV**
2. Select **Offroad mode** and confirm the prompt if necessary.
Offroad mode is activated/deactivated.



Starting recording and setting waypoints

- ✓ Offroad mode is active.

1. **MAP** button ▶ **Start** 
2. Select **Add** .
The current waypoint is recorded. Additional waypoints (up to a maximum of 10) can be added.
3. To stop the recording, select **Stop** .
4. Select **Save**.
5. Enter a name and confirm with **OK**.
The entry is saved under **NAV** ▶ **Fav**  ▶ **Stored destinations** ▶ **Tours**.

Tracing waypoints

- ✓ Offroad mode is active.

1. Select **NAV** button ▶ **Fav**  ▶ **Stored destinations** ▶ **Tours** ▶ to call up the desired tour.
2. Select **Start** .
3. Select the desired option:

- **Trace forward:** Waypoints are traced from the starting point to the end point.
- **Trace backward:** Waypoints are traced from the end point to the starting point.
- **From start:** Departure point is the starting point.
- **From here:** Departure point is the current vehicle position.

Changing navigation settings

1. **NAV** button ▶ **OPT** button

2. Select the desired option:

- **Location details:** Current location information is displayed.
- **Enter GPS coordinates:** Enter GPS coordinates and confirm with **OK**.
- **SET NAV**
 - **Navigation announcement volume:** Adjust the volume of the navigation announcements and switch the announcement on or off.
 - **Smart routing:** When the function is activated, the PCM records frequently travelled routes. **Delete all** deletes all previously learned smart routes.
 - **Offroad mode:** Activate/deactivate mode (allows you to navigate freely even away from recorded streets and routes).
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Offroad mode navigation” on page 174.
 - **Navigation database update:** Update navigation database (country-dependent). An active data connection is required for online map update using Porsche Connect services.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87
 - ▷ Contact your Porsche partner.
 - **Low fuel warning:** Show/hide fuel range information.
 - **Hide navigation info:** Show/hide navigation information.

Changing map settings

1. **MAP** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET MAP**

2. Select the desired option:

- **Map view:** Adapt the map display (North up, 3D map, 3D buildings) and the map view.
- **Zoom:** Adaptation of scaling.
 - **Auto zoom:** Automatic selection of zoom level during active route guidance.
 - **Junction zoom:** Automatic selection of zoom level when approaching a junction during active route guidance.
 - **Intersection detail map:** Display of more detailed driving instructions when approaching a junction.
- **Notices:** Configuration of warnings when approaching points of interest, low fuel level and different country.
 - **Point of interest proximity warnings**
 - **Low fuel warning**
 - **Show country information**

– General settings

- **Day and night view:** Switching between day and night view.
- **Show speed limits:** When the function is activated, speed limits are displayed in the PCM. If the vehicle has a speed limit display on the multi-function display, this menu item is not shown and the speed limit is displayed automatically.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Speed Limit Display” on page 221.
- **Show footer:** The touchscreen footer is displayed in the map view.
- **Show layer selection:** Shows button for the Layers side bar in the map view.
- **Show time of arrival:** Switches between arrival time and remaining duration of trip.
- **Trip duration to stopover:** Displays time and distance to stopover.
- **Offroad mode:** Activate/deactivate mode (allows you to navigate freely even away from recorded streets and routes).
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Offroad mode navigation” on page 174.

Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

Brief overview

This brief overview is not a substitute for the complete information provided in “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)”. Safety instructions and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



Fig. 152: PCM



Fig. 153: Touchscreen, Home menu

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
Switch on PCM	▶ Switch on ignition or press volume control A .	
Switch off PCM	▶ Switch off ignition or press and hold volume control A .	
Adjust the volume	▶ Turn volume control A .	
Mute the audio source	▶ Briefly press volume control A .	
Open main menu, e.g. radio	▶ Press button e.g. TUNER .	
View tone settings	▶ HOME button ▶ OPT button ▶ SET SOUND ▶ Volume or Sound	184
Open Device Manager/establish connection	▶ Select or (see B) in the footer.	100/87
Change the date and time	▶ Select time 9:34 (see C) in the footer.	177
Open and configure MyScreen	▶ HOME button ▶ MyScreen	180
Change system settings	▶ HOME button ▶ Set	183
Play music from a CD/DVD or SD card	▶ Insert CD/DVD or SD card ▶ SOURCE button ▶ Select desired media source.	181
Play music from an external device	▶ Connect external device via USB, AUX (depending on equipment) or Bluetooth® ▶ SOURCE button ▶ Select desired media source.	182

Important information on operation

The Porsche Communication Management (PCM) is the central control unit for the radio, sound settings, the navigation system and for using various media and the telephone.

For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

To ensure that use of the PCM does not endanger or injure anyone, always observe the following safety instructions:

WARNING Risk of accidents

Operating the PCM may distract you from the traffic.

- ▶ Only operate the PCM if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely. If in doubt, stop in a suitable place and operate the PCM while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ Set the volume in such a way that acoustic signals from outside, e.g. sirens from emergency vehicles (e.g. police, ambulance) can still be heard at all times.

WARNING Risk of accidents

As a result of braking, rapid acceleration, changes of direction or in an accident, unsecured or incorrectly positioned devices can slip out of place and endanger vehicle occupants.

- ▶ Do not transport objects unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- ▶ Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.

CAUTION

Danger of injury

Danger from invisible laser radiation if the housing is opened or damaged.

- ▶ The PCM is a Class 1 laser product. Do not open the housing. Any maintenance work required must be performed solely by qualified customer service specialists.



Information

To protect the battery, the PCM switches itself off automatically a few minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Switching the PCM on/off



Fig. 154: Switching the PCM on/off

- ▶ The PCM is activated when the ignition is switched on.
- ▶ Irrespective of the ignition, the PCM can be switched on and off by pressing and holding the volume control **A**.

Setting the date and time

The time display provides rapid access to the date and time settings.

- ▶ Select Time **9:34** in the footer.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Changing general system settings” on page 183.

Touchscreen controls

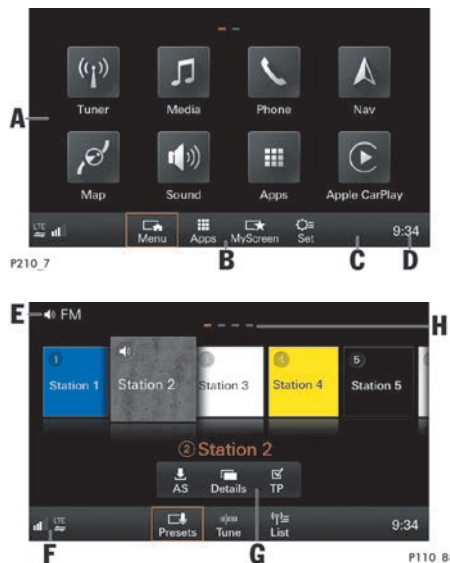


Fig. 155: Touchscreen Controls

A Home screen

Shows available functions when button **HOME** is pressed.

B Functions of the active main menu

The toolbar offers different menus, depending on which main menu is active.

C Footer

Functions of the active main menu, connection symbols and the configurable temperature or time display.

D Time or temperature display

▷ Refer to chapter “Setting the date and time” on page 177.

E Headline

For example, displays selected radio or media source.

F Opening the Device Manager

(connect telephone, display WiFi settings and set up wireless Internet access, connect Bluetooth® devices, view connection status of Apple® CarPlay and Porsche Connect App).
▷ Refer to chapter “Device Manager” on page 100.

G Controller

Shows additional functions when you approach the touchscreen.

H Show other pages

Open other pages by scrolling (swiping).

Operating the PCM with the touchscreen

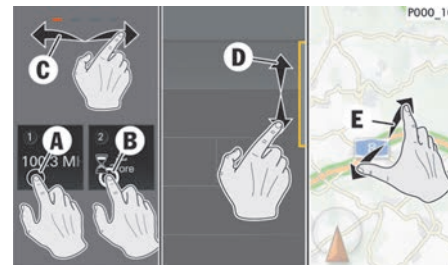


Fig. 156: Operating with the touchscreen

A Touch (select)

Briefly touch the touchscreen with your finger. Example: Select a function or check/uncheck a box.

B Long press

Touch the touchscreen for longer. Example: Save a station in the main menu **TUNER**.

C Swipe

Swipe the touchscreen horizontally with your finger. Example: View other pages containing radio stations.

D Scroll

Swipe the touchscreen vertically with your finger. Example: Manually scroll through lists.

E Zoom

Move two fingers apart or closer together. Tapping the touchscreen twice zooms in on that section. Example: Zoom in on a map.

Operating the PCM with the rotary push button



Fig. 157: Rotary push button

1. Turn the rotary push button until the desired function is highlighted.
2. Press the rotary push button to activate the highlighted function.

Opening menus

Opening a main menu directly

- ▶ Press button on the PCM (e.g. **TUNER**).

i Information

You can change from one main menu to another at any time. When you return to a main menu, the contents that you had opened before leaving it are displayed once more.

Opening the main menu via the Home menu

1. **HOME** button ▶ **Menu**
2. Select main menu (e.g. **Tuner**).

Opening settings of the active function

- ✓ The desired main menu has been selected (e.g. **TUNER**).

- ▶ Press button **OPT**.
Settings and other functions of the relevant are displayed.

Entering text and characters

As soon as you need to enter text or characters, e.g. for entering a navigation destination or a search term, an input field is displayed.



Fig. 158: Touchscreen keyboard

- A** Current cursor position
- B** Switch caps lock on/off (toggle between upper and lower case)
- C** Show and hide keyboard
- D** Toggle between entry of letters, numbers and special characters
- E** Handwriting recognition (enter letters or characters using the touchscreen)
- F** Adapt keyboard (availability dependent on country)
- G** Insert space
- H** Confirm entry
- I** Delete entry
- J** List of suggestions

There are three options for entering text and characters:

Entry using the keyboard

1. Select input field to open the touchscreen keyboard.
2. Write your desired text or characters.
 - ▶ To enter accents, umlauts, etc. press the desired letters for longer.
A window then opens containing accents, umlauts, etc. for these letters.

Entry using the rotary push button

1. Turn the rotary push button (see Fig. 157) until the desired letter or character is highlighted.
2. Press the rotary push button to enter the highlighted letter or character.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Freehand entry

Freehand entry has handwriting recognition and enables you to write text and characters with your finger.



Fig. 159: Freehand entry

1. Select  to open the input field.
2. Write your desired text or characters with your finger.

- ▶ To enter a space, swipe your finger from left to right (with Arabic as the menu language: note the writing direction).
- ▶ To delete an entry, swipe your finger from right to left (with Arabic as the menu language: note the writing direction).

Information


Text and numbers can also be entered using voice control (e.g. for dialling a phone number or entering a navigation destination).

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Voice Control” on page 271.

Opening the Device Manager

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Device Manager” on page 100.

Opening apps

The **Apps**  menu provides access to Porsche Connect services as well as Porsche Connect App functions.

▶ **HOME** button ▶ **Apps** 

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87.

Showing a background image

A background image can be show or hidden in the **HOME** menu.

▶ **HOME** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **Show background image**

Configuring MyScreen

In the **MyScreen** menu, you can group touchscreen content from different categories (e.g. **NAV** or **PHONE**) individually as you wish. You can configure three different MyScreens in total.

Creating MyScreen




1. **HOME** button ▶ **MyScreen**  ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET MyScreen**
2. Select **MyScreen 1**, **MyScreen 2** or **MyScreen 3**.
3. Select a category (e.g. **SOURCE**) to fold down the list of available tiles.



Fig. 160: Configuring MyScreen

4. Click on, hold and drag the tile you require into any container on the left-hand preview side (drag & drop). The tile can be inserted into the container as soon as a green edge appears.
5. Exit the **Configure MyScreen** menu using  or .
- ▶ If you wish to remove a tile from the left-hand preview side, drag the relevant tile from the container using drag & drop or replace with another tile.

For information on adding a phone favourite:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Adding favourites in MyScreen” on page 244.

Opening MyScreen

1. Press button **HOME**.
2. Select **MyScreen**.
The most recently activated **MyScreen** is displayed.
 - ▶ To switch between **MyScreen 1**, **MyScreen 2** and **MyScreen 3**, swipe left or right until the relevant MyScreen is displayed.

Resetting MyScreen

1. **HOME** button ▶ **MyScreen** ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET MyScreen**
2. Select **Reset MyScreen**.
The content of MyScreen pages 2 and 3 is deleted. The content of MyScreen page 1 is reset to the default settings.

Notes on drives and externally connected devices

Information on supported media and file formats:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 315.
- If a storage medium contains a lot of files, folders or playlists, it may take longer to load tracks the first time.
- Audio files are automatically displayed with stored additional information (e.g. artists, title, album cover) on playback. If this information is not available on the medium in question, an available Internet database is used. Despite this, it may sometimes happen that individual additional information is not displayed.

- Do not use USB extension cables or adapters. These impair performance.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Porsche will not assume any liability for damaged or lost files or media. Never store important data on SD cards, the Jukebox, CDs/DVDs or portable playback devices.
- At unusually high or low outside temperatures, playback of a CD/DVD may temporarily be impossible. To protect the CD/DVD and the scanning laser, a thermal protection circuit is installed.
- The PCM may not always be able to play back CDs/DVDs that have copy protection or do not conform to the standard.
- You are basically only allowed to create copies of CDs/DVDs for your own private use. Copied CDs/DVDs that are passed on to third parties are not covered by statutory exceptions to copyright. Music tracks that were created as MP3 files and can be played back in MP3 mode are generally subject to copyright protection in accordance with the applicable international and national regulations. In many countries, copies cannot be made, even for private use, without the prior consent of the copyright holder. Please observe the applicable copyright legislation. If you yourself are a copyright holder, e.g. for your own compositions and recordings, or were granted these rights by a copyright holder, these restrictions do not apply. The prevailing legal position applies in all cases.

Loading the CD/DVD drive

NOTICE

Risk of damage to PCM if CDs/DVDs are not used properly.

- ▶ Only use round, standard CDs/DVDs with a diameter of 12 cm.
- ▶ Only touch CD/DVD at the edges. Do not touch the unwritten side.
- ▶ Keep CDs/DVDs clean, and clean if necessary.
- ▶ Do not stick anything to CDs/DVDs.
- ▶ Do not bend CDs/DVDs.
- ▶ Do not force CDs/DVDs into or out of the drive.

Inserting a CD/DVD

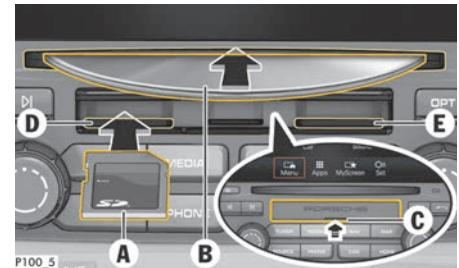


Fig. 161: Loading a CD/DVD or SD card

1. Insert the CD/DVD with the written side facing up into slot **B** until it is automatically pulled in.
2. Press **SOURCE** button and select the desired media source.

Removing a CD/DVD

- ▶ Press **▲** button and remove the CD/DVD.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Inserting an SD card

NOTICE

Risk of damage to PCM if SD cards are not used properly.

If you use SD cards that are in more than one piece, there is a risk of the SD card falling out of the adapter if shaken, and individual card pieces getting stuck in the SD card reader.

- ▶ Only use single-piece SD cards.

Inserting an SD card

1. Use a finger nail to fold up the cover over the slot **C** (Fig. 161).
2. Insert the SD card **A** into SD card reader 1 (see **D**) or 2 (see **E**) with the writing facing up, until it locks into place.

Removing an SD card

✓ SD and SIM card reader cover open.

1. Push the inserted card and remove it.
2. Close the SD and SIM card reader cover.

Inserting and removing SIM cards

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Establishing data connection via external SIM card” on page 87.

Connecting an external device

Information on supported media and file formats:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 315.

i Information

With some external devices, it may be necessary to adjust the volume separately.

1. Adjust the volume on the external device.
2. Set the desired volume on the PCM.

Connecting an external device via USB or AUX

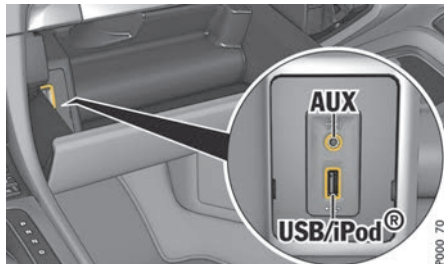


Fig. 162: USB and universal, equipment-dependent audio (AUX) ports in the glove box

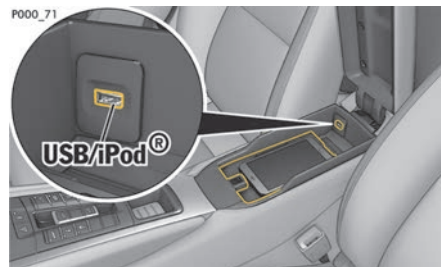


Fig. 163: USB port in centre console



1. Open the glove box or centre armrest.
2. Connect an external device (e.g. iPod®, USB flash drive) to the USB or equipment-dependent audio (AUX) port.
3. Press **SOURCE** button and select the desired media source.

i Information

There is a USB port and – depending on equipment – a universal Audio (AUX) port in the glove box, and another USB port in the centre console. Apple® CarPlay can only be used via the USB port in the centre console.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Apple® CarPlay” on page 48.



Connecting an external device via Bluetooth®

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).
– or –
PHONE button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **Device manager**
2. Select **Bluetooth audio** ▶ **Search for new device**.
A 6-digit Bluetooth® code is generated and displayed in the PCM and on the mobile phone.
3. Compare the Bluetooth® code in the PCM and on the mobile phone.
4. If the Bluetooth® code in the PCM and on the mobile phone match, confirm.
On mobile phones with a SIM Access Profile (SAP), enter the PIN for the SIM card in the PCM, if necessary.
If the device has been successfully connected, it is displayed in the device overview.

For information on managing Bluetooth® devices:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Deleting a Bluetooth® device or displaying Bluetooth® information” on page 240.

Changing general system settings

1. **HOME** button ▶ **Set**  ▶ **System**
– or –
CAR button ▶ **Set**  ▶ **System**
2. Select the desired option:

- **Date and time**
 - **Automatic time sync:** Synchronise time, date and summer time with GPS signal.
 - **Time**
 - **Date**
 - **Automatic time zone:** In auto time mode, the time zone is also set automatically.
 - **Time zone**
 - **Time format**
 - **Date format**
- **Units**
 - **Speed**
 - **Temperature**
 - **Pressure** (tyre pressure).
 - **Consumption**
- **Language:** Select the system language.
- **Voice control:**
 - **Short dialogue:** Voice control uses short voice command texts.
 - **Help texts:** Display of possible commands with active voice control.
- **Factory settings**
 - **Factory settings:** All set values are reset to predefined values. Personal data is retained.
 - **Vehicle handover:** All set values are reset to predefined values. All personal data, e.g. address, destinations and phone numbers, is deleted.

Changing the settings of the PCM display

1. **HOME** button ▶ **Set**  ▶ **PCM display**
– or –
CAR button ▶ **Set**  ▶ **PCM display**
2. Select the desired option:

- **Switch off display:** Touchscreen is switched off until the next time it is touched.
- **Brightness**
- **Footer**
 - **Temperature:** Display of temperature in the footer
 - **Time:** Display of time in the footer
- **Proximity sensor:** Activate/deactivate proximity sensors.
- **Touch tone setting:** Activate/deactivate a confirmation tone when the screen is touched.


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A Changing the volume and tone


B Adjusting the volume

C You can adjust the volume by turning the volume control **A** (see Fig. 154 on page 177).


D Muting the audio source

- F ▶ Briefly press volume control **A** (see Fig. 154 on page 177).
The mute symbol  can be seen in the footer.
Driving recommendations, phone conversations and traffic announcements can still be heard.
- J ▶ To cancel the mute function, briefly press or turn volume control **A** again.

M Changing tone settings

- N 1. **HOME** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET SOUND** ▶ **Sound** 
- O 2. Select option and change setting:
- P – **Bass**: Increase or reduce base frequencies.
- R – **Treble**: Increase or reduce treble frequencies.
- S – **Fader**: Distribute volume between front and rear loudspeakers.
- T – **Balance**: Distribute volume between left and right loudspeakers.

Changing the volume settings

- 1. **HOME** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET SOUND** ▶ **Volume** 
- 2. Select the desired option:
 - **Traffic announcements**: Sets the increased volume for traffic announcements.
 - **Navigation announcements**: Set volume for navigation instructions.
 - **Speed dependent volume**: Adapt volume in line with speed.
 - **AUX**: Set volume for equipment-dependent AUX audio playback.
 - **Bluetooth audio**: Set volume for Bluetooth® audio playback.
 - **Microphone sensitivity**: Modify microphone sensitivity during an active call.
 - **Ringtone volume**: Set ringtone volume for incoming calls.
 - **Mute navigation during call**: Do not play navigation announcements when call is active.
 - **Touch tone setting**: Activate/deactivate confirmation tone when screen is touched.
 - **Signal tone for messages**: Switch sound for incoming text messages and e-mails on/off.

Changing Burmester® tone settings

- 1. **HOME** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET SOUND**
- 2. Select **Burmester**.
- 3. Select the desired option:
 - **Pure**: Purist, unchanged sound reproduction.
 - **Smooth**: Tone setting for relaxed long-duration listening.
 - **Surround**: Music playback with pronounced spaciousness.
 - **Live**: Spacious music playback with live atmosphere.
 - **Position**: Seat-specific tone adaptation.
 - **Sound conditioner**: Adaptation of the sound experience to ambient volume.

Changing BOSE® tone settings

- 1. **HOME** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET SOUND**
- 2. Select **BOSE**.
- 3. Select the desired option:
 - **Surround**: Music playback with pronounced spaciousness.
 - **Linear**: Change from bass-heavy tone setting (Linear off) to a neutral, balanced tone (Linear on).
 - **AudioPilot®**: When this function is active, the noise level in the passenger compartment is monitored and audio playback optimised accordingly.

ParkAssist

When the driver is parking and manoeuvring the vehicle, ParkAssist shows the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle both visually (depending on vehicle equipment) and acoustically.

The visual ParkAssist parking aid is displayed on the PCM. Obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle are shown using different-coloured fields. These fields show the shape of the obstacles and their distance from the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Lack of attention when manoeuvring or parking

The increased comfort offered by ParkAssist must not induce you to take any safety risk. Even when using ParkAssist, the driver is still responsible for taking due care when parking and when assessing obstacles. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.

- ▶ Make sure that no persons, animals or obstacles are within the manoeuvring area.

Distance measurement

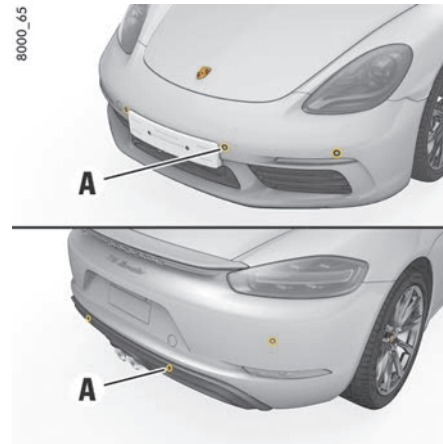


Fig. 164: Ultrasonic sensors for distance measurement

The ultrasonic sensors **A** in the front and rear bumper (depending on vehicle equipment) measure the distance to the closest obstacle. A detected obstacle is signalled by an **intermittent tone**. The intervals decrease as the obstacle is approached. If the distance drops to less than approx. 30 cm, a **continuous tone** sounds. Obstacles cannot be detected in the “blind” sensor area (above and below the sensors, e.g. objects hanging down or close to the ground).

The volume of the warning tones can be adjusted on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Adjusting volume of warning tones and ParkAssist” on page 269.

Activating ParkAssist

Activating automatically (up to a speed of approx. 15 km/h (9 mph))

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ Reverse gear is engaged.
 - or –
- ✓ Distance at the front is less than approx. 80 cm.
 - or –
- ✓ ParkAssist detects that the vehicle is rolling backwards.

Activating manually

- ▶ **CAR** button ▶ **Assist** ▶ **Display ParkAssist**

Display in the PCM

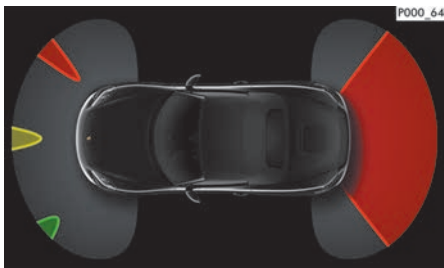


Fig. 165: Colour indicates distance

Colour	Distance at front	Distance at the rear
green	< 120 cm	< 180 cm
yellow	< 80 cm	< 80 cm
red	< 40 cm	< 45 cm
red with continuous tone	< 30 cm	< 30 cm

i Information

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.

Deactivating ParkAssist

Deactivating automatically

- ✓ Switch from reverse gear to a forward gear (after approx. 2 minutes if no obstacle has been detected).
- or –
- ✓ Selector lever is in position **P**.

Deactivating manually

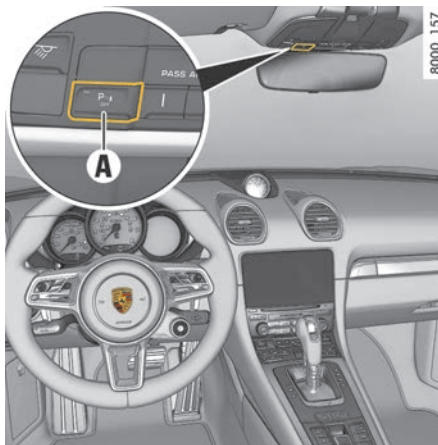


Fig. 166: Button on overhead console

- ▶ Press button **A** on the overhead console. The indicator light on the button lights up. Nothing is displayed in the PCM. It is not possible to manually reactivate the display in the PCM.

Exceptions

Due to its design, ParkAssist cannot detect the following things:

- sound-absorbing obstacles (e.g. wintry conditions, powder snow, clothing made from fabric or fur)
- sound-reflecting obstacles (e.g. glass surfaces and flat painted surfaces)
- very thin obstacles (e.g. thin posts)

In addition, other ultrasonic sources (e.g. pneumatic brakes of other vehicles, sweeping machines and jack hammers) may interfere with the detection of obstacles.

Maintenance notes

- ▶ The sensors must always be kept free of dust, ice and snow in order to ensure that they are fully functional.
- ▶ Do not damage sensors by abrasion or scratching.
- ▶ Maintain sufficient distance when cleaning with high-pressure cleaning equipment. The sensors will be damaged if the pressure is too high.
- ▶ Structural changes to the vehicle, e.g. holders for number plates/interchangeable number plates or bent or inadequately secured number plates, can have an adverse effect on the system.


Reversing camera

Activating reversing camera

Automatically

- ✓ Reverse gear is engaged and ignition is switched on.
 - or –
- ✓ ParkAssist detects that the vehicle is rolling backwards.

Manually

▶  button ▶ Assist ▶
Display ParkAssist

Deactivating reversing camera

Automatically

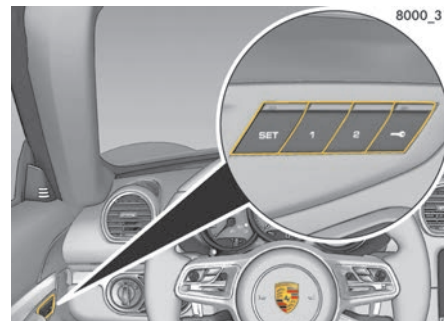
- ✓ Switch from reverse gear to a forward gear (after approx. 2 minutes if no obstacle has been detected).
 - or –
- ✓ Selector lever is in position **P**.



A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Personal Settings

Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided under “Personal Settings”. Safety instructions and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



Where can I store/retrieve personal settings?	Which settings can I store/retrieve with the memory package?	Page
Via the memory buttons 1 or 2 in the driver's door.	Ergonomic settings (depending on equipment) – Driver's seat, exterior mirrors, steering wheel	189
Via the driver's key button  in the driver's door.	Ergonomic settings (depending on equipment) – Driver's seat, exterior mirrors, steering wheel Comfort settings (depending on equipment) – Instrument panel – Air-conditioning system The settings are stored on driver's key button  in the driver's door and on the driver's key.	189

Storing and retrieving personal settings

Memory package

⚠ CAUTION

Retrieving automatic settings for seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Parts of the body may be squeezed or crushed if the settings are activated in an uncontrolled manner.

- ▶ Automatic retrieval of the settings can be cancelled if necessary by pressing a memory button or any seat adjustment button.
- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.



Fig. 167: Driver's door memory buttons (memory package)

Depending on the equipment, the memory package includes the storage of various settings on the driver's key and the memory buttons in the driver's door.

Ergonomic settings:

- Driver's seat
- Steering wheel
- Exterior mirror

Comfort settings:

- Instrument panel
- Air-conditioning system


Storing settings on the driver's key

Ergonomic and comfort settings can be individually assigned to the driver's keys.

i Information

Individual memory information can be stored on a total of four driver's keys. If additional driver's keys are available, the memory information from the key that was last taught on the vehicle is adopted.

By pressing the driver's key button in the driver's door

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- 1. Press the **SET** button.
The indicator light on the button lights up.
- 2. Press driver's key button  within 10 seconds.



The ergonomic and comfort settings (driver's key-specific) are stored.
Storage is acknowledged acoustically and the indicator light on the **SET** button goes out.

Retrieving settings from the driver's key

Automatic retrieval through unlocking of the vehicle

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle and open the driver's door.
The current settings on the existing driver's key are retrieved.

By pressing the driver's key button in the driver's door

- ▶ Press and hold driver's key button  until all settings are retrieved.
- or –
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ The driver's door is open.
- ▶ Briefly press the driver's key button .
The current settings on the existing driver's key are retrieved.

Storing settings on memory buttons 1 and 2

Ergonomic settings can be assigned to memory buttons **1** and **2** in the driver's door.

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- 1. Press the **SET** button.
The indicator light on the button lights up.
- 2. Press memory button **1** or **2** within 10 seconds.
The ergonomic settings are stored.
Storage is acknowledged acoustically and the indicator light on the **SET** button goes out.

A **Retrieving settings with memory buttons 1 or 2**

- B ▶ Press and hold memory button **1 or 2** until all settings are retrieved.
- C – or –
- D ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- E ✓ The driver's door is open.
- F ▶ Briefly press memory button **1 or 2**.
The settings are automatically applied.
- G
- H
- I
- J
- K
- L
- M
- N
- O
- P**
- Q
- R
- S
- T
- U
- V
- W
- X
- Y
- Z

Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)

The PASM system actively adjusts the shock absorbers. The adjustable damper system selects the appropriate damping level for each wheel according to the driving situation and driving conditions. Driving safety, agility and comfort are optimised.

Two different chassis setups can be selected at the push of a button:

- “Normal chassis”
- “Sport chassis”

In Normal mode, the vehicle is in a sporty and comfortable setup.


Sport mode offers very sporty shock absorber tuning, e.g. for driving on the race circuit.

In addition to manual mode selection, PASM also adjusts shock absorber tuning for either sporty or comfort driving, depending on the driving situation.

Selecting PASM mode



Fig. 168: PASM button in the centre console

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press button .

No indicator light comes on when “Normal chassis” is selected (default setting).

One indicator light comes on when “Sport chassis” is selected.

In addition, the selected chassis setup is shown briefly on the multi-function display.

Information

The last selected chassis setup is stored in the memory after the ignition is switched off.

Responding to warning message

PASM faults are displayed on the multi-function display.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

A Porsche Car Connect

B The Porsche Car Connect smartphone app can be used to establish a connection with the vehicle over the cellular network. This means that vehicle-specific information can be retrieved directly via the smartphone and selected settings can be implemented on the vehicle using the app.

C Detailed information on installation, the functions and management of the Porsche Car Connect app contract and services is available at www.porsche.com/connect or from your Porsche partner.

D Disabling communication between vehicle and app

E Communication between your vehicle and the Porsche Car Connect app can be disabled from the multi-function display.

- F ▷ Refer to chapter “Setting Porsche Car Connect” on page 270.

G **⚠ WARNING**

H Setting and operating when driving

I Changing app settings or using the app while driving can distract you from the traffic. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- J ▶ Operate and adjust settings only while the vehicle is stationary.

K **i Information**

L Since the Porsche Car Connect app can be used to access vehicle-specific data and other functions, we recommend that you protect this data to prevent unauthorised access by third parties.

L **i Information**

M Use of the Porsche Car Connect app may incur additional costs with your service provider since the data is transmitted via mobile communications networks.

Porsche Connect App

The Porsche Connect App enables you to transfer personal POIs (points of interest) and destinations from your mobile phone's address book or calendar to the PCM.

You can access music tracks with the music streaming function – once the necessary apps have been installed and you have created an account.

⚠ WARNING

Setting and operating when driving

Changing app settings or using the app while driving can distract you from the traffic. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Operate and adjust settings only while the vehicle is stationary.

i Information

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):



- ▶ Refer to chapter "Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 176.

Connecting Porsche Connect App to PCM using WiFi and opening in PCM

- ✓ Porsche Connect App is installed on your mobile phone (Download from Apple® App Store or GOOGLE® Play Store).
- ✓ Porsche Connect App has been started.
- ✓ WiFi is enabled on the mobile phone.
- ✓ WiFi is enabled on the PCM.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter "Configuring WiFi settings" on page 247.



Fig. 169: Opening the Device Manager

1. Open the Device Manager using  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).
2. Establish connection via personal hotspot on your mobile phone (There is **no** SIM card in the SIM card reader. Vehicles with embedded SIM (availability dependent on country): PCM phone is switched off):
 - ▶ Refer to chapter "Connectivity" on page 87.
 - a. Activate personal hotspot on your mobile phone.
 - b. Select **Porsche Connect App ▶ Connect to external WiFi hotspot** in the Device Manager.
 - c. Enter the WiFi access data for the personal hotspot (**Hotspot name** and **Hotspot password**) in the WiFi settings of the PCM.

– or –

Establish connection via WiFi hotspot (wireless Internet access) in the PCM (Data connection is established via external SIM card or embedded SIM):



- ▶ Refer to chapter "Connectivity" on page 87.
 - a. Select **Porsche Connect App ▶ Configure WiFi hotspot in PCM** in the Device Manager.
 - b. Enter the PCM's WiFi access data (**Hotspot name** and **Hotspot password**) in the WiFi settings of your mobile phone.
3. Press the **HOME** button.
 4. Select **Apps** . The available content of the Porsche Connect App is displayed.

i Information

- You can also view the PCM's WiFi access data by pressing **PHONE** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET PHONE ▶ WiFi settings ▶ Configure WiFi hotspot in PCM**.
- For information on the Device Manager:
 - ▶ Refer to chapter "Device Manager" on page 100.


Transferring a navigation destination and calendar entry to the PCM

- ✓ Porsche Connect App is connected to the PCM.

1. In the app, select a navigation destination or calendar entry.
 - a. **Online search:** Select destination using the Online search function.
 - b. **Contacts:** Select contact incl. address details.
 - c. **Calendar:** Select calendar incl. address details.
 - d. **Pictures:** Select destination using a stored picture.
2. Add the destination to the **MyDestinations** favourites list using the  symbol. Entries that have already been added to Favourites are marked by a check.
3. If the Porsche Connect App is connected to the PCM, the content of **MyDestinations** is transferred to the PCM. If necessary, you may have to refresh the PCM display manually using the **HOME** button ▶ **Apps** .
4. Via **HOME** button ▶ **Apps** ▶ select **MyDestinations** or **Calendar**.
– or –
NAV button ▶
Stored destinations ▶
Select **MyDestinations**.
5. Start route calculation to the transferred destination.

Playing Music using the PCM

- ✓ The separate music service app has been downloaded and/or you are registered with the music service.
 - ▷ Please observe the information from the provider of the music services.
- ✓ Porsche Connect App is connected to the PCM.

▶ **HOME** button ▶ **Apps**  ▶
Select desired music service.
– or –
SOURCE button ▶
Select desired music service.
– or –
Keep pressing **MEDIA** button until the desired music service is displayed.

Information

In the **MEDIA** menu under **MyMusic**, the user can play existing playlists and tracks stored offline, for example.

Porsche Stability Management (PSM)

PSM is an active control system for stabilising the vehicle in extreme driving situations. It is automatically enabled when the engine starts. PSM makes use of both the Automatic Brake Differential (ABD) and Anti-slip Regulation (ASR) systems, as well as the functions of the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) and engine drag torque control system (MSR).



WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle

Despite the advantages of PSM, it is still the driver's responsibility to adapt his or her driving style and manoeuvres in line with road and weather conditions, as well as the traffic situation.

The increased safety that is provided should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. The limits set by the physics of driving cannot be overcome, even with PSM.

PSM cannot reduce the risk of accidents due to an inappropriate speed.

The events below inform the driver of PSM control operations:

- PSM warning light on the instrument panel flashes.
- Hydraulic noises can be heard.
- The vehicle decelerates and steering-wheel forces are altered as PSM controls the brakes.
- Reduced engine power.
- The brake pedal pulsates and its position is changed during braking.

To achieve full vehicle deceleration, the foot pressure must be increased after the brake pedal starts to pulsate.

Automatic Brake Differential (ABD)

If one wheel of a driven axle starts to spin, it is braked so that the other wheel on the same axle can be driven.

Anti-slip Regulation (ASR)

The Anti-slip Regulation system prevents the wheels from spinning by adjusting the engine power, thereby ensuring good lane-holding ability and stable handling.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

In conditions of excessive slip, the engine drag torque control system prevents all driven wheels from locking up when the vehicle is overrunning. This is also the case for downshifts on a slippery road.

Steering torque pulse

The steering torque pulse provides the driver with steering assistance when braking on road surfaces with differing friction values.

Additional steering forces also assist the driver during countersteering.

Activating PSM Sport


✓ Vehicles with Sport Chrono package.
In PSM Sport operation, the system switches to a particular sporty mode.



WARNING

Limited PSM support

In PSM Sport mode, PSM support is limited in critical driving situations outside the ABS control range.

- ▶ PSM Sport should always be switched off during "normal" driving.
-
- ▶ Press the  button briefly.
The indicator light on the button and the PSM OFF warning light in the instrument panel come on.
A message stating that PSM Sport is activated appears on the multi-function display.

Switching off PSM





Fig. 170: PSM OFF button in the centre console

WARNING

No PSM assistance

When PSM is switched off, PSM support is no longer provided in critical driving situations outside the ABS control range.

- ▶ PSM should always be switched on during “normal” driving.
- ▶ Briefly press the  button (vehicles with Sport Chrono package: press button for at least 2 seconds).
PSM is switched off after a short delay.
The indicator light on the button and the PSM OFF warning light  in the instrument panel come on.
A warning stating that PSM is switched off appears on the multi-function display.

i Information

When you brake in the ABS control range, the vehicle is stabilised even when PSM is switched off. One-sided spinning of the wheels is prevented, even with PSM switched off.



However, it may be advantageous to switch off PSM temporarily in exceptional situations:

- On a loose surface and in deep snow.
- When “rocking the vehicle free”.

i Information

When PSM Sport mode is active, it is only possible to switch to PSM OFF mode if the PSM was activated beforehand.

Switching PSM back on

- ▶ Press the  button.
PSM is active immediately.
The indicator light on the button and the PSM OFF warning light  on the instrument panel go out.
A message stating that PSM is switched on appears on the multi-function display.

Responding to warning message

For information on the PSM warning light :

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

ABS brake system (Anti-lock Brake System)



WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle

Despite the advantages of ABS, it is still the driver's responsibility to adapt his or her driving style and manoeuvres in line with road and weather conditions, as well as the traffic situation. The increased safety that is provided should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. The limits set by the physics of driving cannot be overcome, even with ABS.

ABS cannot reduce the risk of accidents due to an inappropriate speed.

ABS ensures:

- Full steering control: The vehicle remains steerable.
- Good driving stability: No skidding due to locked wheels.
- Optimum braking distance: Shorter stopping distance in most cases.
- Prevention of wheel locking: No flat spots on the tyres.

Function

The decisive advantage of ABS lies in the driving stability and manoeuvrability of the vehicle in hazardous situations.

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during full braking, on almost all road surfaces, until just before the vehicle stops.

ABS begins to control the braking process as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock.

This controlled braking process is comparable with extremely rapid cadence braking.

A pulsating brake pedal and a “juddering noise” alert the driver to adapt his or her driving speed to the road conditions.

If full braking is necessary:

- ▶ Fully depress the brake pedal during the entire braking operation, even though the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce brake pressure.

Responding to warning message

For information on the ABS warning light :

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Multi-collision braking

In the event of an accident, multi-collision braking can help the driver to reduce the risk of skidding and the danger of further collisions during the accident by initiating braking automatically.

Preconditions

Multi-collision braking only works:

- in the event of front, side and rear-end collisions.
- if the airbag control unit detects a corresponding activation threshold during an accident.
- if an accident occurs when the vehicle is travelling at a speed of more than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph).

Information

PSM automatically brakes the vehicle, provided the hydraulic brake system, PSM and the electrical system are not damaged and are still working after the accident.

Exceptions

The following activities prevent automatic braking in the event of an accident:

- if the driver presses the accelerator noticeably.
- If the brake pressure produced when the driver presses the brake pedal is stronger than the brake pressure applied by the system.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Porsche Track Precision App

The Porsche Track Precision app can be used to connect to the vehicle via a wireless local network (WiFi). This enables driving data to be displayed, recorded and analysed directly on a smartphone. For information on establishing a WiFi connection in the PCM:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Activating the PCM WiFi hotspot (wireless Internet access)” on page 89.

Detailed information on installation and the functions of the Porsche Track Precision app is available directly in the app and at www.porsche.com or from your Porsche partner.

DANGER

Loss of control over the vehicle

Driving at excessive speeds and risky manoeuvres may lead to loss of control over the vehicle.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style and manoeuvres to your personal ability, the road and weather conditions, as well as the traffic situation.
- ▶ Only use the Porsche Track Precision app on closed circuits away from public roads.

DANGER

Setting and operating when driving

Changing app settings or using the app while driving can distract you from the traffic. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Carry out operating and setting procedures only while the vehicle is stationary.

Information

Since vehicle-specific data can be accessed using the Porsche Track Precision app, it is recommended to protect this data from unauthorised access by third parties.

Porsche Vehicle Tracking System Plus (PVTS Plus)

The PVTS Plus is a GSM/GPS-based tracking system that allows a control centre to locate the vehicle if it is stolen. It can then be found by the authorities.

As soon as PVTS Plus detects a theft alarm, the location of the vehicle in question is sent to the control centre.

There are three different types of PVTS Plus equipment:

- PVTS Plus with Driver Card:
- PVTS Plus with Remote Keypad:
- PVTS Plus without Driver Card/without Remote Keypad

The PVTS Plus vehicle equipment depends on the vehicle insurance and legal requirements in the individual countries. Your Porsche partner will be pleased to answer any questions you may have about which PVTS Plus variant was installed in your vehicle.

i Information

On vehicles with the smartphone app Porsche Car Connect, some PVTS Plus settings can be implemented directly using the app. Detailed information on installation, the functions and management of the contract is available at: www.porsche.com/connect.

Scope of delivery and initial activation

PVTS Plus is tested by your Porsche partner and activated with the assistance of the vehicle's owner.

Following activation, you will be given important details, such as the telephone number of your local control centre and of your service provider. Detailed information on activating the system is available at www.porsche.com/connect or from a Porsche partner.

Functions

The vehicle will only be located if it was stolen. For this purpose, a text message is sent to the specified mobile phone number. The location of the vehicle is not specified in the text message for safety reasons.

- ▶ Contact the control centre if your vehicle is stolen. The theft must also be reported to the relevant police authorities.

The following alarms can be set:

- **Unauthorised movement of the vehicle:** The vehicle is moved when the ignition is switched off. In vehicles with Driver Card/Remote Keypad: the vehicle is moved without the Driver Card/Remote Keypad.
- **Sabotage:** The PVTS Plus system was used without authorisation.
- **Break-in alarm:** The alarm system was triggered and is active for more than 15 seconds.

- **Ignition lock alarm** (for PVTS Plus with Remote Keypad): The code is not entered on the Remote Keypad within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition.
- **Code alarm** (for PVTS Plus with Remote Keypad): The wrong code was entered five times in succession on the Remote Keypad.

i Information

- There is no guarantee that the theft of a vehicle will always be detected.
- The PVTS Plus alarm can be triggered even if the vehicle battery is flat.

For information on the battery:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Battery” on page 59.

i Information

- If the vehicle was stolen, the control centre can prevent the engine from starting.
- In vehicles with the Porsche Car Connect smartphone app, the app's access to the vehicle is blocked if the vehicle is stolen.

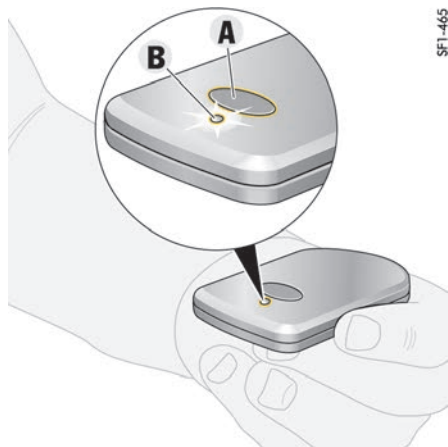
Operating PVTS Plus without Driver Card/without Remote Keypad

When PVTS Plus is operated normally, no intervention on your part is required.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Operating PVTS Plus with Driver Card

PVTS Plus can be deactivated automatically using an activated Driver Card.



SFI-465

Fig. 171: Button **A** and indicator light **B** on the Driver Card

Switching on Driver Card

- ▶ Press button **A** on the Driver Card. The indicator light **B** flashes quickly. After releasing button **A**, the indicator light flashes at intervals of approx. 3 seconds.

If the indicator light on an activated Driver Card stops flashing either at 3-second intervals or when you press button **A** on the Driver Card, the battery is flat and must be replaced.

For information on changing the battery:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Changing Driver Card/ Remote Keypad battery” on page 202.

Switching off Driver Card

- ▶ Press button **A** on the Driver Card and keep it pressed for approx. 8 seconds until the indicator light **B** goes out.
- ▶ Switch off the Driver Card if it is not used for a long time in order to extend the battery life.

i Information

During transportation by aircraft, the Driver Card must be switched off in accordance with the guidelines that apply to aircraft.

Activating PVTS Plus with Driver Card

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and take the Driver Card with you when you leave the vehicle. If the Driver Card is far enough away from the vehicle, PVTS Plus will be activated after approx. 70 seconds. Theft of the vehicle can be detected.

Deactivating PVTS Plus with Driver Card

- ▶ Store the Driver Card in the centre console of the vehicle or keep it on your person. PVTS Plus will be deactivated if the activated Driver Card is in the vehicle or in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle.

i Information

- Do not put the Driver Card in the luggage compartment or near metal, e.g. coins.
- Vehicles are very often stolen using stolen driver’s keys. Do not attach the Driver Card to the driver’s key.

i Information

PVTS Plus can detect up to 7 Driver Cards per vehicle. One active Driver Card must be present in the vehicle. If you want to add, delete or replace a Driver Card:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Driver Card malfunction

In exceptional cases (e.g. interference from radio waves), the Driver Card may not be detected. A warning message appears on the multi-function display.

- ▶ Press button **A** on the Driver Card to initiate driver detection.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Driver Card emergency deactivation

- ▶ If PVTS Plus cannot be deactivated using the Driver Card (e.g. if the Driver Card battery is flat or the Driver Card was lost), contact the control centre and get the control centre personnel to deactivate the system.

Operating PVTS Plus with Remote Keypad

A code must be entered using the numeric keys on the Remote Keypad in order to deactivate PVTS Plus. You will receive the code in a text message following activation of PVTS Plus.

SFI-463

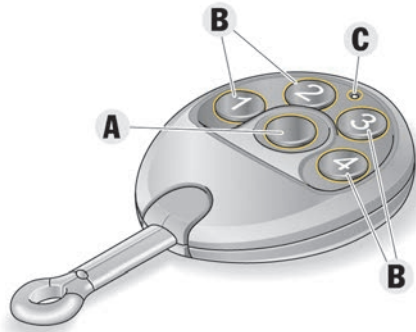


Fig. 172: PVTS Plus Remote Keypad

- A** Programming button
- B** Numeric keys for entering the code
- C** Indicator light

Activating PVTS Plus with Remote Keypad

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and take the Remote Keypad with you when you leave the vehicle. PVTS Plus is activated after approx. 3 minutes. Theft of the vehicle can be detected.

Deactivating PVTS Plus with Remote Keypad

1. Press button **A**.
The indicator light **C** on the Remote Keypad starts to flash.
2. Enter the code using the numeric keys **B** and press button **A** to confirm.
The indicator light goes out. PVTS Plus is deactivated.

If the system is not deactivated after you enter the code, repeat the process. An alarm is sent to the control centre after 5 incorrect attempts.

If PVTS Plus is not deactivated within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the alarm is sent to the control centre. The control centre will then try to contact you by phone.

If the correct code is not entered within approx. 1 minute of switching on the ignition, a warning message appears on the multi-function display. A warning message appears again after another minute if the correct code is not entered in the meantime.

For information on warning messages on the multi-function display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

i Information

- If the code has to be changed (e.g. you have forgotten the code or an unauthorised person has gained access to the code), please contact your service provider. The new code will be sent in a text message to the specified mobile phone number.
- PVTS Plus can detect up to 7 Remote Keypads per vehicle. If you want to add, delete or replace a remote control:
 - ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Remote Keypad emergency deactivation

- ▶ If PVTS Plus cannot be deactivated using the Remote Keypad (e.g. if the Remote Keypad battery is dead or if the Remote Keypad was lost), contact the control centre and get the control centre personnel to deactivate the system.

Transport

If the vehicle is transported with the ignition switched off (e.g. on a ferry), transport mode must be activated.

If the vehicle is not transported in transport mode, the system can trigger a false alarm, for which you will be billed (further information is available at www.porsche.com/connect).

Activating and deactivating transport mode

- ▶ Contact the control centre before transporting the vehicle and when you have finished transporting the vehicle.

Servicing

PVTS Plus must be set to vehicle servicing mode in the following situations:

- When customer service is required (e.g. for regular servicing).

- When the vehicle battery is disconnected.

If the vehicle is not serviced in vehicle servicing mode, the system can trigger a false alarm, for which you will be billed (further information is available at www.porsche.com/connect).

Activating and deactivating vehicle servicing mode

- ▶ Contact the control centre before having the vehicle serviced and after the vehicle has been serviced.
- ▶ When your vehicle is being serviced, please inform the relevant employee at the qualified specialist workshop or the Porsche partner that your vehicle is equipped with PVTS Plus.

In addition:

- ▶ PVTS Plus with Driver Card: Leave the Driver Card in the passenger compartment during servicing so that PVTS Plus is deactivated.
- ▶ PVTS Plus with Remote Keypad: Hand the Remote Keypad over to the qualified specialist workshop or the Porsche partner when your vehicle is being serviced. Do not give them the code.

i Information

Make sure that your Driver Card/Remote Keypad are handed back to you when your vehicle is returned to you following servicing.

Changing Driver Card/ Remote Keypad battery

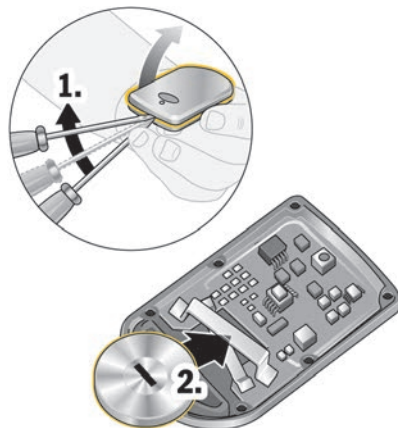


Fig. 173: Changing Driver Card battery

If the battery in the Driver Card/Remote Keypad is too weak, a text message will be sent automatically to the specified mobile phone number. A corresponding message will then appear on the multi-function display.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Changing Driver Card battery

1. Switch off the Driver Card and carefully open it using a suitable object (e.g. screwdriver).
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Switching off Driver Card” on page 200.
2. Change the battery (check polarity).
3. Assemble the Driver Card and press it together firmly.

Changing Remote Keypad battery

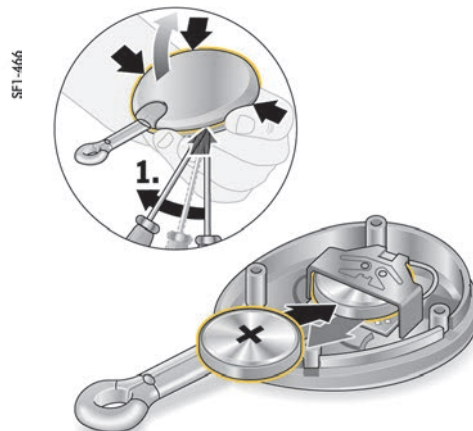


Fig. 174: Changing Remote Keypad battery

1. Carefully open the Remote Keypad using a suitable object (e.g. screwdriver).
2. Change the battery (check polarity).
3. Assemble the Remote Keypad and press it together firmly.

Declaration of Conformity

Porsche Vehicle Tracking System Plus (PVTS Plus) complies with currently applicable European and harmonised national standards and may be operated by anyone in accordance with the applicable EU directive. The equipment is fully compliant with the electromagnetic compatibility specifications that currently apply. Interference to your equipment from other electrical/electronic devices or equipment as well as faults on other electrical/electronic devices or equipment caused by your equipment are therefore largely avoided.

Driver Card/Remote Keypad

Vodafone Automotive SpA hereby declares that devices 2781 and 8015 conform to the fundamental requirements of mandatory EC directives on usage and in particular conform to the fundamental requirements and the other relevant regulations stipulated in "R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC". The devices are marked CE 0678.

Telematics unit

Vodafone Automotive SpA hereby declares that the device ICD45 (2145) is fully compliant with the basic requirements of applicable EC directives and in particular with the basic requirements and the other relevant regulations stipulated in the "R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC and ECE R10". The device has the E24 10R-04 1146 CE 0678 marking in accordance with the applicable regulations.

GSM approval – country overview (excerpt)

Albania, Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Canada, China, Croatia, Czech Republic, Cyprus, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Georgia, Germany, Great Britain, Greece, Guernsey, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Isle of Man, Italy, Jersey, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Macedonia, Malta, Moldova, Monaco, Montenegro, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Réunion, Romania, Russia, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Sweden, Switzerland, Spain, Turkey, USA.

Further information on the availability of the PVTs can be found at www.porsche.com/connect.

CE 0678

Crash notification (emergency call)

- ✓ The Safety Services service is registered (www.porsche.com/connect).

Under certain circumstances, data is sent to the Porsche emergency call centre immediately after an accident and is used to determine the required rescue measures (current position of the vehicle, chassis number, etc.).

If necessary, the contact person at the Porsche emergency call centre will forward data to a public emergency call centre. Depending on the country, the contact person at the Porsche emergency call centre can call the mobile phone number stored in the customer portal.

Messages appear in the instrument cluster for the various actions and if an emergency call **cannot** be activated.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 278.

Radio

Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided under “Radio”. Safety instructions and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.

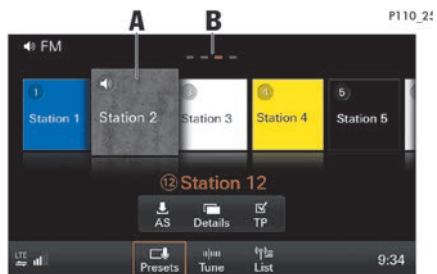


Fig. 175: FM frequency range

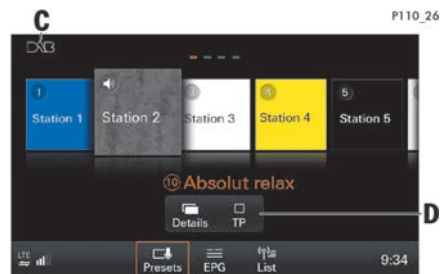


Fig. 176: DAB frequency range

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
Set the frequency range	▶ Press the TUNER button until the required frequency range (AM , FM or DAB) is displayed in the headline (see C).	205
Tune to stations from the station list	▶ TUNER button ▶ List ▶ Select station.	205
Tune to stations using skip buttons	▶ Repeatedly press button or button until the desired station is played.	
Store stations from the station list	▶ TUNER button ▶ List ▶ Select station ▶ Store ▶ Select station button.	206
Tune to stored station	▶ TUNER button ▶ Presets ▶ Select desired station button (see A).	205
Display station details	▶ TUNER button ▶ Presets ▶ Select Details .	206
Retrieve programme guide (EPG)	▶ TUNER button ▶ select DAB frequency range ▶ EPG ▶ Details ▶ Select radio station.	207
Switch on/off traffic announcements	▶ TUNER button ▶ Presets ▶ TP (on/off) (see D).	206

Set the frequency range

1. Press button **SOURCE**.

2. Select **AM**, **FM** or **DAB**.

– or –

▶ Press the **TUNER** button repeatedly until the required frequency range (**AM**, **FM** or **DAB**) is displayed in the headline.

– or –

1. Press the **TUNER** button.

2. Select the frequency range in the headline.

3. In the **SOURCE** menu, select the desired frequency band **AM**, **FM** or **DAB**.

The radio supports the FM, AM and DAB (digital radio) frequency ranges.

The PCM receives programmes that are transmitted over the DAB-, DAB+ and DMB transmission standard.

Tuning to stations

Displaying and selecting stored stations (presets)



Fig. 177: Station buttons (presets)

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **Presets**

2. Select station.

The selected station button (e.g. **A**) is highlighted.

A total of 20 station buttons (presets) are available and stations can be assigned to all of these.

Station buttons on the first three pages (to display the currently selected page see **B**) can be freely assigned. The 5 radio stations with the strongest signals are automatically assigned to the station buttons on the fourth page ("Best FM level").

Tuning in stations using skip buttons

▶ Regardless of the selected main menu, you can tune in a station using the and skip buttons. The next/previous station from the station list, the available frequency or the ensembles are set.

Tuning to stations manually

✓ The FM or AM frequency range is set.

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **Tune**
2. Select the frequency using the frequency bar.

Selecting stations from the station list

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **List**
2. Select station.
All stations that can currently be received are displayed in the station list (a maximum of 100 entries).

A special feature of the DAB radio frequency range is its "ensembles". An ensemble can include both individual stations and groups of stations (services).

All available stations and groups of stations with the associated ensemble are displayed in the DAB station list on the first page.

All available ensembles are displayed on the second page. All available stations and groups of stations in the selected ensemble are displayed by selecting an ensemble.

Scanning and selecting stations

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **OPT** button
2. Select **Start scan**.
Each station that is found in the frequency range is scanned for approx. 5 seconds.
3. Select **Stop** in the controller to stop at the scanned station.
– or –
OPT button ▶ Select **Cancel scan**.

Selecting stations using the multi-function display


For information on using the multi-function display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display without multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display with multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.

1. Select the **Audio** menu.
2. Select stations from the station list.

Storing stations




Storing tuned stations

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **Presets** 
2. Press the desired station button for 3 seconds.


– or –

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **OPT** button
2. **Store station** ▶ Select station button.

– or –

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **Tune**  / **List** 
2. Select station and then select .
3. Select the desired station button.

Storing station automatically


1. **TUNER** button ▶ **Presets** 
2. Press **AS** and keep it pressed for longer than 1 second.
The search starts. The 5 radio stations with the strongest signals are stored on the currently selected page and the station with the strongest signal is set.

Tuning to traffic announcements

Activating/deactivating traffic announcements



1. Press the **TUNER** button.
2. Select **TP**.
 Traffic announcements are switched on.
 Traffic announcements are switched off.

Setting the traffic announcement volume

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET SOUND**
2. **Volume**  ▶
Select **Traffic announcements**.
3. Set the desired volume using touchscreen or the rotary push button.


Displaying station information

Displaying station details

1. Press the **TUNER** button.
2. **Presets**  ▶ Select **Details**.
– or –
List  ▶ **OPT** ▶ Select **Station details**.
Programme-related information is displayed.

Retrieving programme guide (EPG – Electronic Programme Guide)

✓ The DAB frequency range is set.

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **EPG** 

2. Select station.

Detailed programme information on the selected radio station and on the current and following stations is displayed.

Changing settings

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET AM/SET FM/DAB**

2. Select the desired option:

- **Radio text** (FM, DAB): Switch radio text on/off.
- **Station tracking** (FM, DAB): If the function is activated and the reception quality is poor in the FM frequency range, the tuner tries to switch to an alternative frequency for the station that is tuned in. During a loss of reception in the DAB frequency band, the radio switches automatically to the station alternative on the FM frequency band if this is available.
- **Regional adaptation** (FM): Some programmes in the FM frequency range are regionally divided and provide various regions with regional programmes featuring different content. When the function is switched on, you cannot switch to alternative frequencies in the regional area.

- **Sort criteria**
 - **Station name** (FM, DAB): The station list is sorted in alphabetical order.
 - **Frequency** (FM, AM): The station list is sorted in order of the stations in the frequency band.
 - **Genre** (FM, DAB): The station list is sorted according to programme type or genre (e.g.: pop, rock).
 - **Reception quality** (FM, AM): The station list is sorted according to the strength of the station's signal. Stations with good reception are specified at the top of the list.
- **Station display** (FM)
 - **Station name**: Station name is displayed.
 - **Frequency**: Station frequencies are displayed.
- **Traffic announcements** (AM, FM, DAB)
 - **Activate traffic announcements**.
 - **Deactivate popup**: No popup for new traffic notice.
- **Station image database** (FM):
 - **Regions for station images**: Adaptation of regions for which station images should be selected.
 - **Image database**: Activate or hide station images.
- **Extend frequency band** (DAB): The frequency range can be extended (L band). As a result, any additional stations can be received.

Fixing station name

1. **TUNER** button ▶ **OPT** button

2. Select **Fix name**.

The name of the station currently displayed can be fixed. Texts sent by the radio station are therefore no longer displayed.

- ▶ To scroll through the texts again, select **Release name**.

Rear wing

The rear wing improves driving stability at high speeds.

Automatic mode

The rear wing extends automatically at speeds above approx. 125 km/h (77 mph) and retracts again below approx. 80 km/h (50 mph).

If the automatic control system fails, a warning message appears on the multi-function display.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 278.

WARNING

Failure of the retractable rear wing

The warning message appearing in the multi-function display indicates failure of the retractable rear wing. Driving stability will be adversely affected by increased rear axle lift at higher speeds.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style and speed to the changed driving behaviour.
- ▶ Have the fault corrected at a specialist workshop.

Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Manual mode




Fig. 178: Button for rear wing in the centre console

When the ignition is on, the rear wing can be extended and retracted manually using the button in the centre console.


When the rear wing is in manual mode, the indicator light on the button lights up.

Extending the rear wing manually


- ▶ Press the  button briefly.
The rear wing extends.
The indicator light on the button lights up
The rear wing is in manual mode.

Manual retraction

0 – 15 km/h (0 – 9 mph):

- ▶ Press and hold button  until the indicator light on the button goes out.

Above 15 km/h (9 mph):

- ▶ Press the  button briefly.
The indicator light goes out as soon as the button is pressed.
The rear wing is in automatic mode.

CAUTION

Extending and retracting the rear wing

When extending or retracting the rear wing manually when the vehicle is stationary, parts of the body can get trapped between the moving rear wing and fixed vehicle parts.

- ▶ Make sure that no persons or objects are within the range of movement of the rear wing.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to rear wing.

- ▶ Do not pull or push the vehicle by the rear wing.

Refuelling

WARNING

Risk of fire when refuelling

Fuel is highly flammable, and can deflagrate or explode.

- ▶ Fire, naked flame and smoking are prohibited when handling fuel.

WARNING

Fuel vapours and skin contact with fuel

Fuel and fuel vapours are harmful to health.


- ▶ Do not inhale fuel vapours.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin or clothing.

Information

In some cases, fuels contain a high sulphur content. Combustion in the engine can therefore cause unpleasant odours under certain driving conditions (so-called "rotten egg smell"). Porsche is not responsible for this and it does not indicate a defect in the vehicle.

When the ignition is on, the fuel level is displayed on the instrument panel.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "J – Fuel gauge" on page 126.

If there is less than a certain amount (which varies depending on the model) remaining in the tank, the warning light  on the multi-function display in the instrument panel lights up when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

- ▶ Refuel at the next opportunity.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Filling capacities" on page 307.

Selecting suitable petrol

NOTICE

Unsuitable fuels can damage the engine as well as the fuel and exhaust system.

- ▶ Only use fuel according to the specification below.
- ▶ **No** methanol-containing fuels.

Information

Information on the fuel octane rating can normally be found on the pump. Petrol station attendants can also provide information.

The engine is optimally designed for **unleaded fuels without metallic additives**.

Model	Recommended fuel	Alternative fuel
	Octane rating of at least:	
All:	98 RON/88 MON	95 RON/85 MON

The engine is suitable for operation with fuel with an ethanol content of up to 10 %. Use of fuels containing ethanol can lead to increased fuel consumption.

Information

If the recommended fuel is not available, **unleaded fuels without metallic additives with octane numbers of 91 RON/82.5 MON** can be used in an emergency. However, this could reduce performance and increase fuel consumption.

- ▶ **Use unleaded fuels without metallic additives with octane numbers of at least 91 RON/82.5 MON.**
- ▶ Do **not** drive at full throttle with an unleaded fuel with octane numbers of 91 RON/82.5 MON.

Using additives with inferior petrol octane ratings

NOTICE

Non-approved additives can damage the engine, fuel system and exhaust system.

- ▶ Use only additives approved by Porsche.

In some countries, the fuel's deposition behaviour may not meet requirements. In this case, the fuel may be mixed with the additive sold and recommended by Porsche after consulting a Porsche partner:

Porsche part number 000 043 206 89.

- ▶ Observe the instructions and mixture ratios given on the container.
- ▶ Observe service intervals and particularly oil-change intervals.

Filling with fuel

NOTICE

Decorative films may fade if they come into contact with fuels.

- ▶ Wipe fuel off films immediately.

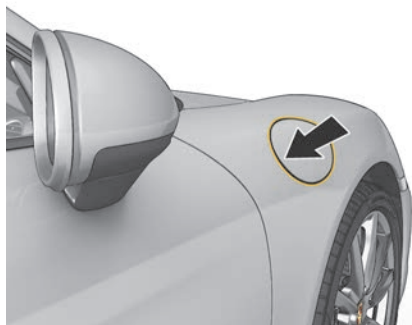


Fig. 179: Opening the filler flap

8000_23

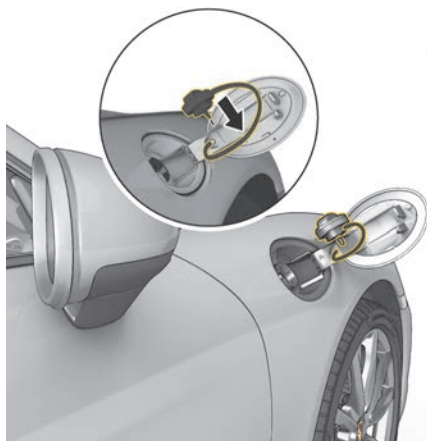


Fig. 180: Opening the fuel cap

- ✓ Engine switched off.
 - ✓ The ignition is switched off.
 - ✓ Vehicle unlocked.
1. Open the filler flap by pressing on the rear part of the filler flap (Fig. 179).
The fuel type to be used for the vehicle is printed on a sticker on the inside of the filler flap.
 2. Slowly unscrew and remove the fuel cap.
 3. Put the fuel cap into the holder (Fig. 180).
 4. Insert the pump nozzle fully into the filler neck with the handle pointing downwards.
 5. Operate the pump nozzle and refuel the vehicle. Do not add more fuel after the automatic pump nozzle has switched off. Fuel could spray back or could flow over when heated.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter "Filling capacities" on page 307.

8000_24

6. Replace the fuel cap immediately after refuelling and screw it in until you hear and feel it locking.
7. Close the filler flap and press on the rear of the filler flap until it engages securely.

i Information

If you lose the fuel cap, it must be replaced with an original part only.

Filler flap emergency release

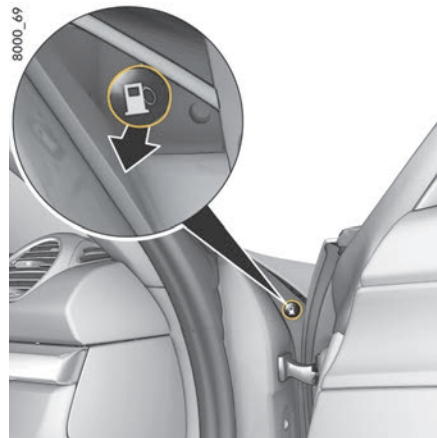


Fig. 181: Emergency operation of the filler flap

If the electrical release mechanism is faulty, the filler flap can be opened manually:

1. Open the passenger's door.
2. Pull the button in the right-hand door aperture (Fig. 181).
The filler flap releases.

Seat Belts

Using seat belts correctly



Unfastened or incorrectly used seat belts

Seat belts offer no protection in an accident if they are not worn. Incorrectly worn seat belts increase the risk of injury in an accident.

- ▶ All occupants of the vehicle must wear a seat belt for their own safety.
- ▶ Also give your passengers all the information in this section.
- ▶ Never use **one** seat belt for two persons at the same time.
- ▶ Remove any loose or bulky items of clothing that prevent the seat belt from fitting correctly and restrict your freedom of movement.
- ▶ Do not lay the seat belt across hard or breakable objects (glasses, ball-point pens, pipes, etc.). These objects may present an additional risk of injury.
- ▶ Belt straps must not be twisted or loose.



DANGER

Using damaged seat belts

Damaged, heavily stressed or worn seat belts do not offer adequate protection in the event of an accident.

The seat belt pretensioner system can only be triggered once; the system must then be replaced.

- ▶ Check all seat belts regularly for signs of damage to the fabric, and check that the buckle and attachment points function correctly.
- ▶ Protect seat-belt buckle from soiling and keep it clean.
- ▶ Have seat belts that are damaged or have been heavily stressed in an accident replaced immediately. The same applies to seat-belt pretensioner systems and force limiters installed on the seats which have been triggered. In addition, have the anchor points of the seat belts checked. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Make sure the belts are fully retracted when not in use to protect them from dirt and damage.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Cleaning the seat belts" on page 69.

Seat-belt pretensioners

Triggering of the seat-belt pretensioners depends on the severity of the accident.

The seat-belt pretensioners are triggered:


- In the event of front and rear impact
- In the event of side impact
- If the vehicle turns over




Information


Smoke is released when the seat-belt pretensioners are triggered. This does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Observe the seat belt warning light and warning symbol

When the ignition is switched on, the red warning light  appears in the instrument panel for several seconds as a function check.

The red warning light  in the instrument panel stays on until the seat belt on the driver's side is fastened.

In addition, a warning appears on the multi-function display.

A warning signal sounds and the red warning light  in the instrument panel flashes when the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 24 km/h (15 mph).

Fastening the seat belt



Fig. 182: Fastening the seat belt

1. Assume a comfortable sitting position.
2. Adjust the backrest so that the seat belt always rests on your upper body and runs across the middle of your shoulder.
3. Grasp the seat belt latch and pull the belt in a slow, continuous motion across your chest and lap.

i Information

The seat belt may be blocked if the vehicle is standing at an angle or the seat belt is pulled out using a jerking movement.

The seat belt can also jam when accelerating or decelerating, when negotiating bends or on inclines.

4. Insert the belt latch into the appropriate seat-belt buckle on the inboard side of the seat until it locks securely with an audible click (Fig. 182).
5. Make sure that seat belt is not trapped or twisted and that it does not rub on any sharp edges.
6. Make sure that the horizontal section of the belt always fits tight across the pelvis. Therefore, after fastening the seat belt, always pull the diagonal part of the belt upwards. Pregnant women: position the lap belt as low as possible across the pelvis, and ensure that it is not pressing against the abdomen.
7. Also pull on the diagonal section of the belt now and again during the journey to ensure that the horizontal section remains tight.

Opening the seat-belt buckle and removing the seat belt

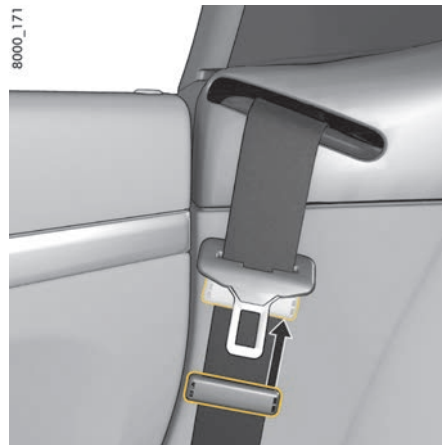


Fig. 183: Removing the seat belt

1. Hold the belt latch.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt latch to approx. 7 cm below the deflection bracket of the retractor roller and lock it using the plastic slide (Fig. 183). The plastic slide serves to hold the belt latch in an easily accessible position.

Seats

Choosing the right seat position

A correct sitting position is important for safe and fatigue-free driving. To adjust the position of the driver's seat, proceed as follows:

1. Adjust the seat height (not bucket seats) to ensure you have enough headroom and a good overview of the vehicle.
2. Adjust the seat's fore-and-aft position so that your legs are not fully straight and your foot is touching the entire pedal surface when pressing the pedals fully.
3. Grip the top half of the steering wheel. Set the backrest angle (not bucket seat) and the steering wheel position so that your arms are almost outstretched. However, your shoulders must still rest on the backrest.
4. Adjust the seat's fore-and-aft setting if necessary.

Adjusting the seat

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the seat when driving

The seat may move further than desired if you attempt to adjust it whilst driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Do not adjust the seat while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Seat adjustment

If persons or animals are within the range of movement of the seat, there is a risk of parts of the body being squeezed or crushed when you adjust the seat.

- ▶ Adjust the seat so that no-one is put at risk.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headrests, roof and sun visor.

- ▶ Set the seat position to ensure sufficient clearance between the headrest, roof and sun visor.

i Information

The adjustment range of the passenger seat backrest is restricted in vehicles with ISOFIX anchorage systems for child restraint systems on the passenger seat.

Adjusting sports seat/sports seat plus

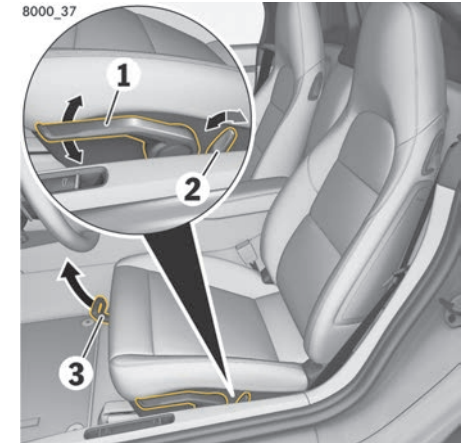


Fig. 184: Adjusting sports seat/sports seat plus

- 1 Seat height adjustment
- 2 Backrest angle adjustment
- 3 Fore-and-aft position adjustment

- ▶ Operate lever **1** until the desired seat height is reached:
Upwards = seat moves upwards
Downwards = seat moves downwards
- ▶ Operate switch **2** until the desired backrest angle is reached.
- ▶ Pull up locking lever **3**, move seat to the desired fore-and-aft position and release the lever.
Check that the seat engages correctly.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Fully electrical sports seat adjustment

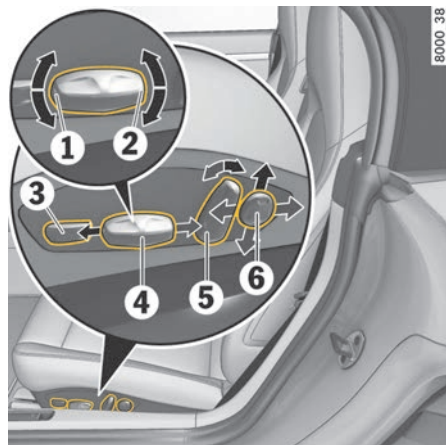


Fig. 185: Fully electrical sports seat adjustment

- 1 Seat angle adjustment
- 2 Seat height adjustment
- 3 Thigh support adjustment
- 4 Fore-and-aft position adjustment
- 5 Backrest angle adjustment
- 6 Lumbar support adjustment

▶ Press each control in the direction indicated by the arrows until the desired setting or the end position is reached.

Adaptive sports seat plus adjustment

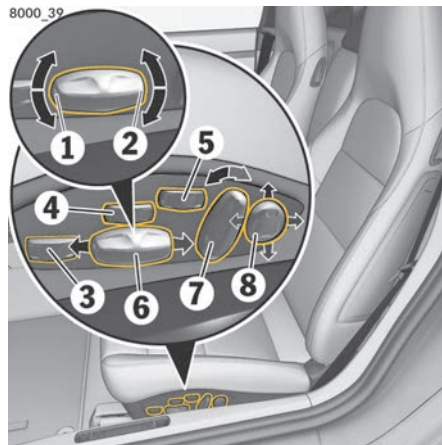


Fig. 186: Adaptive sports seat plus adjustment

- 1 Seat angle adjustment
- 2 Seat height adjustment
- 3 Thigh support adjustment
- 4 Seat cushion side bolster adjustment
- 5 Seat backrest side bolster adjustment
- 6 Fore-and-aft position adjustment
- 7 Backrest angle adjustment
- 8 Lumbar support adjustment

▶ Press each control in the direction indicated by the arrows until the desired setting or the end position is reached.

Adjusting bucket seat

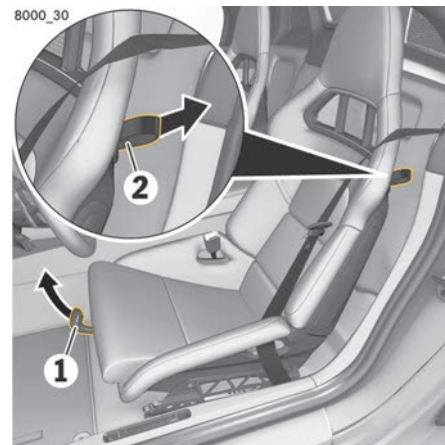


Fig. 187: Adjusting bucket seat

⚠ DANGER Use of child restraint systems

Risk of serious or fatal injury resulting from the use of child restraint systems on bucket seats.

Child restraint systems in the bucket seat do not provide any protection in the event of an accident.

- ▶ Do not use child restraint systems on bucket seats.
- ▶ Pull up locking lever **1**, move seat to the desired fore-and-aft position and release the lever.
Check that the seat engages correctly.

Storing seat settings

For information on storing and retrieving the seat settings:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Personal Settings” on page 188.

Folding down backrest

8000_40

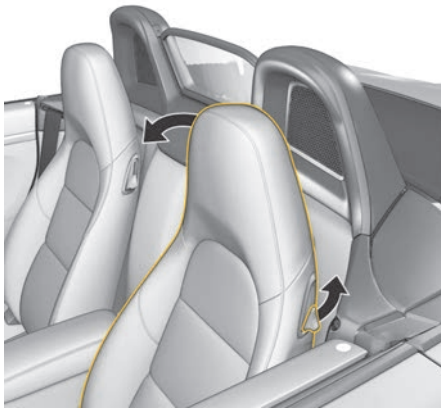


Fig. 188: Folding down backrest

Folding down backrest

- ▶ Pull up lever in the side part of the backrest (Fig. 188) and fold the backrest forward.

Adjusting backrest to vertical position



WARNING

Backrest not engaged

Risk of injury if seat backrests are not engaged.

- ▶ Check that the seat backrest engages when folding it back.
- ▶ Tilt the backrest back and let it click into place.

Folding the bucket seat forward

8000_30

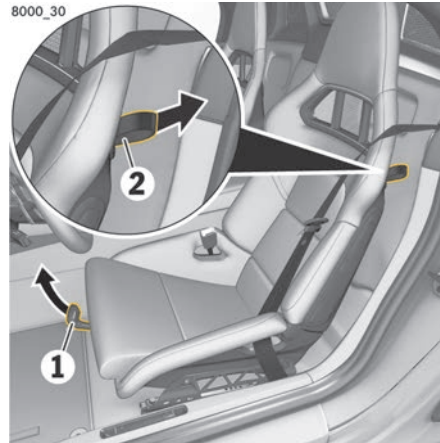


Fig. 189: Folding the bucket seat forward

Folding the bucket seat backrest forward

- ▶ Pull the loop **2** at the side of the backrest and fold the backrest forward.

Adjusting the bucket seat backrest to vertical position



WARNING

Backrest not engaged

Risk of injury if seat backrests are not engaged.

- ▶ Check that the seat backrest engages when folding it back.
- ▶ Tilt the backrest back and let it click into place.

Using the Easy Entry function

The Easy Entry function makes it easier to get in and out of the vehicle.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Switching Easy Entry off and on” on page 269.



CAUTION

Automatic adjustment of driver's seat

Persons behind the driver's seat may be trapped by the seat as a result of automatic adjustment of the driver's seat towards the rear.

- ▶ Switch off the Easy Entry function if there is a person behind the driver's seat.

Leaving the vehicle

- ✓ Function activated.

Vehicles without Porsche Entry & Drive:

1. Remove the driver's key.
The steering wheel moves upwards.
2. Open the driver's door.
The driver's seat moves to the rear.

Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive:

- ▶ Switch off the ignition **and** open the driver's door.
The steering wheel moves upwards.
The driver's seat moves to the rear.

Entering the vehicle

- ✓ Function activated.
- ✓ Driver's seat and steering wheel are at their Easy Entry positions.
- ▶ Close the driver's door and insert the driver's key **or** switch on the ignition in vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.
Bring the driver's seat and steering wheel to their stored position.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

i Information

When the key is changed, the seat and steering wheel move to the entry position stored on the key.

i Information

Manual intervention in the seat setting interrupts the Easy Entry function.

- ▶ Adjust driving position manually.

**Switching off seat heating/
seat ventilation**



Fig. 190: **Seat heating** button



Fig. 191: **Seat ventilation** button

**Switching on seat heating/
seat ventilation**

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press the corresponding button (repeatedly).
The number of illuminated lights indicates the selected heating or ventilation setting.

**Switching off seat heating/
seat ventilation**

- ▶ Press the corresponding button (repeatedly) until all the indicator lights go out.

i Information

Seat heating is not available when the interior temperature is high.

Seat ventilation is not available at interior temperatures below 15 °C.

If the battery voltage is too low, seat heating/seat ventilation is restricted initially and then switched off.

Selector Lever Emergency Release

NOTICE

In the case of emergency release of the selector lever, the vehicle is not secured against rolling away, endangering people or causing material damage.

- ▶ Activate the electric parking brake and secure the vehicle against rolling away (e.g. using a wedge).
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Electric parking brake” on page 63.

In the event of an electronics failure, emergency release of the selector lever must be performed in order to move the selector-lever to the **N** position on vehicles with PDK.

Selector lever emergency release

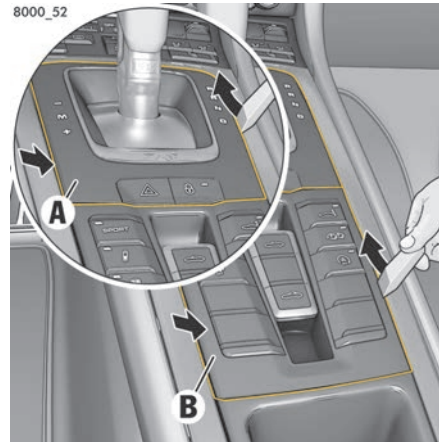


Fig. 192: Removing the selector lever gate and switch module

1. Remove the plastic wedge from the tool kit.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit” on page 140.
2. Carefully lever out the rear part of the selector lever gate **A** on both sides (arrows) using the plastic wedge.
3. Carefully lever out the front part of the switch panel **B** on both sides (arrow) using the plastic wedge.
4. Remove the switch module **B** and place to one side. The cable of the switch module must not be under tension.

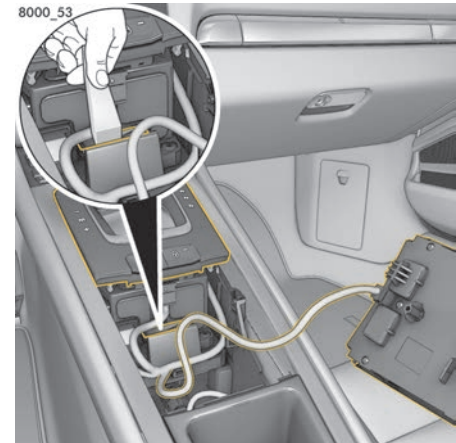


Fig. 193: Releasing selector lever lock

5. Push the selector lever lock downwards and hold, then move the selector lever into the **N** position.

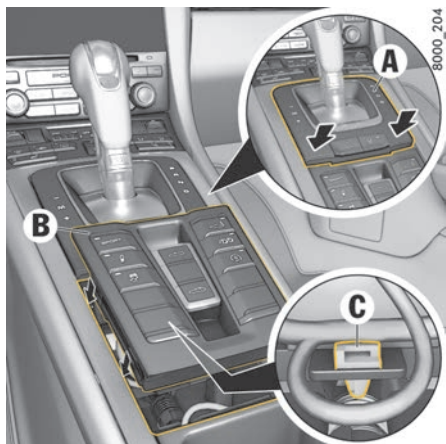


Fig. 194: Installing the switch module and selector lever gate

Installing the switch module and selector lever gate

1. Make sure that the cable clip **C** engages correctly in the selector support. Then engage the switch module **B** into the front guides, fully insert the module and press downwards until it engages securely.
2. Press down the selector lever gate **A** until it engages securely.

Smoker's Package

Using the ashtray

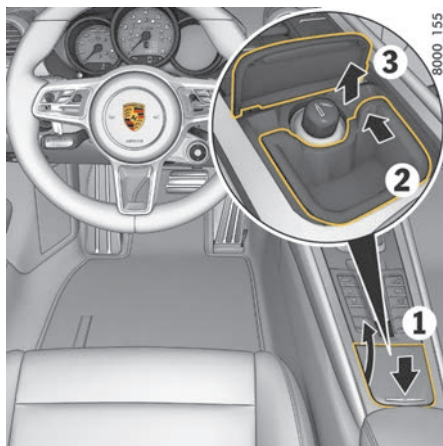


Fig. 195: Opening and emptying the ashtray



WARNING

Danger of fire due to ashtray

Waste paper in the ashtray can catch fire.

- ▶ Never use the ashtray to dispose of waste paper.

Opening the ashtray

1. Press briefly on the ashtray lid (Fig. 195, 1). The lid opens automatically.

Emptying the ashtray

2. To unlock, press ashtray insert forward at the top right until you feel it disengage (Fig. 195, 2 and 3).
3. Pull the ashtray insert up to remove it.
4. After emptying the ashtray insert, replace it and push it down until you feel it engage.

Using the cigarette lighter

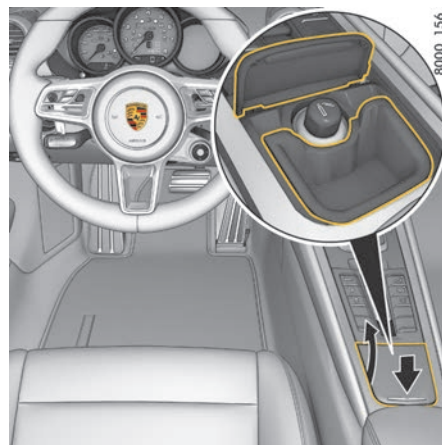


Fig. 196: Using the cigarette lighter



WARNING

Hot cigarette lighter

The tip of the cigarette lighter becomes very hot when it is used.

- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.
- ▶ Never touch the heating element or the sides of the cigarette lighter.
- ▶ Only hold the hot cigarette lighter by the actuating button.

1. Press briefly on the ashtray lid (Fig. 196, **arrow**).
2. Press the actuating button into the receptacle. When the element is red hot, the cigarette lighter will jump back to its initial position.
3. Remove the cigarette lighter.

For information on using charging adapters in the cigarette lighters:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Connecting the charging adapter" on page 106.



DANGER

Danger of fire due to the disposal of burning cigars or cigarettes

Cigarettes or cigars can be blown into the air inlets by the air flow and cause a fire in the engine compartment.

- ▶ Do not throw burning cigarettes or cigars out of the vehicle.

SPORT Mode

The selectable chassis settings mean that the vehicle can offer various modes for a sportier overall setup.

SPORT mode adjusts the control systems more in the direction of greater emotionality and performance during everyday driving.

- The electronic engine management system initiates more responsive control of the power unit. The engine dynamics are more direct.
- Vehicles with PDK: A sporty gear-changing map is enabled and the gear shifting times are shorter.
- Auto Start Stop function is deactivated automatically.
- The optional sports exhaust system is activated automatically.

For information on vehicle setup in **SPORT and SPORT PLUS mode** on vehicles with a Sport Chrono package:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Overview of vehicle setup in the selected drive mode” on page 224.

Switching SPORT mode on and off

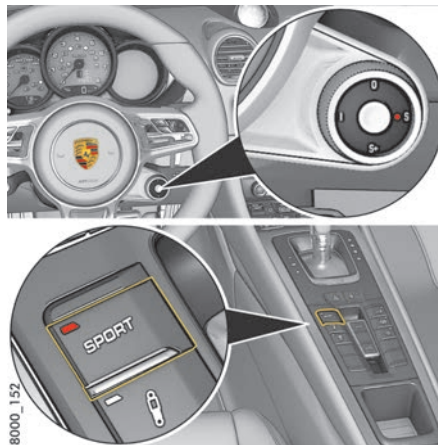


Fig. 197: Switching SPORT mode on and off

- ▶ Press the **SPORT** button or turn the mode switch on the steering wheel to **S** (depending on equipment).
When SPORT mode is switched on, the indicator light on the button/switch lights up. The word **SPORT** appears on the digital speedometer.

i Information

After the ignition is switched off, SPORT mode is automatically reset to Normal mode.

Speed Limit Display

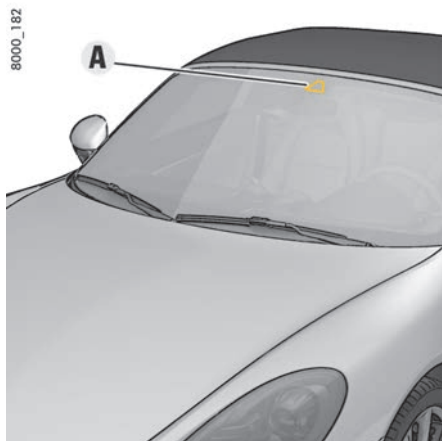


Fig. 198: Camera position

Speed Limit Display uses the camera **A** to detect speed limits as well as the start and end points of no-overtaking zones.

Traffic signs are evaluated in combination with the navigation system's map data and shown in the multi-function display.

If a speed limit is restricted to wet conditions, a turn-off lane or a particular time, the additional sign recognised will be compared with the information provided by the vehicle (e.g. rain sensor, navigation data and time).

Speed Limit Display is country-dependent and is not available for all countries. For information on Speed Limit Display in Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Changing map settings" on page 175.

⚠ WARNING

Lack of attention

The driver remains responsible when driving, e.g. driving at an appropriate speed, regardless of Speed Limit Display. The system is no substitute for careful attention on the part of the driver.

Speed Limit Display provides no warning when speeds are exceeded, nor does it adjust the vehicle speed to preset speed limits.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.
- ▶ Adapt your speed to traffic conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Failure of camera to detect traffic signs

Camera vision can be impaired by various factors (e.g. rain, snow, ice, heavy spray and oncoming headlights). Sometimes the camera cannot detect traffic signs or cannot detect them correctly. When this happens, no speed limit or an incorrect speed limit is displayed. Mounted traffic signs always take priority over the speed limit displayed on the multi-function display.

- ▶ Always pay attention to mounted traffic signs when driving on public roads.
- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always keep the direction of travel in your field of view.

i Information

Speed Limit Display is available in limited form in the following situations for example:

- If the camera is very dirty, iced over or covered (e.g. with stickers)
- In unfavourable weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain).
- Excessive driving speed
- If traffic signs are covered or damaged

i Information

To ensure that there is no interference with camera operation:

- ▶ Do not cover the camera area on the interior mirror (Fig. 198) with objects (e.g. stickers).
 - ▶ The camera must always be kept free of dirt, ice and snow.
- For car care instructions:
- ▷ Refer to chapter "Care" on page 65.

i Information

Should a traffic sign not be detected by the camera, the speed limits stored in the navigation system are automatically displayed.

Displaying speed limits



Fig. 199: Speed limit on multi-function display

A Main traffic signs

B Additional signs

Up to three main traffic signs **A** including additional signs **B** can be displayed in the “**Speed limit**” main menu on the multi-function display. The highest priority traffic sign is displayed on the left.

After the ignition is switched on, the most recent speed limit in force appears on the multi-function display.

If no speed limit is detected (e.g. on a motorway that has no speed limit) or if the speed limit display is not available in the current area, a message appears on the multi-function display.

▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

i Information

- Speed Limit Display can be shown as a main menu or in the upper status area on the multi-function display.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Adapting upper status area” on page 263.
- In zones with traffic calming or home zones, the display reads “5 km/h” (“3 mph”).
- At unsigned motorway and dual carriageway entry and exit points, the relevant speed limit for country roads is displayed.

Sport Chrono Mode Switch

Selecting the mode on the mode switch

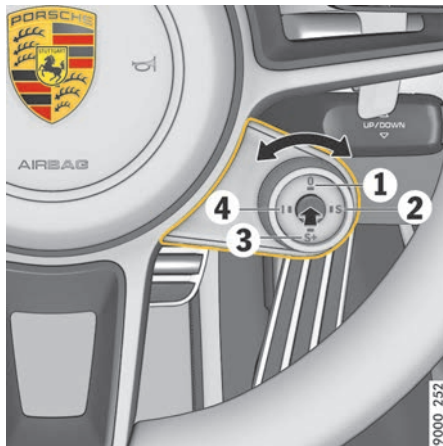


Fig. 200: Mode switch on the steering wheel

- 1 Normal mode
- 2 SPORT mode
- 3 SPORT PLUS mode
- 4 Individual mode

Switch centre SPORT Response button

- ▶ Turn the mode switch to the left or to the right to the desired drive mode.
The indicator light on the selected mode lights up and a message appears on the multi-function display.

For information on vehicle setup in the respective mode:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Overview of vehicle setup in the selected drive mode” on page 224.

Configuring the individual mode

In individual mode, the settings for the PASM, sports exhaust system, Auto Start Stop function and rear wing can be combined individually based on the Normal, SPORT or SPORT PLUS modes. The saved combination can be retrieved again at the next vehicle start by turning the mode switch. For information on the configuration of the individual mode on the multi-function display:

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Adjusting individual mode” on page 267.

Using the SPORT Response mode

- ✓ Vehicles with PDK.



Fig. 201: SPORT Response display

Engine and transmission are time-controlled and are set to maximum response in SPORT Response mode:

- Faster boost pressure build-up
- PDK switches to a special gear-changing map

Activating SPORT Response mode

- ▶ Press the **SPORT Response** button.
The decreasing circle in the multi-function display indicates how long the function is still available. The vehicle then goes back to the previously selected mode after approx. 20 seconds.

Deactivating SPORT Response mode

- ✓ SPORT Response mode active
- ▶ Press the **SPORT Response** button again.
Vehicle goes back to the previously selected mode.

Overview of vehicle setup in the selected drive mode

Driving mode	Normal	SPORT	SPORT PLUS	Individual	SPORT Response button
Drive					
Response	Normal	Sport	Performance	Pre-selection: Normal, SPORT or SPORT PLUS	Performance
Rev-limiter	Normal	Sport	Sport		Sport
Increasing idle speed	—	Active	Active		Active
Throttle blip during downshifting					
Optimised engine sound in the passenger compartment					
Backfire	—	Active	—		—
Launch Control	—	—	Active		Active
PDK	Normal	Sport	Performance	SPORT Response	
Auto Start Stop	Active	—	—	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Off/On	—
Chassis					
Dynamic engine mounting	Normal	Sport	Performance	Pre-selection: Normal, SPORT or SPORT PLUS	Pre-selection: Normal, SPORT or SPORT PLUS
PTV	Normal	Normal	Sport		
PASM	Normal	Normal	Sport		
PSM	PSM SPORT function via the PSM button in the centre console				
Other					
Light systems	Normal	Sport	Sport	Pre-selection: Normal, SPORT or SPORT PLUS	Pre-selection: Normal, SPORT or SPORT PLUS
Adaptive cruise control					
Sports exhaust system	—	Active	Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> On/Off	
Rear wing	depends on the driving speed			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> extended/ retracted	

Normal

The control systems work in a comfort-oriented and economical interplay during everyday driving.

Sport

Moves the control systems further towards high emotion and dynamism during everyday driving.

Performance

Maximum performance for race-circuit-like driving.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Sport Chrono Stopwatch

You can use the Sport Chrono stopwatch to measure any times, e.g. on the race circuit or on work-related journeys. These times can be recorded and evaluated.

The following information can be recorded and evaluated:

- Lap number
- Lap distance
- Lap time
- Optional: various other data (such as vehicle position, speed or the outside temperature)

During a recording the following can be displayed:

- Current lap number
- Fastest lap time and the current lap time compared to it
- Percentage of distance travelled in related to a reference lap
- Colour rating to indicate whether the current lap time is quicker than, slower than or identical to the current fastest lap.
- The residual range and the number of laps that can still be driven with the current fuel level
- Storage time still remaining
- Optional: Track progress of current lap and the reference lap

Stopwatch on the dashboard



Fig. 202: Sport Chrono stopwatch on the dashboard

The stopwatch has an analogue and a digital display:

Analogue display

- Big pointer: seconds
- Small pointer: hours and minutes

The display re-starts at zero after 12 hours.

Digital display

- Seconds, 1/10 seconds and 1/100 seconds

The digital display and the multi-function display can show up to 99 hours and 59 minutes.

Adjusting brightness of stopwatch

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Adjusting brightness of instrument lighting” on page 123.

Switching stopwatch light on the dashboard on and off


- ▷ Refer to chapter “Adjusting brightness of instrument lighting” on page 123.

Displaying the time on the stopwatch

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Displaying time in stopwatch on dashboard” on page 266.

Displaying stopwatch time

The lap time can be displayed at different positions:

- In the Sport Chrono stopwatch on the dashboard.
- In the **Chrono** menu on the multi-function display.
- In the main menu **CAR** under **SC**  in the PCM.

Performing timing on the multi-function display



Fig. 203: Chrono menu

- A** Lap counter – current lap number
- B** Current lap time
(green: faster than the fastest lap,
yellow: identical to the fastest lap,
red: slower than the fastest lap)
- C** Fastest lap time
- D** Circle display (how much of the lap has been
completed compared to a reference lap)

i Information

If you quit the Chrono menu while the stopwatch is running, the timing will continue. The stopwatch stops after the ignition is switched off. If the ignition is switched on again within approx. 4 minutes, the stopwatch will continue to run.

Starting timing

▶ Chrono ▶ Start

Data recording begins. If a reference lap has not been stored yet, the first lap in the recording will be used as a reference lap.

Stopping timing

✓ Timing has started.

▶ Chrono ▶ Stop

Continuing timing

✓ Timing was stopped.

▶ Chrono ▶ Stop ▶ Cont.

Stopping lap/starting new lap

The current stopwatch time is stored as a lap time while the stopwatch is still running.

✓ Timing has started.

▶ Chrono ▶ Round

The lap counter value (Fig. 203, **A**) is incremented by one. The time of the fastest completed lap is stored as the fastest lap time (Fig. 203, **C**). The current lap time (Fig. 203, **B**) and the circle display (Fig. 203, **D**) turn a different colour to indicate whether the current lap time is faster than, slower than or identical to the current fastest lap.

i Information

A maximum of 99 laps can be stored during each session.

Storing intermediate time

✓ Timing has started.

▶ Chrono ▶ Int.

The intermediate time is displayed briefly and is not stored. Timing continues in the background.

Resetting the stopwatch time

✓ Timing was stopped.

▶ Chrono ▶ Stop ▶ Reset

All stopwatch time displays are reset to zero.

Displaying timing in the PCM

i Information

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.

Displaying stopwatch

- ✓ Timing has started.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Starting timing” on page 227.

- CAR** button ▶ **SC**
- Scroll (swipe) to stopwatch display.



Fig. 204: Stopwatch display (ongoing recording)

- A** Lap counter – current lap number
- B** Current lap time
(green: faster than the fastest lap, yellow: identical to the fastest lap, red: slower than the fastest lap)
- C** Fastest lap time
- D** Circle display (how much of the lap has been completed compared to a reference lap)
- E** Available remaining storage space
- F** The number of laps that can still be driven with the current fuel level

Displaying track progress

- ✓ Timing has started.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Starting timing” on page 227.
- ✓ Under **CAR** button ▶ **SC** ▶ **SET Sport Chrono**, the **Record additional data** function is activated.

- CAR** button ▶ **SC**
- Scroll (swipe) to track progress display.

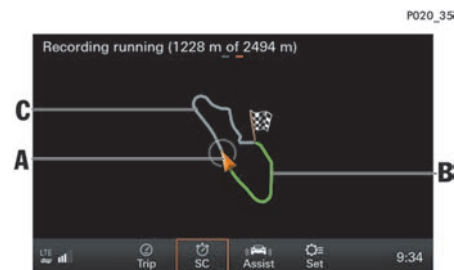


Fig. 205: Ongoing recording – track progress display

- A** Current vehicle position
- B** Current lap
(green: faster than the fastest lap, yellow: identical to the fastest lap, red: slower than the fastest lap)
- C** Reference lap (grey)

Displaying and editing recordings

A maximum of 99 laps can be recorded during each session. Provided a reference lap has not been loaded already, the first lap of the recording is used as the reference lap.

A maximum of 10 hours of recording time is available.

Displaying recordings

- ✓ Timing is stopped.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Stopping timing” on page 227.

1. **CAR** button ▶ **SC**
2. Browse (swipe) to the **Recordings** page.
3. Select the **Recordings** folder.
4. To display a recording, select the desired recording (e.g. recording 001).

Displaying recording statistics

1. **CAR** button ▶ **SC**
2. Browse (swipe) to the **Recordings** page.
3. Select the **Recordings** folder.
4. To display a recording, select the desired recording (e.g. recording 001).
5. Select **Statistics** in the controller. Information about the individual laps is displayed.

Displaying track progress of recording

- ✓ Under **CAR** button ▶ **SC** ▶ **SET Sport Chrono**, the **Record additional data** function is activated.

1. **CAR** button ▶ **SC**
2. Browse (swipe) to the **Recordings** page.
3. Select the **Recordings** folder.
4. To display a recording, select the desired recording (e.g. recording 001).
5. Select **Map** in the controller. Information about the track progress of the lap is displayed.

Displaying and editing a lap

1. **CAR** button ▶ **SC**
2. Browse (swipe) to the **Recordings** page.
3. Select the **Recordings** folder.
4. To display a recording, select the desired recording (e.g. recording 001).
5. Select **Statistics** in the controller. Information about the individual laps is displayed.
6. Select the desired lap.
7. Select the desired setting in the controller:

- **Store** : Storing a lap as the reference lap
- **Map** : Display track progress for lap
- **Delete** : Deleting the lap

Setting the reference lap

- ✓ Timing is stopped and reset.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Performing timing on the multi-function display” on page 227.

1. **CAR** button ▶ **SC**
2. Browse (swipe) to the **Recordings** page.
3. Select a desired reference lap under **Reference laps**. The desired reference lap is displayed.
4. Select **Set Ref.** in the controller.

Entering settings in the PCM

Managing recordings and reference laps

1. **CAR** button ▶ **SC** ▶ **OPT** button
2. Select the desired option:

- **Rename data:** Reference laps and recordings can be renamed.
- **Transfer data:** Recordings and reference laps can be imported or exported with an SD card or USB mass storage device:
 - **Import:** To be able to import data, the data must be saved on a storage device in the SportChrono folder. Select the data to be imported via **Select** and **Deselect**. Import the selected data via **Import**.
 - **Export:** Select the data to be exported via **Select** and **Deselect**. Export the selected data via **Export**.
- **Delete data:** Reference laps and recordings can be deleted.

Other settings

1. **CAR** button ▶ **SC**  ▶
OPT button ▶ **SET Sport Chrono**

2. Select the desired option:

- **Record additional data:** Apart from lap length and lap times, other driving data (such as speed) can be stored at intervals of 1 second. The track progress can also be shown on the map.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Displaying and editing recordings” on page 229.
- **Permitted delta distance:** Indicates how much the length of a lap may differ from the length of the reference lap. Laps with greater length deviations are not included in the evaluation.
- **Max. delta time for evaluation:** Indicates the maximum time difference with which laps are evaluated as identical in speed (marked yellow) during the recording.


Sports Exhaust System

Switching the sports exhaust system on and off



Fig. 206: Button for the sports exhausts system in the centre console

The sports exhaust system can be switched to a sound-optimised mode when the ignition is switched on.

- ▶ Press button . When the sports exhaust system is switched on, the indicator light on the button lights up.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Ignition lock

The driver's key is inserted into the ignition lock at the left of the steering wheel.

On vehicles with **Porsche Entry & Drive**, you no longer have to insert the driver's key into the ignition lock, but merely keep it with you. The driver's key is replaced by a control unit in the ignition lock, which always remains in the ignition lock, unless the vehicle is being towed.

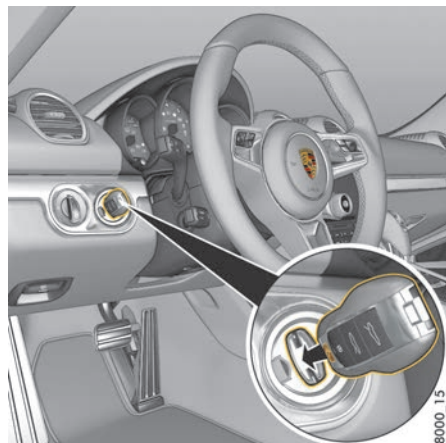


Fig. 207: Inserting the driver's key into the ignition lock

i Information

The vehicle battery discharges if the driver's key is left inserted.

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the driver's key can only be removed from the ignition lock if the emergency operation is performed:

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Performing emergency release of driver's key/control unit" on page 103.

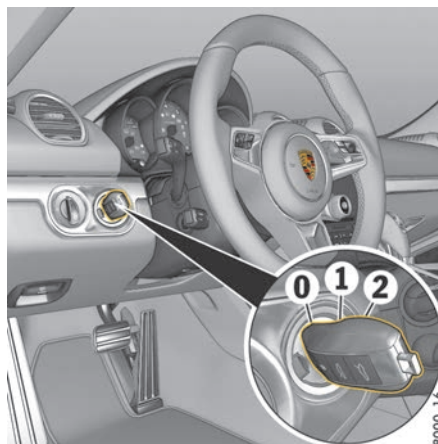


Fig. 208: Ignition lock positions

- 0** Initial position
- 1** Ignition on
- 2** Start engine

0 – Ignition off (initial position)

The engine and ignition are off in ignition lock position **0**. The driver's key can be inserted and removed in this position.

1 – Ignition on

Most of the electrical equipment can be switched on. The warning lights on the instrument panel light up for a lamp check.

i Information

If no loads are switched on for 10 minutes after switching on the ignition, the ignition must be switched on again.

Turn the driver's key to ignition lock position **0** (initial position) first.

The driver's key cannot be removed when the ignition is switched on or when the engine has been started.

2 – Start the engine

The driver's key is reset automatically from position **2** to position **1** when you start the engine.

Locking and unlocking steering wheel

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Unlocking and locking the steering column" on page 248.

Starting the engine

1. Operate the footbrake.
2. Vehicles with manual transmission:
Fully depress the clutch pedal and hold.
3. Move gearshift lever into neutral or move selector lever to the **P** or **N** position.
4. Do not press the accelerator pedal.
5. Turn the driver's key or control unit (Porsche Entry & Drive) to ignition lock position **2**. Do not operate the starter for longer than approx. 10 seconds.

The starting procedure is carried out and completed automatically as soon as ignition lock position **2** (start engine) is reached.

- ▶ Repeat the starting procedure after approx. 10 seconds if necessary. Turn the driver's key back to ignition lock position **0** (initial position) first.

Do not warm up the engine when stationary. Drive off immediately. Avoid high revs and full throttle until the engine has reached operating temperature.

Stopping the engine



WARNING

Inactive power steering and brake booster

The power steering and brake booster are only operational while the engine is running. If the engine is switched off, much greater force is suddenly required for turning the steering wheel or braking.

- ▶ Only switch off the ignition when the vehicle is stationary.

-
1. Stop the vehicle.
 2. Turn the driver's key or control unit to ignition lock position **0**.
- ▶ When leaving the vehicle, remove the driver's key, apply the electric parking brake and engage selector-lever position **P** on vehicles with PDK, or engage first gear or reverse gear on vehicles with manual transmission.

Steering Wheel

Adjusting steering wheel



WARNING

Steering wheel adjustment while driving

The steering wheel may move further than desired if you attempt to adjust it while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Adjusting steering wheel manually

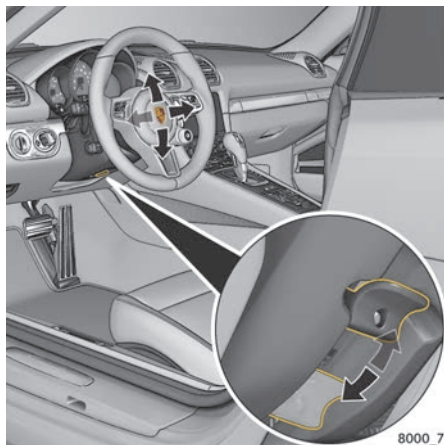


Fig. 209: Steering wheel adjustment locking lever

1. Insert the driver's key fully into the ignition lock.
2. Push the locking lever downwards.
3. Adjust the steering wheel to suit the backrest angle and seat position by moving up or down and longitudinally.
4. Swivel the locking lever back until you feel it engage.

Adjusting steering wheel electrically



CAUTION

Inadvertent retrieval of memory settings

If persons or animals are within the range of movement of the steering wheel, there is a risk of parts of the body being squeezed or crushed when you adjust the steering wheel.

- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

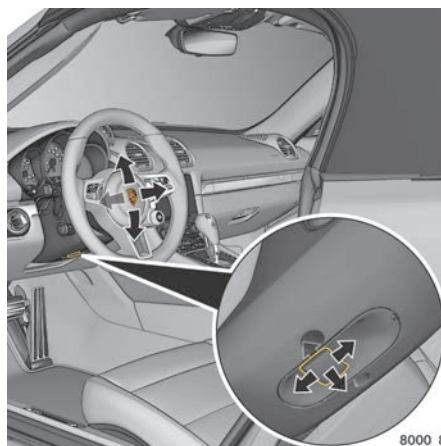


Fig. 210: Steering wheel adjustment control switch

- ▶ Move the control switch under the steering column in the relevant direction until the desired setting is reached.

Storing steering wheel settings

On vehicles with memory package, the steering wheel settings can be stored on the memory buttons in the driver's door and on the driver's key.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 188.

Switching steering wheel heating on/off

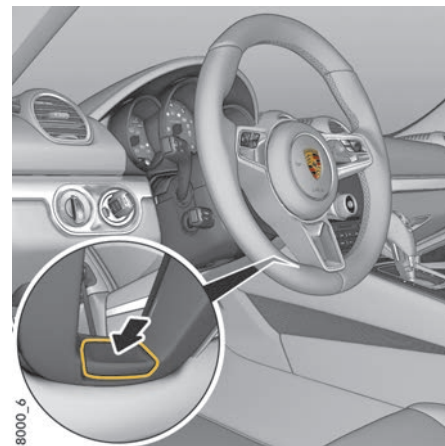


Fig. 211: Heated steering wheel button

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press the button on the central steering wheel spoke (Fig. 211) until the message "**Heated steering wheel on**" or "**Heated steering wheel off**" appears briefly on the multi-function display.

Storage

Stowing objects

⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned objects

An unsecured or incorrectly positioned load can slip out of place and endanger the vehicle occupants as a result of hard braking, direction changes or an accident.

- ▶ Do not transport items of luggage or objects unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- ▶ Do not transport heavy objects in open storage compartments.
- ▶ Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.

NOTICE

Heavy and bulky objects can damage the storage net.

- ▶ Do not place any heavy and bulky objects in the storage net.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following storage options may be available:

- Cupholders
- Glove box with pen holder
- Door storage compartments
- Storage compartment in door sill next to passenger's seat
- Storage compartment in centre console armrest
- Storage net in the passenger's footwell
- Clothes hook on back of seat backrests

Opening and closing the glove box

Opening the glove box

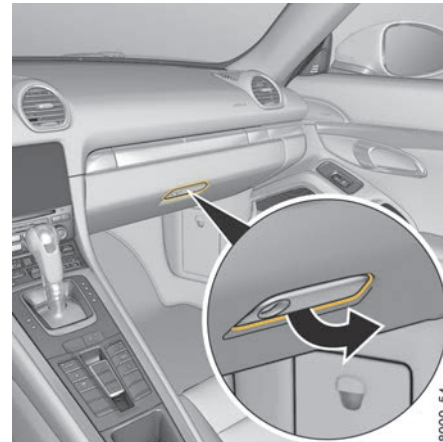


Fig. 212: Opening the glove box

- ▶ Pull the handle (Fig. 212) and open the lid.

i Information

There is a pen holder on the inside of the glove box lid.

Closing the glove box

- ▶ Always lock the handle with the emergency key, to secure the contents from unauthorised access.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Using emergency key” on page 102.

Opening the storage compartment in the centre console armrest

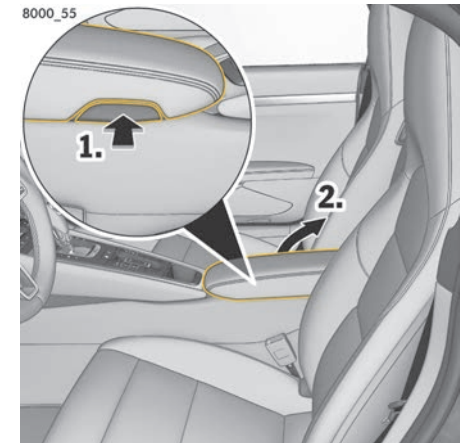


Fig. 213: Opening the storage compartment in the centre console armrest

- ▶ Press the button (Fig. 213) on the right-hand side of the armrest. The lid pops up automatically.

Depending on the country, the storage compartment may contain a smartphone tray.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Stowing a mobile phone (country-dependant)” on page 246.

Opening the side storage compartments behind the seats

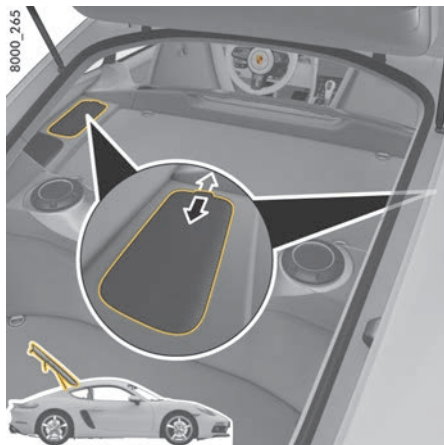


Fig. 214: Side storage compartment behind the seats with retractable cover

Opening

- ▶ Pull the handle of the retractable cover backwards in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

- ▶ Push the handle of the retractable cover forwards in the direction of the arrow.

Opening door storage compartments

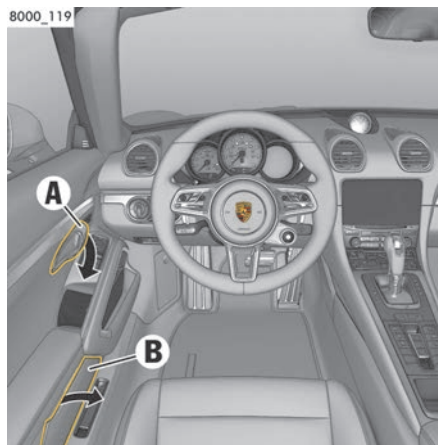


Fig. 215: Door storage compartment

- A** Door opener
- B** Door storage compartment

- ▶ Lift up the lid **B** (Fig. 215).

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the door storage compartment when closing the door.

- ▶ Close the lid of the storage compartment before closing the door.

Sun Visors

Adjusting sun visor

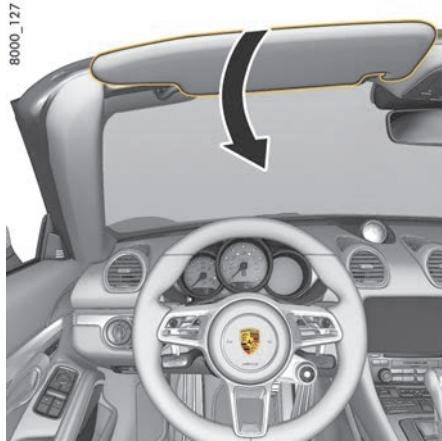


Fig. 216: Adjusting sun visor

- ▶ Swivel the sun visor down to prevent glare from the front.

Opening vanity mirror

⚠ CAUTION

Cover of vanity mirror open

The mirror glass may break in the event of an accident and may fall into the passenger compartment if the cover is open.

- ▶ Keep the cover closed when driving.

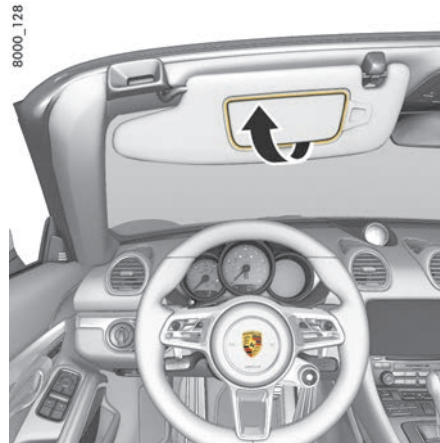


Fig. 217: Opening vanity mirror

- ▶ Open the cover of the vanity mirror on the inside of the sun visor. The vanity mirror lighting is switched on.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vanity mirror cover.

- ▶ Do not force the cover beyond its end position.

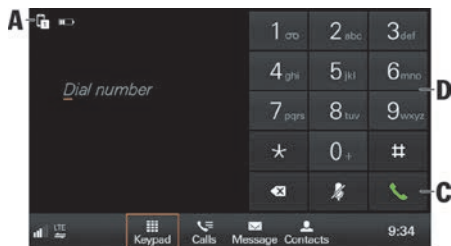
Telephone

Brief overview

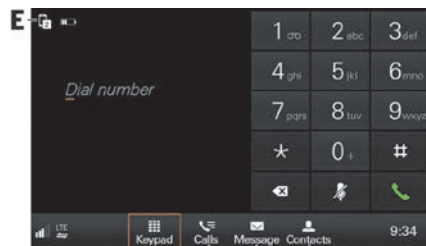
This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided in the chapter “Telephone”. Safety instructions and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.



P120_14
Fig. 218: Dialling a number (keypad)



P120_53
Fig. 219: Dialling a number (keypad)

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
Connect phone via Bluetooth® (mobile phone preparation)	▶ PHONE button ▶ Connect phone ▶ Search for new phone	239
Use PCM for making phone calls with an external SIM card	▶ Insert a SIM card into the SIM card slot (missing corner front left, chip facing downwards) ▶ If necessary, enter PIN ▶ Confirm data connection.	241
Switch between two connected mobile phones	▶ Select or (see A and E) in the headline.	240
Establish a data connection (connectivity)	▶ Establish a data connection via the embedded SIM, an external SIM card or external WiFi hotspot.	87
Dial a number	▶ PHONE button ▶ Keypad (see B) ▶ Enter the number using numeric field D ▶ Select (see C).	242
Accept/reject a call	▶ Select Accept or Cancel .	242
End a call	▶ Select in the footer or phone menu.	242
Start a conference call	▶ PHONE button ▶ Dial number ▶ Keypad ▶ ▶ Dial number of other participant ▶ ▶ ▶	243
Listen to mailbox	▶ PHONE button ▶ Keypad ▶ Press and hold 1...	242
Display call list	▶ PHONE button ▶ Calls (see F) ▶ Select call list.	243
Display messages	▶ PHONE button ▶ Message (see G) ▶ Text message or E-mail ▶ Select folder.	244
Display a contact	▶ PHONE button ▶ Select Contacts (see H).	244

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accidents

Using mobile phones while driving may distract from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Always use hands-free equipment.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of injury

Mobile phones must be switched off in certain danger areas, e.g. near petrol stations, fuel depots, chemical plants and blasting work. They may interfere with technical equipment.

- ▶ Always comply with instructions as well as legal requirements and local restrictions.

i Information

A list of selected compatible mobile phones is available online at www.porsche.com.

Connecting mobile phone via Bluetooth® (mobile phone preparation)

Connecting a new mobile phone


- ✓ Mobile phone's Bluetooth® function is activated and visible to other devices.
- ✓ PCM's Bluetooth® function is activated.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter "Activating the PCM's Bluetooth® function" on page 239.

1. PHONE button ▶ Connect phone – or –

Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status) ▶ **Phone**.

2. Select Search for new phone and select the mobile phone from the device list. A 6-digit Bluetooth® code is generated and displayed in the PCM and on the mobile phone.

3. Compare the Bluetooth® code in the PCM and on the mobile phone.

4. If the Bluetooth® code in the PCM and on the mobile phone match, confirm. On mobile phones with SIM Access Profile (SAP), enter the PIN for the external SIM card in the PCM, if necessary. When the phone is successfully connected, the numeric input (menu **Keypad ) is displayed in the PCM.**

i Information

For mobile phones with Windows® and iOS® operating systems, we recommend initiating the connection from the mobile phone:

- ▶ Search for available devices in the mobile phone's Bluetooth® menu. Press **PHONE** button to make the PCM visible. The display **Connect phone** must be visible for the connection procedure.
- ▶ Select the PCM from the list of available devices. The Bluetooth® device names of the PCM can be displayed by selecting **PHONE** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET PHONE ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Bluetooth name**.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter "Managing Bluetooth® functions and devices" on page 246.

Activating the PCM's Bluetooth® function

1. PHONE button ▶ OPT button ▶ SET PHONE

2. Select Bluetooth ▶ Activate Bluetooth to switch on the PCM's Bluetooth® function.

i Information

In the case of a Bluetooth® connection, the mobile phone can be connected to the PCM via the hands-free profile (HFP) or the SIM access profile (SAP). When using the hands-free profile, the PCM serves as a Bluetooth® hands-free unit for the connected mobile phone and, depending on the mobile phone, is able to access the content of the phone book, call lists and messages. It is therefore possible, after stopping the vehicle, to transfer a current call to the mobile phone and to continue it outside the vehicle.

In contrast, when using the SIM access profile, the SIM card of the mobile phone is connected to the PCM directly via Bluetooth®. The mobile phone thus makes the network access data available to the PCM.

- ▶ More information on Bluetooth® profiles can be found in the mobile phone operating instructions.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A Connecting to registered mobile phones

- ✓ Mobile phone's Bluetooth® function is activated and visible to other devices.
- ✓ PCM's Bluetooth® function is activated.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter "Activating the PCM's Bluetooth® function" on page 239.
- ✓ Mobile phone has already been connected to the PCM once.

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).

– or –

PHONE button ▶ **OPT** button ▶
Device manager

2. Select **Telephone**.
A list with a maximum of 20 registered mobile phones will be displayed.
3. Select a mobile phone from the list.
The mobile phone is connected via Bluetooth®.

B Connecting and using a second mobile phone



- ✓ A mobile phone is already connected to the PCM or the inserted SIM card is enabled to make calls.

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).

– or –

PHONE button ▶ **OPT** button ▶
Device manager

2. Select **Telephone 2**.
 3. Select a mobile phone from the list or connect a new mobile phone.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter "Connecting a new mobile phone" on page 239.

Both connected mobile phones can receive calls, but only the active mobile phone can make calls.
- ▶ Select  or  (see **A**, Fig. 218 on page 238) in the headline to switch between the two connected mobile phones.

C Deleting a Bluetooth® device or displaying Bluetooth® information

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET PHONE** ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **Bluetooth devices**
2. Select a mobile phone from the list.
3. To delete a mobile phone from the list of registered Bluetooth® devices, select **Delete**.
 - or –
 - To view information for a Bluetooth® device, select **Details**.
Bluetooth® address, connection status and available Bluetooth® profiles will be displayed.
 - or –
 - To establish or disconnect a connection between a Bluetooth® device and the PCM, select **Establish connection/Disconnect**.

i Information

After starting, the PCM attempts to restore the previous device configuration automatically. If the devices are not present in the vehicle, the system searches for other known devices.

D Using PCM for making phone calls with external SIM card

In some countries, the external SIM card can also be used for making and receiving calls in addition to establishing a data connection. The embedded SIM **cannot** be used for making and receiving calls.

For information on data connection:

- ▷ Refer to chapter "Connectivity" on page 87.

When an external SIM card is inserted, it deactivates the function of the embedded SIM (availability dependent on country). Additional costs may be incurred for the data connection (e.g. due to data roaming).

Inserting and removing external SIM card

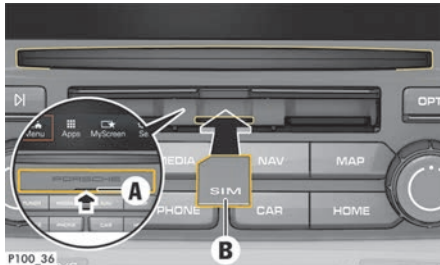


Fig. 220: Inserting and removing external SIM card

✓ SD and SIM card reader cover **A** is open.

1. Insert external SIM card **B** (mini-SIM, dimensions: 25 x 15 mm) (missing corner at front left, chip facing downwards).
2. SIM card **with** PIN:
 - a. Enter the PIN for the external SIM card and confirm with **OK**.
 - b. Select **Store PIN**.
3. Select **Enable** to enable the data connection. Activate **Don't ask again** to disable the repeated prompt. The data connection is established.
 - ▶ To remove the external SIM card, press on the inserted card and remove it.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to PCM if SIM cards are not used properly.

If a SIM card adapter is used, there is a risk of the SIM card falling out of the adapter if shaken and the card pieces remaining stuck in the PCM.

▶ Do not use adapters for SIM cards.

i Information

- If the SIM card is used to make and receive calls as well as for data connection, it occupies one of the two slots available for mobile phones. In this case, another mobile phone can be connected and then the user can switch between the mobile phone and SIM card.
- For information on PIN settings for the SIM card:
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Changing phone settings” on page 246.

Displaying connection status

Depending on the connection status, the following displays may be shown in the footer:

Symbol	Meaning
	No phone connected.
	External SIM card inserted or connection via SIM Access Profile (SAP) established. Data connection can be established.
	Data connection established via embedded SIM, external SIM card or connection via SIM Access Profile (SAP), e.g. data connection via the LTE mobile phone network.
	Data connection via the UMTS/HSPA mobile phone network (3G).
	Data connection via the EDGE mobile phone network (GSM).
	Reception signal strength of the mobile phone network for the telephone function.
	Data connection via external WiFi hotspot.



Opening the Device Manager

▶ Refer to chapter “Device Manager” on page 100.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Dialling a phone number




Entering a phone number (keypad)

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Keypad** 
2. Enter a number via the numeric field.
If the phone number is already known, it is offered for selection (vCard is displayed).
3. Select .

Information

DTMF tone (Dual Tone Multi Frequency) and supplementary services (services that can be called up via star and diamond codes) are supported.

Open the redial feature



1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Keypad** 
2. Select  to display the last phone number dialled on the keypad.
3. Select .

Information

The redial memory is deleted after the ignition is turned off.



Calling a number from a call list

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Displaying call list” on page 243.


1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Calls** 
2. Select desired call list and select entry.
3. Select .

Calling a number from the contacts

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Using contacts” on page 244.

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Contacts** 
2. Search for and select the desired contact.
3. Dial the desired number.
4. Select .

Listening to mailbox

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Keypad** 
2. Press and hold  to listen to mailbox.

Information



When the function is used for the first time, a prompt to enter the mailbox number appears once.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Changing phone settings” on page 246.

Accepting and ending a call

Accepting/rejecting a call


- ✓ Call comes in.

- ▶ Select  **Accept**.
 - or –
 - Press the Pickup button on the mobile phone.
 - or –
 - Press the Pickup button on the steering wheel.
- ▶ To reject the incoming call, press  **Reject**.
 - or –
 - Press the Hangup button on the mobile phone.
 - or –
 - Press the Hang-up button on the steering wheel.

Information


If the “mute” or “conference” profiles are set on the mobile phone, some devices do not sound a ringtone on the PCM if a call is received.

Ending a call



- ▶ Select  in the footer or phone menu.
 - or –
 - Press the Hangup button on the mobile phone.
 - or –
 - Press the Hang-up button on the steering wheel.

Functions during a phone call





Muting the microphone

- ✓ Phone call is active.
- ▶ Select  to mute the microphone.

Holding a call

- ✓ Phone call is active.
- ▶ Select  next to the display **Connected**.
– or –
PHONE button ▶ Select **Hold call**.
- ▶ To resume the call, select  next to the display **On hold**.
– or –
PHONE button ▶ Select **Activate call**.

Starting a conference call


- ✓ Phone call is active.
- 1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Keypad** 
- 2. Select  to add another conversation.
- 3. Add new conversation by:
Dialling a new number using the numeric field.
– or –
Selecting a phone number from the call list.
– or –
Selecting an existing contact from the phonebook.
- 4. Select .
- 5. Select  to activate the conference.
– or –
PHONE ▶ **OPT** ▶ **Conference**
- ▶ To put the conference call on hold, select **PHONE** ▶ **OPT** ▶ **Hold conference**.

Switching between two conversations (swapping)


- ✓ Phone call is active.
- ✓ Phone call is on hold.
- ▶ Select the call on hold to activate it and to put the previously active call on hold.
– or –
PHONE button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **Swap calls**

Displaying call list

Displaying a call

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Calls** 
2. Browse (swipe) to desired page:
 - **All calls**
 - **Missed calls**
 - **Outgoing calls**
 - **Incoming calls**
3. Select an entry from the call list.
The detailed view is displayed.

Deleting a call

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Calls** 
2. Select the desired call list and select a caller.
3. Press button **OPT**.
4. To delete a call from the PCM call list, select **Delete call**.

Information

Only calls that have been made from the vehicle can be deleted.

Using a phone via the multi-function display

For information on using the multi-function display:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display without multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Operating multi-function display with multi-function steering wheel” on page 157.

Dialling a phone number

1. Select menu **Phone**.
2. Search for the desired number in the list and select an entry.

- **Phonebook**
- **Previous calls**

Accepting or rejecting a call

- ✓ Call comes in.
- ▶ Select menu **Phone**.

- **Accept call**
- **Reject call**

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Making multiple calls simultaneously and ending calls

✓ Active phone call.

▶ Select menu **Phone**.

- **New call:** Call a further participant during an active phone call.
- **Swap:** Switching between participants in order to make separate phone calls.
- **Conference:** Add a participant to a conference call.
- **End call:** End the active phone call.

Using contacts

Displaying a contact

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Contacts**

Finding a contact

The right alphabetical strip can be used to find the desired contact from the first letter. Alternatively it is possible to search by entering text.

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Contacts** ▶ **Search for contact**

2. Enter a name using the input field.
A list of results is displayed.

3. Select the desired entry.

Sending a contact

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Contacts**

2. Select a contact.
Contact details are displayed.

3. Press the **OPT** button.

4. Select **Send as vCard**.

5. Select send (**SMS, e-mail**) or memory option (**SD, USB**) depending on availability.

Sorting the contact list

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **Contacts** ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **Sort criteria**

2. Select sorting sequence **Surname, first name** or **First name, surname**.

Adding favourites in MyScreen

1. **HOME** button ▶ **MyScreen** ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET MyScreen**

2. Select **MyScreen 1, MyScreen 2** or **MyScreen 3**.

3. Select category **PHONE**.

4. Drag & Drop the tile **Smith, John** into any container on the left preview side. The tile can be inserted into the container as soon as a green edge appears.

5. Exit the **Configure MyScreen** menu using or .

6. Select **Touch here to select a contact**.
Contact list is opened.

7. Select the desired contact.
Contact details are displayed.

8. Dial a phone number.
Contact is stored as a favourite in the selected view.

Deleting favourites in MyScreen

▶ Refer to chapter “Creating MyScreen” on page 180.

Displaying and deleting messages

You can read text messages and e-mails, have the messages read out to you or use the numbers contained in the messages for making phone calls using the **Message** function.



This function is only available if the mobile phone supports Bluetooth® Message Access Profile. The mobile phone may support the text message function but not the e-mail function.

You will find further information on these settings in the operating instructions for the mobile phone.



Information

- If the connected mobile phone supports the SIM access profile, the text message received will be stored on the SIM card.
- If the mobile phone is only able to display the text messages stored in the device memory, the text messages received in the vehicle may not appear in the mobile phone message list.
- Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) is not supported by the PCM.

Displaying text messages

1. **PHONE** button ► **Message**  ► **Text message**
2.  ► Select folder.
3. Select the desired text message.




Displaying e-mails

1. **PHONE** button ► **Message**  ► **E-mail**
2. Select an e-mail account.
Inbox is opened. A maximum of 100 e-mails are displayed.
3. If necessary,  ► Select folder.
4. Select the desired e-mail:



Information

The transfer of e-mails from several accounts to the PCM is not supported by many mobile phones. Often only the e-mails managed by the manufacturer's own app are transferred.

Listening to messages (text, e-mail)

1. **PHONE** button ► **Message**  ►
2. Select **Text message** menu or **E-mail** menu.
3.  ► Select folder.
4. Select the desired text message or e-mail.
5. Select **Read out** .

Deleting messages (text, e-mail)




1. **PHONE** button ► **Message**  ►
2. Select **Text message** menu or **E-mail** menu.
3.  ► Select folder.
4. Select the desired text message or e-mail.
5. Press the **OPT** button.
6. Select **Delete** message.
Message will be deleted. For connections via the SIM access profile, a text message deleted in the PCM will also be deleted on the mobile phone SIM card.

Writing messages

Writing text messages

1. **PHONE** button ► **Message**  ► **Text message**
2. Select  ► **New text message**.
3. Enter the number of the recipient in the input field.
– or –
Selecting an existing contact from the phonebook.
4. Select text box.
5. Enter text using the input field and confirm with **Enter**.
6. Select **Send** .
The message is sent.

Writing e-mails

1. **PHONE** button ► **Message**  ► **E-mail**
2. Select  ► **New e-mail**.
3. Enter the e-mail address of the recipient in the input field.
– or –
Selecting an existing contact from the phonebook.
4. Select text box (e.g. Subject).
5. Enter text using the input field and confirm with **Enter**.
6. Select **Send** .
The e-mail is sent.

A Stowing a mobile phone (country-dependant)

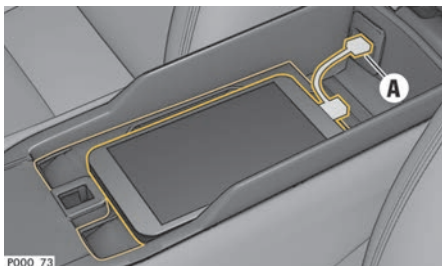


Fig. 221: Smartphone tray

Depending on the equipment, a special smartphone tray is installed in the centre console. Its purpose is to connect to the vehicle's external antenna. It also has a USB port to charge the mobile phone and to connect to the PCM.

Using the external antenna ensures less radiation in the vehicle and better reception quality for a mobile phone connected via Bluetooth®.

- ▶ Place the mobile phone with the display facing upwards centrally onto the phone symbol in the smartphone tray. Ensure that there are no objects between the tray and the mobile phone.

i Information

It is recommended that the keyboard/code lock be activated before placing the mobile phone in the tray.

W Charging a mobile phone

- ▶ Connect the mobile phone to the USB port **A** using a USB charging cable.

Changing settings

Settings during a phone call (private mode)

- ✓ Mobile phone is connected via Bluetooth® and the hands-free profile (HFP).
- ✓ Call is established.

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **OPT** button
2. Select the desired setting:

- **Activate private mode:** Call is being transferred to phone from the hands-free equipment.

Changing phone settings

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET PHONE** ▶ **Phone**
2. Select the desired setting:

- **Switch off/on PCM phone:** Switch the phone module in the PCM on/off.
- **Enable inserted SIM card for calls:** Use external SIM card inserted in the card reader for calls (or only for data services).
- **Network operator search:** Select network operator or activate automatic network operator search.
- **SIM card:** Change the settings for the inserted, external SIM card.
- **Mailbox number:** Display or change the mailbox phone number for the connected mobile phone.
- **Serial number:** Display IMEI serial number of the PCM phone module.

Managing Bluetooth® functions and devices

1. **PHONE** button ▶ **OPT** button ▶ **SET PHONE** ▶ **Bluetooth**
2. Select the desired setting:

- **Add new device:** Search for new Bluetooth® device and register on the PCM.
- **Bluetooth devices:** Manage registered Bluetooth® devices, connect PCM to registered Bluetooth® device.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Deleting a Bluetooth® device or displaying Bluetooth® information” on page 240.
- **Activate/deactivate Bluetooth:** Activate/deactivate Bluetooth® function.
- **Note: Don't forget your phone:** Activate a reminder to a connected Bluetooth® device when leaving the vehicle.
- **Bluetooth name:** Set Bluetooth® name of the PCM.

Configuring WiFi settings


1. **PHONE** button ► **OPT** button ► **SET PHONE** ► **WiFi settings**

2. Select the desired setting:

- **Activate/deactivate WiFi:** Switch WiFi function of the PCM on/off.
- **Configure WiFi hotspot in PCM:** Display and set up WiFi access data of the PCM. This data is required to be able to connect a device (e.g. mobile phone) to the PCM via WiFi and to use the WiFi hotspot of the PCM.
- **Use external data connection:** To establish a data connection to an external WiFi hotspot (e.g. public hotspot).
- **Connect to external WiFi hotspot:** Search for new WiFi hotspot and enter access data for the external WiFi hotspot (user name and password). When entering the data, pay attention to upper and lower case.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Establishing a data connection via external WiFi hotspot” on page 88.

Deleting external WiFi hotspot

1. **PHONE** button ► **OPT** button ► **Connections** ► **Data connection**

2. Select the icon  for the WiFi hotspot to be deleted.

Configuring data connections

1. **PHONE** button ► **OPT** button ► **SET PHONE** ► **Data connections**

2. Select the desired setting:

- **Data connections:**
 - **On:** Always allow data connections.
 - **Off:** Data connections are switched off.
 - **Prompt:** Before using the data connection, a message will appear asking whether the data connection should be allowed.
- **Share data connection:** Enable data connection for WiFi devices.
- **Roaming:** Enable or block data connection in foreign networks.
- **Configure access point:** Change network access data for the data connection of the SIM card (APN name, user name and password).
- **Reset access point configuration:** Reset APN settings to factory settings.
 - ▷ For information on APN settings: Refer to chapter “Establishing data connection via external SIM card” on page 87.

Managing contacts

1. **PHONE** button ► **OPT** button ► **SET PHONE** ► **Contacts**

2. Select the desired setting:

- **Contact memory:** Display contact memory used.
- **Sort criteria:** Sort contacts stored on the mobile phone by surname or first name.
- **Transfer contacts:** Contacts on the SIM card or on the mobile phone connected via Bluetooth® can be manually transferred to the PCM.

Changing tone settings

✓ Mobile phone is connected to the PCM or a SIM card is inserted.

1. **PHONE** button ► **OPT** button ► **SET PHONE** ► **Tone settings**

2. Select the desired setting:

Possible setting options are:

- **Select ringtone:** Set the ringtone for the PCM if the connected mobile phone does not transmit the ringtone via Bluetooth®.
- **Ringtone volume:** Set ringtone volume.
- **Microphone sensitivity:** Set microphone sensitivity for phone calls.
- **Signal tone for messages:** Set or switch off signal tone for incoming messages.

Configuring call settings

✓ SIM card is inserted in the PCM or mobile phone is connected via the Bluetooth® SIM access profile.

1. **PHONE** button ► **OPT** button

2. Select the desired setting:

- **Call forwarding:** Configure call forwarding.
- **Call waiting:** If you receive another call while one is already active and the function is activated, a call waiting signal will sound.
- **Show own number:** If the function is activated, your phone number will be shown to the person calling.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Theft Protection

Theft protection

When leaving the vehicle, always:

- ▶ Close the windows.
- ▶ Close the convertible top.
- ▶ Activate the electric parking brake.
- ▶ Remove the driver's key (switch ignition off on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive).
- ▶ Close the glove box.
- ▶ Close all storage compartments.
- ▶ Remove valuables, vehicle registration documents, telephone and house keys from the vehicle.
- ▶ Close the luggage compartment lids.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle.

Immobiliser

There is a transponder (electronic component), containing a stored code, in each driver's key.

Before the ignition is switched on, the ignition lock checks the code.

The immobiliser can be deactivated and the engine started only using an authorised driver's key.

Unlocking and locking the steering column

Vehicles without Porsche Entry & Drive

Unlocking the steering column automatically

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle with the driver's key.
 - or –
 - Insert driver's key into the ignition lock.

Locking the steering column automatically

- ▶ Remove the driver's key.

Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive

Unlocking the steering column automatically

- ▶ Open driver's door using Porsche Entry & Drive.
 - or –
 - Switch on ignition.

Locking the steering column automatically

- ▶ Open the driver's door (with the ignition switched off).
 - or –
 - Lock the vehicle.

Towing and Tow-Starting

i Information

- ▶ Always observe the laws governing towing and tow-starting.
- ▶ Exercise extreme care when your vehicle is being towed. Before starting off, both drivers should familiarise themselves with the special conditions that apply to tow-starting and towing.
- ▶ In the case of a power failure or faults to the electrical system, an external power source may need to be connected in order to release the electric parking brake or the steering column lock.

Using a towing rope or towing bar

- ▶ For specifications and mounting instructions, please refer to the manual from the accessory manufacturer. Observe the manufacturer's safety and operating instructions.
- ▶ Observe the permissible towing force of the towing rope or towing bar. The towing rope or towing bar must be approved for the vehicle weight. Never exceed the manufacturer's specifications.
- ▶ Vehicles with defective brakes must **not** be towed.

Using a towing rope

- ▶ When towing a vehicle, first screw the towing hook into the vehicle before attaching the towing rope to the towing hook.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Fitting the towing lug" on page 250.
- ▶ Always keep the towing rope taut when towing. Avoid jerky and sudden loads.

Using a towing bar

- ▶ Do **not** attach the towing bar diagonally between the vehicles.

Tow-starting and push-starting the Vehicle

- ▶ Vehicles with Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) cannot be tow-started or push-started, nor must this be attempted due to the risk of serious damage to the transmission.
- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission may only be tow-started or push-started when the engine is cold. If the engine is warm, unburnt fuel could damage the catalytic converter.

Towing the vehicle

WARNING

Increased steering and braking forces as a result of no power assistance

No steering assistance is available on the towed vehicle when its engine is not running. Increased force is required for braking and steering.

- ▶ Exercise extreme care when your vehicle is being towed.

The towed vehicle must not be heavier than the towing vehicle.

When the engine is not running, adequate lubrication of the transmission is not guaranteed. Observe the following points to avoid damage to the transmission.

Important information for vehicles with PDK

- ▶ The vehicle must **not** be towed when the Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) transmission is in emergency operation mode (warning message indicates transmission failure) or if a selector lever emergency release was performed. The vehicle must be transported on a car transporter or on a trailer.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Selector Lever Emergency Release" on page 217.

Special note for vehicles with a faulty or fully discharged battery

If the battery is defective or fully discharged, the engine can only be started after the battery has been replaced or by using jump leads.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Battery" on page 59.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Jump-Lead Starting" on page 129.

Notes on towing a vehicle on all four wheels

- ▶ Switch on the ignition so that the brake lights and direction indicator lights can operate and the steering lock will not engage. The control unit must be removed from the ignition lock and the driver's key inserted on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.

Notes on towing a vehicle on a single axle

- ▶ Switch ignition off. Leave the driver's key in the ignition lock so that the steering lock does not engage. The control unit must be removed from the ignition lock and the driver's key inserted on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.
- ▶ Refer to chapter "Performing emergency release of driver's key/control unit" on page 103.
- ▶ Make sure that the vehicle has sufficient lighting.

Towing the vehicle

- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: Put the gearshift lever in neutral.
- ▶ Vehicles with PDK: Move selector lever to position **N**. To properly engage selector-lever position **N** on the display and on the selector lever, start the engine once before towing the vehicle. The vehicle can be towed as soon as the selector lever is in position **N** and selector-lever position **N** appears on the display.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum speed of 50 km/h (30 mph). Do not exceed a maximum towing distance of 50 km (30 miles). For longer towing distances, the vehicle must be transported on a car transporter or a trailer.

Pulling out a vehicle stuck in snow, sand, etc.

- ▶ Always pull out the vehicle with the greatest care.
- ▶ Do not pull out the vehicle abruptly or at an angle.
- ▶ If possible, pull the vehicle out backwards in its own tracks.

Using a towing lug



Fig. 222: Towing lug at rear

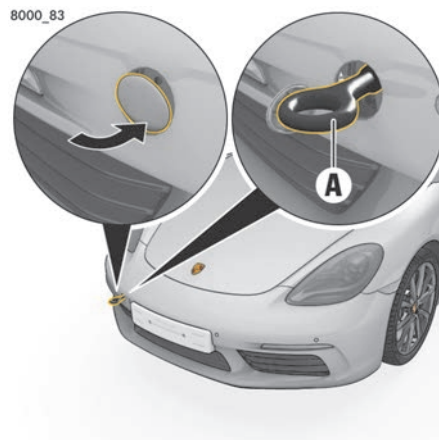


Fig. 223: Towing lug at front

Fitting the towing lug

The towing lug is stored in the tool kit.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound or tool kit” on page 140.
1. Press the lower edge on the front and the upper edge on the rear of the plastic cover into the bumper until it is released, or carefully release the plastic cover using a suitable object.
 2. Pull the plastic cover out of the bumper and let it hang by its thread.
 3. Screw the towing lug **A** in anti-clockwise as far as it will go (left-hand thread) and tighten hand-tight.

Removing the towing lug

1. Screw out towing lug **A** clockwise (left-hand thread).
2. Insert the front of the plastic cover into the lower edge and the rear into the upper edge of the opening.
3. Fold in the plastic cover and press on the edge until it engages in the bumper.
4. Store the towing lug in the tool kit.

Transporting the vehicle on car trains, ferries and car transporters

- ▶ Tie the vehicle down only at its wheels.
- ▶ Deactivate interior surveillance and the inclination sensor.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Switching off interior surveillance and inclination sensor” on page 47.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Transmission

Driving with manual transmission

8000_51

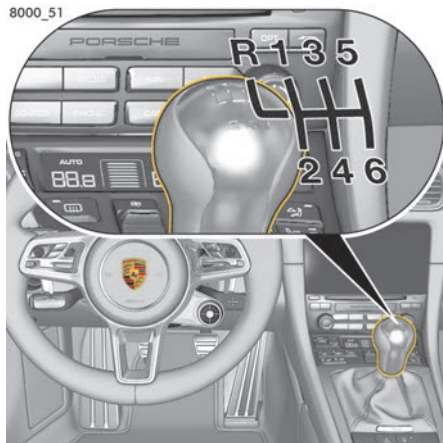


Fig. 224: Shift pattern on gear lever



WARNING

Blocked pedals

Unsuitable or improperly secured floor mats or objects can restrict pedal travel or hinder pedal operation.

- ▶ Do not obstruct the pedal travel with floor mats or other objects.
- ▶ When changing gears, always ensure that the clutch pedal is fully depressed and the gear has engaged fully.
- ▶ Select an appropriately low gear on upward and downward slopes. This will ensure optimum use of engine power and engine braking

Shifting the transmission to neutral

The neutral position of the transmission is between 3rd and 4th gear.

Engaging reverse gear

- ▶ Select reverse gear only when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ Reverse gear can be engaged after moving the gearshift lever to the left past the stop. When reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on, the reversing lights come on.

Displaying engaged gear

The gear display **B** in the tachometer indicates the currently engaged gear.

Driving with upshift prompt

8000_88



Fig. 225: Upshift indicator **A** and gear indicator **B**
The consumption-orientated upshift indicator **A** helps the driver develop a fuel-saving driving style.

The upshift indicator lights up – prompting you to shift up to the next-higher gear – depending on the selected gear, engine speed and accelerator pedal position.

- ▶ Change to the next-higher gear when the upshift indicator lights up.

Observing permitted engine speed

- ▶ Change into a higher gear or ease off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red mark on the tachometer.

If the red zone is reached during acceleration, fuel feed is interrupted.

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage (overrevving) when shifting down to a lower gear.

- ▶ Take care not to exceed the maximum permitted engine speed when shifting down.

Driving with Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)

Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) is a seven-speed transmission with an automatic and a manual selection mode.

In **automatic selection mode** (selector-lever position **D**), gear changing is automatic.

You can change temporarily from automatic to manual mode using the shift paddles on the steering wheel.

In **manual selection mode** (selector-lever position **M**), you can change gear using the selector lever or the shift paddles on the steering wheel. You can change between selector-lever positions **D** and **M** as you wish while driving.

- ▶ Take care not to operate the shift paddles on the steering wheel inadvertently in either automatic or manual mode, thereby triggering unintentional gear changes.

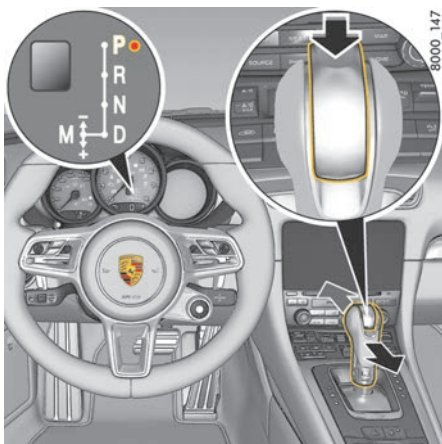


Fig. 226: Changing the selector-lever position

Changing the selector-lever position

The selector lever is blocked in the **P** position when the ignition is switched off.

When the ignition is switched on, the selector lever can be moved from position **P** and **N** only when the release button is pressed, and when the brake pedal is actuated.

Release button

The release button (**arrow**) in the selector lever prevents the gear from being changed unintentionally.

The release button must be pressed when shifting to position **R** or **P**.

Starting the engine

The engine can be started only if the brake pedal is actuated and the selector lever is in position **P** or **N**.

Driving off in the vehicle

- ▶ Only select the desired position for driving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) when the engine is idling and the brake pedal is pressed.
- ▶ Since the vehicle crawls when in gear, only release the brake if you intend to drive off.

Driving off on hills

The Drive-Off Assistant assists the driver when driving off on hills. The vehicle is held on the slope for a short time during the change from the brake pedal to the accelerator to facilitate driving off immediately after the brake is released.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "HOLD Function: Drive-Off Assistant, Standstill Management" on page 122.

Stopping vehicle

- ▶ For a brief stop (e.g. at a traffic light), leave the selector lever in drive position and hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.
- ▶ Do not hold the vehicle on a slope using the accelerator. Use the brake pedal or the electric parking brake instead.
- ▶ Before leaving the vehicle, always apply the electric parking brake and move the selector lever to position **P**.

Parking vehicle

- ▶ Go easy on the accelerator.
- ▶ When parking or manoeuvring in a small space, control the speed by careful use of the footbrake.



Fig. 227: Indicator for selector-lever position and engaged gear

Reading indicator for selector-lever position and engaged gear

When the engine is running, the display shows the selector-lever position and engaged gear.

If the selector lever is between two positions, the corresponding selector-lever position flashes and a warning appears on the multi-function display.

Action required:

- ▶ Operate the footbrake and engage the selector lever properly.

If the selector lever is inadvertently moved from **P** or **N** into a gear (due to a fault or improper use) without pressing the brake, this gear will also flash on the display and no power transmission will occur.

- ▶ To drive off, press the brake and move the selector lever from **P** or **N** into the required gear again.

Selector-lever position R or D flashes in the instrument panel

No power transmission occurs.

Effects:

- The selector lever was engaged without the footbrake being depressed.
- The selector lever was moved to **R** above the permissible limit speed.

Action required:

- ▶ Press the footbrake and engage the required selector-lever position again from **P** or **N**.

Selector-lever positions

P – Parking lock

- ▶ Engage parking lock only when the vehicle is stationary.

If selector-lever position **P** is flashing, the parking lock is not engaged. The vehicle can roll away.

Shift again from selector-lever position **R** to **P**.

Vehicles without Porsche Entry & Drive:

The driver's key can be removed only in selector-lever position **P**.

R – Reverse gear

- ▶ Select only if the vehicle is stationary and the brake is applied.

N – Neutral

Selector lever position **N** must be selected for towing or in car washes, for example.

- ▶ Only select the desired position for driving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) when the engine is idling and the brake pedal is actuated.

D – Automatic selection mode

- ▶ Engage selector lever position **D** for “normal” driving.

The gears are shifted automatically according to the accelerator position and speed.

Information

You can change temporarily from automatic selection mode **D** to manual mode **M** using the shift buttons on the steering wheel.

For example, in the following cases:

- Shifting down before bends
- Shifting down on downward slopes (engine braking)
- Shifting down for brief spurts of acceleration

The manual selection mode is maintained in the following cases:

- Overrun
- Stationary vehicle, e.g. at a junction

The system leaves manual selection mode in the following cases:

- Automatically after approx. 6 seconds (unless overrunning)
- After driving off

M – Manual selection mode

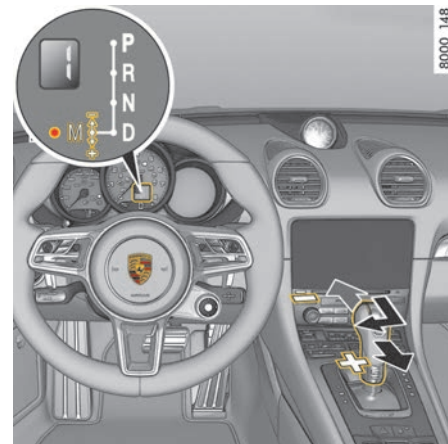


Fig. 228: Manual selection mode

- ▶ Push selector lever from **D** to **M** position. The currently engaged gear is retained when you change from **D** to **M**. If you change from **M** to **D**, the gear-changing map suitable for your current driving style is selected and the appropriate gear is selected.



Fig. 229: Steering wheel with shift paddles

Shifting up using the selector lever or the right “+” shift paddle

- ▶ Pull selector lever or right shift paddle.

Shifting down using the selector lever or the left “-” shift paddle

- ▶ Press selector lever forward or pull left shift paddle.

Shift to N – Neutral using the shift paddles

- ▶ Pull both shift paddles simultaneously and release them again immediately. The transmission shifts to **N** – Neutral. The vehicle rolls with the engine disengaged and at idle speed without engine braking effect. The number in the gear indicator goes out and the selector lever position flashes.

Pulling one of the shift paddles or actuating the selector lever engages a gear again.

Upshift prompt for fuel-economy-optimised driving

The consumption-orientated upshift indicator **A** helps the driver develop a fuel-saving driving style. The upshift indicator lights up – prompting you to shift up to the next-higher gear – depending on the selected gear, engine speed and accelerator pedal position.

- ▶ Change to the next-higher gear when the upshift indicator lights up.



Fig. 230: Upshift indicator **A**

Actuating kickdown function

The kickdown function is active in selector-lever position **D**.

- ▶ For optimum acceleration, e.g. when overtaking, quickly press the accelerator pedal down as far as it will go (kickdown). The transmission shifts down depending on the speed of travel and engine speed. Upshifts occur at the highest possible engine speeds.

Driving in coasting mode

Coasting refers a vehicle driving with the engine disengaged at idle speed without engine braking. Designed to increase efficiency and driving comfort, this standard function is activated automatically. Coasting occurs when the accelerator pedal is released completely in the normal way. When the accelerator pedal is pressed to accelerate the vehicle, the engine is engaged again quickly and smoothly and coasting stops.

Preconditions for automatic coasting mode

- ✓ Driving in selector lever position **D**.
- ✓ Cruise control is not active.
- ✓ Engine, transmission and battery are at operating temperature.
- ✓ No severe uphill or downhill gradients.

Initiating coasting mode manually

Depending on the traffic, coasting can be initiated manually and selectively through attentive driving to increase efficiency. To do this, shift up manually beyond the highest possible gear using the shift paddle or the selector lever.

The same applies for the active use of the engine brake, for example, when driving up to the vehicle in front or a red traffic light. The efficient trailing throttle fuel cutoff on the engine can be activated by braking more heavily or actuating the shift paddles or selector lever.

Driving off with Launch Control

- ✓ Vehicles with PDK.

Launch Control achieves maximum acceleration from a standstill.



WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle or endangering other road users

In certain circumstances (poor road conditions, lack of attention, etc.) you may lose control of the vehicle or endanger other road users.

- ▶ Only use Launch Control on public roads if road and traffic conditions permit.
- ▶ Do not endanger other road users when driving off with the Launch Control.



Information

Stress on components increases dramatically when starting with maximum acceleration in comparison with normal driving off.

- ✓ Engine at operating temperature.
 - ✓ SPORT PLUS mode activated.
1. Press the brake with your left foot.
 2. Quickly press down the accelerator as far as it goes and hold it down.
The engine speed will level off above approx. 6,000 rpm.
A message indicating that LAUNCH CONTROL is active appears on the multi-function display.
 3. Release the brake within a few seconds.

Transmission and Chassis Control Systems

System/designation	Scope	Page
PSM Porsche Stability Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Driving stability control – Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) – Brake system prefilling – Brake booster (Hydraulic Brake Assist) – Automatic Brake Differential (ABD) – Anti-slip Regulation (ASR) – Engine drag torque control (MSR) – Steering torque pulse – HOLD function: Drive-Off Assistant on vehicles with manual transmission, standstill management on vehicles with PDK 	195
PASM Porsche Active Suspension Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Shock absorber system with adaptive, continuous damper control 	191
PADM Porsche Active Drivetrain Mount	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Dynamic engine mountings automatically minimise perceptible vibration and vibration of the entire drivetrain. – When SPORT mode is switched on, a more rigid drivetrain/body connection is achieved for a sporty driving style. – When SPORT PLUS mode is switched on, an optimal drivetrain/body connection is achieved for driving on racetracks. 	–
PTV Porsche Torque Vectoring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Laterally dynamic braking intervention for more agile cornering – Rear differential lock with fixed asymmetrical locking ratio 	–

Tyres and Wheels

In addition to correct tyre pressure and correct chassis setup, the service life of tyres also depends on driving style.

Abrupt acceleration, high cornering speeds and heavy braking increase tyre wear. The tyre wear is also greater at higher outside temperatures and on rough road surfaces.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Before driving on race circuits” on page 15.

Maintaining load and speed

- ▶ Drive at the appropriate speed.
- ▶ Do not overload the vehicle.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Weights” on page 309.

Checking tyre pressure

NOTICE

Insufficient tyre pressure can cause tyres to overheat and thus be damaged – even invisibly.

- ▶ Hidden tyre damage is not eliminated by subsequently correcting the tyre pressure.
- ▶ Never let air out of hot tyres. When tyres are warm, the tyre pressure is increased. This could cause the tyre pressure to fall below the prescribed value.



Fig. 231: Tyre pressure plate at the door sill area

The tyre pressure must match the prescribed value. The tyre pressure is specified on the plate at the door sill area on the driver's side (Fig. 231) and in the “Technical Data” on Page 313. These values are for cold tyres (20 °C).

- ▶ Check the tyre pressure at least every 2 weeks when tyres are cold.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “TPM menu (TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)” on page 162.

Inflating tyres

⚠ CAUTION

Hot filler hose

The compressor's filler hose can become hot during the inflation process and cause burns.

- ▶ Wear gloves.

The compressor is located under the cover in the front luggage compartment.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Removing and stowing tyre filling compressor” on page 141.
- ▷ Follow the operating instructions on the compressor.

1. Screw the compressor's filler hose onto the tyre valve.
2. Connect the compressor to a plug socket in the vehicle and switch on the compressor. The tyre is inflated.
3. Check inflation pressure with the pressure gauge. Then reduce tyre pressure or add more air if necessary. Check the inflation pressure again.
4. Switch off compressor.
5. Unscrew the compressor's filling hose.

i Information

Tyre pressure can also be checked at petrol stations and the tyres can be inflated there.

Reducing inflation pressure

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Open air bleed screw on the filling hose until the correct inflation pressure is achieved.

Reading off inscription on tyres

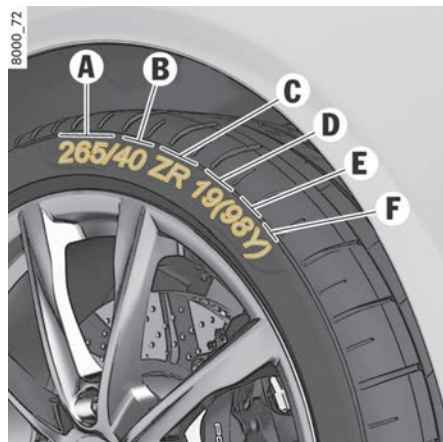


Fig. 232: Inscription on tyres

- A** Nominal width in mm
- B** Cross-section ratio in %
- C** Belt type code letter
- D** Rim diameter in inches
- E** Load rating code number
- F** Speed code letter

The speed code letter **F** indicates the maximum permitted speed for the tyre.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| H up to 210 km/h (130 mph) | V up to 240 km/h (150 mph) |
| W up to 270 km/h (168 mph) | Y up to 300 km/h (186 mph) |
- (Y)** up to 300 km/h (186 mph) as for Y tyres. Speeds of more than 300 km/h (186 mph) are also possible at a maximum tyre load capacity of 85 % (confirmation from tyre manufacturer required for speeds of more than 300 km/h (186 mph)).

Reading off inscription on wheel

The information is inscribed on the back of the spokes near the tyre valve.



Fig. 233: Inscription on wheel

- A** Rim width in inches
- B** Rim-flange contour code letter
- C** Symbol for drop-centre rim
- D** Rim diameter in inches
- E** Double hump
- F** Rim offset in mm

Identifying tyre damage

⚠ WARNING Hidden tyre damage and damage to rim flange

Tyre damage can lead to tyres bursting, especially at high speeds.

- ▶ Check tyres, including the sidewalls, regularly for foreign bodies, nicks, cuts, cracks and bulges.
- ▶ Cross kerb edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Avoid heavy or sharp-angled impacts against steep and sharp kerbs or against sharp-edged objects (e.g. stones).
- ▶ If in doubt, have the wheel – particularly the inner side – checked by an expert. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Tyres must never be repaired under any circumstances. Sealing the tyre with the tyre sealant is only an emergency solution so you can drive to the nearest workshop.

In the case of the following tyre damage, the tyre must be replaced for safety reasons:

- Tyre damage where the possibility of a ply fracture cannot be ruled out.
- If the tyre has been thermally and mechanically overloaded following a loss of pressure or other previous damage.

Replacing tyres and wheels

- ▶ Switch off the ignition when changing a wheel.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient grip

In the initial period, tyres do not have their full traction.

- ▶ During the first 200 km (125 miles), run in new tyres only at a moderate speed to extend the service life of the tyres and ensure maximum performance.

- ▶ Basically, only tyres of the same make and with the same specification number (e.g. "N0", "N1" etc.) can be fitted.
- ▶ Before having new tyres fitted, find out about the current approval status: Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ Only use tyre makes that have been tested and approved by Porsche.
- ▶ The deviation in tread depth on an axle must not be more than 30 %.
- ▶ Only use second-hand tyres if you know their history.
- ▶ Always replace both tyres on an axle to prevent different profile depths unnecessarily influencing the handling of the vehicle.
- ▶ Tyres should only be fitted by professionals. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Adapt your driving style to the changed vehicle handling.

i Information

New wheels must be fitted with tyre pressure sensors for Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM).

- ▶ Ensure that the wheels are compatible with the TPM system in the vehicle. For information on suitable wheels and TPM in the vehicle: Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ When changing a tyre, check the battery charge condition of the tyre pressure sensors: Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

i Information

If new tyres are fitted to only one axle, the different tread depths on the two axles can cause a marked change from the previous driving behaviour to which you have become accustomed. This is particularly true when new tyres are fitted to the rear axle. The effect is reduced continuously, however, as tyre mileage increases.

Checking and replacing valves and valve caps

- ▶ Only use genuine Porsche valves for Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM).
- ▶ Check the valves whenever the tyres are changed and replace them if necessary. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Without valve caps, the valve is not protected from dust and dirt and can therefore start to leak.

- ▶ To protect valve inserts from soiling, always screw on valve caps tightly. Soiled valve inserts can cause a gradual loss of air.
- ▶ Replace missing valve caps immediately.
- ▶ Use only plastic valve caps.

Using winter tyres

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permitted speed

Exceeding the maximum permitted speed can cause tyres to burst.

- ▶ Observe the maximum permitted speed for the tyre.
- ▶ Winter tyres with a maximum permitted speed rating that is lower than the specified maximum vehicle speed may only be fitted if they bear an M+S designation on the tyre sidewall. All-season and all-terrain tyres are also subject to speed limits and bear this marking.
- ▶ Affix a sticker showing the maximum permitted speed in the driver's field of vision. Observe country-specific laws.
- ▶ Setting the maximum permitted speed as the speed limit on the multi-function display:
 - ▷ Refer to chapter "Setting the speed limit" on page 161.
- ▶ Fit winter tyres in good time before the cold season begins.
- ▶ Only use tyre makes that have been tested and approved by Porsche.
- ▶ Before having new tyres fitted, find out about the current approval status: Contact your Porsche partner.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

i Information

At low temperatures, juddering noises caused by the tyres can occur while manoeuvring the vehicle or accelerating out of bends on both dry and wet road surfaces.

The driving performance and comfort of summer tyres deteriorate at temperatures below 7 °C. Porsche therefore recommends changing to winter tyres when temperatures fall below 7 °C. Extremely low temperatures of below -15 °C can cause permanent damage to summer tyres. Winter tyres are no longer suitable if their tread depth is less than 4 mm.

Using snow chains

- Snow chains can be fitted to the rear axle only, with the tyre/wheel combinations listed under “Technical data” and marked for snow chain use.
- ▶ Use only the snow chains approved by Porsche to guarantee sufficient clearance between the wheel well and the chain.
 - ▷ For information on approved snow chains: Refer to chapter “Wheels and tyres” on page 311.
 - ▶ Before fitting chains, remove accumulated ice and snow from the wheel well.
 - ▶ Observe the applicable national regulations regarding maximum speeds.

Checking tyre tread

- ▶ Check tyre tread regularly, particularly before and after long journeys.
- ▶ Most tyres have integrated wear indicators in the centre of the tread. These wear indicators are located in the main tread channels and display the minimum tread depth of 1.6 mm.

For safety reasons, replace the tyres **before** the wear indicators appear. Winter tyres are no longer suitable if their tread depth is less than 4 mm.

Measuring tyre tread depth

- ▶ Insert a commercially available tread depth gauge or calliper in the tyre tread and measure the tyre tread depth.

i Information

Unevenly worn tyres suggest a defect on the vehicle:

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Storing wheels

- ▶ Always store wheels in cool, dry and dark conditions. Tyres without rims should be stored in a standing position.
- ▶ Do not store summer tyres or park vehicles fitted with summer tyres at ambient temperatures below -15 °C.
- ▶ Avoid contact with petrol, oil and grease.
- ▶ Tyres must **not** be more than 6 years old. Chemical additives, which make the rubber in the tyre elastic, lose their effect over the course of time and the rubber becomes brittle. The age of a tyre can be seen from the DOT code on the tyre sidewall. If the last four numbers are 3015, for example, the tyre was manufactured in the 30th week of 2015.

Balancing wheels

As a precaution, have wheels with summer tyres balanced in the spring, and those with M+S tyres before winter.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Changing a wheel

⚠ WARNING Working under the vehicle

The vehicle can slip off the jack.

- ▶ Make sure that there is no one inside the vehicle when jacking it up and changing the wheel.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Never jack up the vehicle when it is parked on a surface that slopes up, down or to the side.
- ▶ Only use the jack to raise the vehicle when changing a wheel.
- ▶ Always place the vehicle on solid supports if work has to be carried out under the vehicle. The car jack is not suitable for this purpose.

i Information

The tools required for changing a wheel (jack, wheel bolt wrench, assembly aids, etc.) are not supplied as standard with the vehicle. For information on the necessary tools: Contact your Porsche partner.

i Information

The tyre and wheel sizes are different on each of the two axles.

When wheels are removed, mark the direction of rotation and position of each wheel and fit the wheels in accordance with this marking.

- ▶ Only use wheels/tyres with approved dimensions for the relevant axle.

Caring for wheel attachment faces

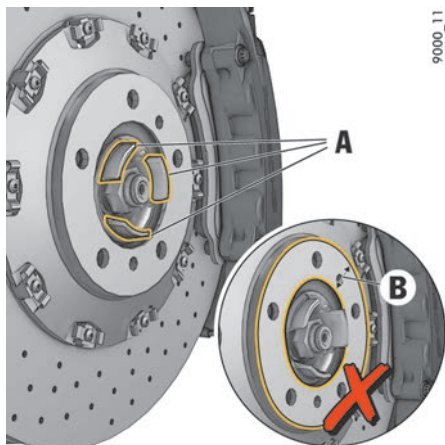


Fig. 234: Wheel attachment faces

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the wheel and wheel attachment face.

- ▶ The wheel attachment face **B** on the brake disc and on the wheel itself must **not** be greased.
 - ▶ Only the areas **A** may be greased. Grease these areas very thinly with Optimoly® TA: Contact your Porsche partner.
- Do not use any other grease or paste.

Caring for wheel bolts

- ▶ Always clean the wheel bolts before fitting.
- ▶ Wheel bolts must not be greased.
- ▶ Replace damaged wheel bolts. Only use genuine Porsche wheel bolts assigned especially to this model, or wheel bolts of similar quality which have been manufactured according to Porsche specifications and production requirements.
- ▶ Tighten wheel bolts with a tightening torque of 160 Nm (118 ftlb.).

Using security wheel bolts



Fig. 235: Adapter for security wheel bolts

The adapter for the security wheel bolts is in the tool kit.

- ▶ To loosen and tighten the wheel bolt with anti-theft protection, the adapter must be used between the wheel bolt and the wheel bolt wrench.
- ▶ When positioning the adapter, ensure that it engages fully in the teeth of the wheel bolt.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Changing a wheel

Preparing the vehicle

1. Engage 1st gear.
– or –
Move the selector lever to position **P**.
2. Actuate the electric parking brake.
3. Remove the driver's key.
Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: Remove control unit.
4. Secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g. by means of wedges under the wheels on the opposite side.
5. Slightly loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel to be changed.
6. Lift the vehicle only at the specified jacking points.
▷ Refer to chapter "Jack and Lifting Platform" on page 128.
7. Raise the vehicle until the wheel lifts off the ground.

Changing a wheel



Fig. 236: Assembly aid

1. For vehicles without PCCB: Remove wheel bolt **A** (Fig. 236).
– or –
For vehicles with PCCB: Remove wheel bolts **A** and **B** (Fig. 236).
2. Screw in assembly aid(s) instead of wheel bolts (Fig. 236).

NOTICE

If a wheel is not changed correctly, the brake discs may be damaged, particularly in vehicles with PCCB.

- ▶ When changing a wheel, screw in the assembly aids.

3. Remove the remaining wheel bolts.
4. Remove the wheel and fit a new wheel.
▷ Refer to chapter "Caring for wheel attachment faces" on page 261.
▷ Refer to chapter "Caring for wheel bolts" on page 261.
5. Insert wheel bolts and tighten in diagonally opposite sequence.
6. Remove assembly aids and screw in remaining wheel bolts.
Initially tighten wheel bolts only slightly in diagonally opposite sequence so that the wheel is centred.
7. Inflate the tyre if necessary.
▷ Refer to chapter "Tyre pressure" on page 313.
8. Lower the vehicle fully and remove the jack.
9. Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonally opposite sequence.

Immediately after changing a wheel, use a torque wrench to check the prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts (160 Nm/118 ftlb.).

i Information

Tyre Pressure Monitoring settings on the multi-function display must be updated after a wheel change.

- ▷ Refer to chapter "TPM menu (TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)" on page 162.

Vehicle Settings Using the Multi-Function Display

Different vehicle settings can be adjusted depending on the model, country and equipment. All available vehicle settings are listed here, but they are not available in all models, countries and equipment versions. For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

The vehicle settings remain stored after the ignition is switched off.

On vehicles with memory package, the settings can be stored on the memory buttons in the driver's door and on the driver's key.

- Refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 188.

Selection of options and activation of functions

- Refer to chapter "Operating multi-function display without multi-function steering wheel" on page 157.
- Refer to chapter "Operating multi-function display with multi-function steering wheel" on page 157.

A symbol positioned in front of an option indicates whether the option is selected or a function is activated.

Selecting one of several options

- Option is selected.
- Option is not selected.

Activating and deactivating functions

- Function is activated.
- Function is not activated.

Configuring vehicle settings via the PCM

Certain vehicle settings can also be configured via the PCM.

- ▶ **CAR** button ▶ **Set**  ▶
Vehicle settings

Adapting appearance of multi-function display

- Refer to chapter "Areas on the multi-function display" on page 158.

Adapting upper status area

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Upper line ▶ Residual range**

When the function is activated, the residual fuel range is displayed.

Adapting information area



Fig. 237: Example configuration of information area

- A** Field 1: Boost pressure
- B** Field 2: Coolant temperature
- C** Field 3: Engine oil temperature
- D** Field 4: Engine oil pressure

You can select four of the many items of vehicle information for display in fields 1, 2, 3 and 4. One item of vehicle information cannot be assigned to several areas.

B – Coolant temperature

Bar in left area – engine cold

- ▶ Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loading.

Bar in centre area – normal operating temperature

Pointer may move up to the red area when the engine is heavily loaded and outside temperature is high.

Bar in red area – operating temperature too high

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage.

If the coolant temperature is too high, the coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the maximum mark. A warning message indicating that the engine temperature is high appears on the multi-function display and the warning light lights up or flashes.

- ▶ If the red zone is reached, stop immediately in a suitable place and switch off the engine. Do not continue driving.
- ▶ Initiate measures to reduce the coolant temperature:
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

If the coolant level is low, warning messages may appear if the vehicle tilts at an extreme angle (e.g. steep slopes) or generates high lateral acceleration while travelling around long bends (e.g. driving in circles). If the warning messages do not disappear once the vehicle has assumed “normal” operating state, check the coolant level.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Checking coolant level and adding coolant” on page 95.

C – Engine oil temperature

A warning message appears on the multi-function display if the engine oil temperature is too high.

- ▶ Reduce engine speed and load immediately.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

D – Engine oil pressure

The oil pressure is controlled as required and should be at least 3.5 bar (51 psi) at an engine speed of 5,000 rpm.

The engine oil pressure varies depending on the engine speed, oil temperature and engine load.

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage.

If the oil pressure is too low, a warning message appears on the multi-function display.

- ▶ If the oil pressure is too low, stop immediately in a suitable place and switch off the engine. Do not continue driving.
- ▶ Initiate measures to increase the oil pressure:
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Vehicle menu ▶ Field 1 or Field 2 or Field 3 or Field 4**

2. Select the desired display contents:

- **Battery voltage**
- **Boost pressure**
- **Oil pressure:** Engine oil pressure
- **Oil temperature:** Engine oil temperature
- **Coolant temp.:** Coolant temperature
- **Fuel Range**
- **Dst: Arrival:** Arrival time and distance to destination or stop
- **Dst: Trip time:** Trip time and distance to destination or stop
- **Compass**
- **GPS altitude:** Height of vehicle above sea level
- **Time**
- **Date**
- **Station/Track:** current radio station or music track
- **Phone status:** network strength or network name
- **Blank line:** line remains empty

Adapting lower status area

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Lower line**

2. Select the desired display contents:

- **Time**
- **Temperature**
- **Time & Temp.**

Adapting the main menu

Certain items in the main menu can be hidden and shown as required.

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Menu scope

2. Select the desired display contents:

- Audio
- Phone
- Map
- Navigation
- Trip
- TPM
- Chrono
- Gear shift assist
- G-Force
- Speed limit
- ACC

Displaying PCM information temporarily on the multi-function display

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ PCM display

2. Select desired PCM information:

- **Map pop-up:** Navigation map appears automatically when navigation information is available.
- **Navi pop-up:** Navigation arrow appears automatically when navigation information is available.
- **Phone pop-up:** Information on incoming and outgoing calls is displayed.
- **Voice control:** Help text appears when the voice control button is pressed.
- **Speed limit:** Speed limit is displayed.

Information

On vehicles with a speed limit display, the **Speed limit** menu item is not shown and the speed limit is displayed automatically.

Adjusting brightness of multi-function display

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Brightness

2. Select the desired brightness.

Switch help texts for a menu item on and off

▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Help texts

When the function is active and a menu item is selected, help text is displayed for a few seconds.

Setting the date and time

The preset date and time displays are adopted in all displays on the vehicle.

Setting the time

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Date & Time ▶ Time ▶ Hour/Minute

2. Set the desired time.

Setting the time format

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Date & Time ▶ Time ▶ Format

2. Select desired time format:

- **12h:** 12-hour format
- **24h:** 24-hour format

Synchronising time automatically via GPS signal

▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Date & Time ▶ Time ▶ Autom. time

When the function is active, the time is synchronised via the GPS signal.

Information

If the time is configured to synchronise via the GPS signal, the time and date cannot be set manually. Some setting options may be temporarily unavailable, depending on satellite signal reception.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Displaying time in stopwatch on dashboard

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Date & Time ▶ Time - Chrono**

When the function is active, the time is displayed in the stopwatch on the dashboard.

Setting the date

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Date & Time ▶ Date ▶ Date**
2. Set the desired date.

Setting the date format

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Date & Time ▶ Date ▶ Format**
2. Select the desired date format:

- **DD.MM.YYYY**
- **MM/DD/YYYY**
- **YYYY/MM/DD**

Setting assistance systems

Information

The settings remain stored after the ignition is switched on and off.

Switching Porsche Active Safe (PAS) off and on

- ✓ Vehicles with adaptive cruise control (ACC).

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Assist. systems ▶ Active Safe (PAS) ▶ System on**

When the function is active, all Porsche Active Safe functions are switched on.



When all Porsche Active Safe functions are switched off, the grey symbol appears in the status area on the multi-function display.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Porsche Active Safe (PAS)” on page 39.

Prewarning prior to switching Porsche Active Safe (PAS) off and on

- ✓ Vehicles with adaptive cruise control (ACC).

Information

The latent warning and prewarning functions are switched off by default. The acute warning function is active and cannot be deactivated.

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Assist. systems ▶ Active Safe (PAS) ▶ Prewarning on**

When the function is active, the latent warning and prewarning for Porsche Active Safe are switched on.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Porsche Active Safe (PAS)” on page 39.

Switching Lane Change Assist (LCA) on and off

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Assist. Systems ▶ Lane Changing Assist ▶ System on**

When the function is active, the information and warning stage of the Lane Change Assist are switched on.

Setting display brightness of Lane Change Assist (LCA) on exterior mirror

i Information

The brightness of the warning indicator (information stage and warning stage) is adjusted automatically to the ambient brightness.

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Assist. systems ▶ Lane Changing Assist ▶ Brightness

2. Select the desired brightness.

- **Low**
- **Medium**
- **High**

The new brightness is displayed briefly during the setting process. This is the level of brightness displayed for the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage depends on the brightness of the information stage.


- ▶ Set the brightness of the information stage so that you can clearly see the warning indicator lighting up when you look in the exterior mirror, but are not distracted when looking straight ahead.
- ▶ Refer to chapter “Lane Change Assist (LCA)” on page 130.

Adjusting individual mode

Various vehicle settings can be adjusted in individual mode.

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Individual

2. Select the desired option:

- **Sport**: When the function is active, SPORT mode is activated.
- **Sport Plus**: When the function is active, SPORT Plus mode is activated.
- **(A)**: When the function is active, Auto Start Stop function is activated.
- **Sport chassis**: When the function is active, “Sport chassis” setup is activated.
- ****: When the function is active, sports exhaust system is activated.
- **Spoiler**: When the function is active, the rear wing is extended.

Adjusting lighting, windscreen wiper and mirror

Adjusting off delay of exterior lights for Welcome Home and Entry functions

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light & Visibility ▶ Exterior lights ▶ Fade-out

2. Set the desired off delay.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Switching on Automatic Coming Home lights” on page 136.

Converting headlights for left or right-hand traffic

- ✓ Vehicles with the Porsche Dynamic Light System (PDLS) or the Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus).
- ✓ Vehicle is stationary.

1. Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light & Visibility ▶ Exterior lights ▶ L/R driving

2. Select the desired option:

- **Standard**: Headlight position optimised for right-hand traffic on left-hand drive vehicles and left-hand traffic on right-hand vehicles.
- **Inverted**: Headlight position optimised for left-hand traffic on left-hand drive vehicles and right-hand traffic on right-hand vehicles.

i Information

If the headlight position is set to **Inverted**, a message indicating that the light has been converted appears each time the ignition or dipped beam headlights are switched on.

Activating and deactivating dynamic high beam

- ✓ Vehicles with Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus).

▶ Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light & Visibility ▶ Exterior lights ▶ Dyn. full beam

When the function is active, the dynamic high beam can be used.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Dynamic high beam” on page 137.

Activating or deactivating interior lights when the door is opened

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light & Visibility ▶ Interior lights ▶ when opening door**

When the function is active, the interior lights switch on when the door is opened.

Adjusting brightness of orientation lighting

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light & Visibility ▶ Interior lights ▶ Orientation**
2. Select the desired brightness.

Adjusting brightness of ambient lighting

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light/Visibility ▶ Interior lights ▶ Ambient light**
2. Select the desired brightness.

Setting interior lighting off delay

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light/Visibility ▶ Inside light ▶ Fade-out**
2. Set the desired off delay.

Setting activation of the rear wiper when reverse gear is engaged

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light & Visibility ▶ Wiper ▶ Rear wiper**
2. Select the desired option:

- **Automatic:** The rear wiper performs a series of wipes automatically when it is raining and reverse gear is engaged.
- **Manual:** The rear wiper is not activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Lowering exterior mirror on passenger's side when engaging reverse gear

✓ Vehicles with memory package.

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Light & Visibility ▶ Reversing options ▶ Lowering mirr.**

When the function is active, the exterior mirror on the passenger's side is lowered when reverse gear is engaged.

Changing button assignment on multi-function steering wheel

The \diamond button on the multi-function steering wheel can be individually assigned the desired functions in the multi-function display and PCM.

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Steering wheel op. ▶ \diamond key ▶ PCM function or Cluster function**
2. Select the desired option:

PCM function:

- **Source change:** Change audio source
- **Voice control:** Activate voice control
- **Repeat instr.:** Repeat voice instruction from the navigation system
- **Station/track <:** Select previous radio station or track
- **Station/track >:** Select next radio station or track
- **Map:** Display navigation map in PCM

Cluster function:

- **Start/Stop Chr.:** Start or stop timing
- **Vehicle menu:** Display Vehicle menu
- **Audio menu:** Display Audio menu
- **Phone menu:** Display telephone menu
- **Map menu:** Display navigation map on the multi-function display
- **Navi menu:** Display navigation menu
- **Trip menu:** Display Trip menu
- **TPM menu:** Display TPM menu
- **Chrono menu:** Display Sport Chrono menu
- **ACC menu:** Display ACC menu
- **G-force menu:** Display G-force menu
- **Gear shift assist:** Display gear shift assist
- **Speed limit menu:** Display traffic signs

Information

The speed limit menu item does not appear on vehicles with speed limit display. The speed limit is displayed automatically.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Speed Limit Display” on page 221.

Setting door locking options

Setting door unlocking

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Locking ▶ Door unlock**

2. Select the desired option:

- **All doors:** All doors are unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked.
- **Driver's door:** The driver's door is unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked.

Setting door locking

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Locking ▶ Door lock**

2. Select the desired option:

- **Off:** The doors are not locked automatically after entering the vehicle.
- **After ignition on:** The doors are locked automatically when the ignition is switched on.
- **After driveway:** The doors are locked automatically after driving off.

Switching automatic folding of exterior mirrors off and on

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Locking ▶ Mirror retract**

When the function is active, the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Switching Easy Entry off and on

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Locking ▶ Comfort Entry**

When the function is active, the driver's seat moves back and the steering wheel moves up to make it easier to get in and out of the vehicle.

Switching auto memory on and off

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Locking ▶ Auto memory**

When this function is active, the personal settings are stored automatically on the driver's key when locking the vehicle.

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Storing and retrieving personal settings" on page 189.

Setting air conditioning

- ✓ (on vehicles with 2-zone air conditioning)

Adjusting strength of air flow and air quantity

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Air conditioning ▶ Air flow**

2. Select the desired option:

- **Soft:** Recommended for passengers sensitive to draughts with a preference for gentle air conditioning.
- **Normal:** Default setting.
- **Strong:** Stronger ventilation in the passenger compartment. The air flow is clearly noticeable.

Switching upper ventilation panel on and off

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Air conditioning ▶ Vent. panel**

When the function is active, the upper ventilation panel on the dashboard is switched on.

Switching automatic air circulation mode on/off

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Air conditioning ▶ Auto air circ.**

When the function is active, the fresh air supply is adjusted depending on the air quality.

Adjusting volume of warning tones and ParkAssist

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Volume ▶ ParkAssist or Warn. tones**

2. Select the desired option:

- **Loud**
- **Medium**
- **Low**

Setting units

Setting speedometer units

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Units ▶ Speedometer**

2. Select the desired option:

- km / km/h
- Miles / mph

Information

The unit is adjusted in the following displays:

- Total distance and trip displays
- Digital speedometer
- Multi-function display
- PCM

Setting unit for temperature gauges

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Units ▶ Temperature**

2. Select the desired option:

- °C
- °F

Information

The unit is adjusted in the following displays:

- Multi-function display
- PCM

Setting unit for pressure gauges

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Units ▶ Pressure**

2. Select the desired option:

- bar
- psi

Information

The unit is adjusted in the following displays:

- Multi-function display
- PCM

Setting unit for fuel consumption display

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Units ▶ Consumption**

2. Select the desired option:

- l/100 km
- mpg (US)
- mpg (UK)
- km/l

Information

The unit is adjusted in the following displays:

- Multi-function display
- PCM

Changing the language

1. **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Language**

2. Select the desired language.

Information

The language is adjusted in the multi-function display.

Setting Porsche Car Connect

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Car Connect ▶ Privacy**

When the function is active, communication between the vehicle and Porsche Car Connect app is suppressed. No vehicle-specific information is transmitted to the Porsche Car Connect app. This means that no vehicle settings can be configured using the app.

If there is no active contract for the vehicle, the **Car Connect** menu item is greyed out.

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Porsche Car Connect” on page 192.

Visit www.porsche.com/connect or consult a Porsche partner for further information.

Information

Even when the **Privacy** function is activated, location information for the vehicle is transmitted if the vehicle breaks down, if you make an emergency call or if the vehicle is stolen.

- ▶ Please inform all individuals using the vehicle that the **Privacy** function can be deactivated.

Resetting to factory settings

Information

Resetting to the factory settings deletes **all** settings made in the multi-function display.

- ▶ **Vehicle ▶ Settings ▶ Resetting ▶ Fact. settings ▶ Yes**

Voice Control

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accidents

In emergency situations, do not use voice control as your voice may change in stressful situations. This can lead to the desired telephone connection failing or not being established quickly enough under certain circumstances.

- ▶ Dial the emergency number via the PCM.

Various functions in the **PHONE**, **TUNER**, **NAV** and **MEDIA** main menus can be called up via voice command. Voice control adjusts to the speaker and starts learning from the first dialogue.

- ▶ Examples of voice commands from page 274.

i Information

- The **Sound** and **CAR** main menus cannot be operated via voice control.
- Voice control does not support all system languages.

i Information

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Refer to chapter “Operating the Porsche Communication Management (PCM)” on page 176.

Calling up voice control

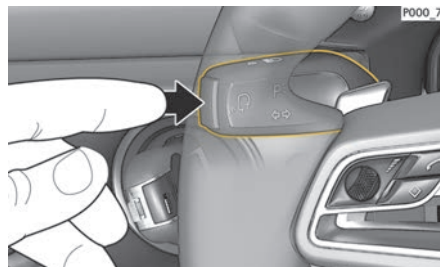



Fig. 238: Voice control button on the control stalk

Activating voice control

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
 - ✓ No telephone call is in progress.
 - ✓ Parking assistant is not active.
1. Press **VOC** on the control stalk (Fig. 238).
A rising acoustic signal sounds and the icon  for voice control appears in the PCM.
 2. Say the voice command.

Deactivating voice control

- ✓ Voice control is active.
- ▶ Press **VOC** on the control stalk (Fig. 238).
A fading acoustic signal sounds.
 - or –
 - ▶ Say the voice command **Cancel** or **End**.
 - or –
 - ▶ Press any button on the PCM.

Other functions of the voice control button

The **VOC** (Fig. 238) button on the control stalk initiates different functions depending on the application:

- Activates voice control of the PCM by a brief pressing.
- Activates the Siri® voice control system by a longer press.
 - ▶ Refer to chapter “Operating Apple® CarPlay using Siri® voice recognition” on page 49.
- Ends current announcements of the voice control.
- Skips to the next part of the announcement.
- Interrupts the current dialogue.


i Information

- Navigation announcements and traffic announcements are not given during a dialogue.
- With voice control active, list entries can be selected via voice control, via the rotary push button or via the touchscreen.
- If the spoken voice command is not understood or if it cannot be interpreted, voice control reacts with the question **Excuse me?** and the voice command can then be repeated. The PCM offers help after the second attempt.
- Depending on the selected menu language and the country that was set (using the **NAV** button ▶ Menu **Destination input**), destinations may have to be spelled out when inputting the destination.

To ensure smooth communication with voice control, pay attention to the following points:

- Speak clearly, distinctly and at normal volume. Speak louder when travelling at a higher speed.
- Emphasise voice commands evenly without long pauses.
- Do not speak if voice control is giving an announcement.
- Reduce disruptive sounds caused by closing doors, windows.
- Only the driver should operate voice control, as the hands-free microphone is pointed towards the driver's side.



Adjusting voice control

1. **CAR** button ▶ **Set**  ▶ **System** ▶ **Voice control**
2. Select the desired setting:


- **Short dialogue:** With the function active, the voice response involves short announcements.
- **Help texts:** When the function is active, commands that can be spoken are displayed.

Call up help

Calling up the Visual input assistance

1. Press  on the control stalk (Fig. 238 on page 271).
A list with sample commands is displayed in the PCM.
2. Select the  icon in the footer of the PCM.
3. To display sample commands in each main menu, select the icon or sample command of the relevant main menu in the PCM.

Information

If the **Help texts** function is deactivated, the visual input assistant can be displayed using the  icon in the headline.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Adjusting voice control” on page 272.

Calling up acoustic input assistance

- ✓ Voice control is active.
 - ▶ Say **Help**.
 - or –
 - Say **help on voice control**.
 - or –
 - Say, for example: **help tuner, help media**.
- Input assistance is given in each main menu.

Saying voice commands

Basically, there are three types of voice commands that can be given:

- Global voice commands
- General voice commands
- Dialogue-related voice commands

The displayed voice commands are a selection of all available commands. The system also recognises synonyms if there are any. For example, instead of saying **Call Smith** you can also say **Phone Smith** or **Dial Smith**.

- ▷ Examples of voice commands from page 274.

Saying global voice commands

All available voice commands that call up a specific function are global voice commands. Global voice commands can always be used regardless of the selected main menu. This allows the direct calling up of a function without having to switch to the corresponding main menu beforehand. If, for example, the **NAV** main menu is active and the voice command **Station** e.g. **Radio station XY** is said, the station mentioned is called up.

Examples of global voice commands:

- **Station** e.g. **Radio station XY**
- **Call** e.g. **Smith**

Saying general voice commands

General voice commands can be said at any point in the dialogue.

Examples of general voice commands:

- **New entry** Starts voice control again.
- **Correction:** If, for example, a telephone number was given in several blocks (e.g. 0711 911), voice command cancels the block given last.
- **Help:** Input assistance with possible voice commands is displayed.
- **Cancel:** The dialogue is aborted.

Saying dialogue-related voice commands

Dialogue-related voice commands are needed as soon as a dialogue is conducted with the PCM. For example, these include the following voice commands:

- **Line 1**
- **Next page/previous page**
- **Yes/No**

Use list by voice

Browse through a list

- ▶ To browse further/back through a list, say **Next page/previous page**.
 - or –
 - Using list via touchscreen or rotary push button

Saying a list entry

You can say blue list entries. Otherwise, list entries can be called up via the blue line numbers.

- ▶ Say the voice command **Line 1**.

Voice commands for radio

What do I want to do?	What should I say?	Note
Switch reception range	(Set/switch on) Tuner e.g. FM/AM/DAB	
Select a station	Select station	You can only say stations that can be currently received.
Tune to a station that can currently be received	Station e.g. Station XY (tune in)	You can only say stations that can be currently received.
Enter a frequency	Frequency e.g. 91.1 (select)	Directly selecting a frequency, if necessary, causes the reception range to change.
Call up help	Help on tuner	Acoustic help for the most important tuner functions.

Voice commands for media

What do I want to do?	What should I say?	Note
Change the media source	Select e.g. Disc/SD card/USB/AUX/Jukebox/Bluetooth	
Select an artist directly	Play artist e.g. Allan Taylor	You can only say artists/albums/tracks/genres available in the active media source.
Select an album directly	Play album e.g. Songs for the Road	
Select a track directly	Play track e.g. Let the Music Flow	
Select a genre directly	Play genre e.g. Rock	
Select music similar to what is now playing	Play more like this	
Call up help	Help on media	Acoustic help for the most important media functions.
Use natural voice commands	Example: I would like to listen to the jukebox I would like to listen to rock music	As an alternative to actual commands, the PCM can detect natural voice commands (not available in all languages).

Voice commands for telephone

- ✓ The telephone is connected to the PCM.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Telephone” on page 238.

What do I want to do?	What should I say?	Note
Open the redial feature	Redial	
Enter a phone number	Dial number	In the next step, the system asks for the telephone number.
Call voice mail	Call voice mail	
Call a stored contact	Call contact/display phonebook	In the next step, the system asks for the name of the contact.
Call up the call list	Call list/missed calls/incoming calls/dialled numbers	Voice commands lead to a global call list from which an entry can be selected or called.
Call a stored contact	Call e.g. Smith (mobile/private/business/general)	If the contact is not unique, the command leads to dialogue. You can say the first name, surname or both. A specific telephone number of the contact can also be selected.
Read out e-mails/text messages	Read out (new) e-mails/ (new) text messages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ The connected mobile phone supports the Bluetooth® Message Access Profile. ✓ An active data connection is available. ▷ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87. <p>These services are not available in all languages and markets.</p>

A	What do I want to do?	What should I say?	Note
B	Dictate text message/e-mail	Dictate text message/Dictate E-Mail	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ The connected mobile phone supports the Bluetooth® Message Access Profile. ✓ An active data connection is available. ▷ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87. <p>These services are not available in all languages and markets.</p>
C			
D			
E			
F	Call up help	Help on phone	Acoustic help for the most important telephone functions.
G			
H	Use natural voice commands	Example: I would like to call John Smith Call John Smith on the mobile phone Who called me? Dial the last number again	As an alternative to actual commands, the PCM can detect natural voice commands (not available in all languages).
I			
J			
K			

Voice commands for navigation

O	What do I want to do?	What should I say?	Note
P	Enter a new destination	Take me to e.g. London, Downing Street 10/ Enter address/Enter new destination	Depending on which country is selected, you can navigate by saying Take me to in one sentence or step by step.
Q			
R	Select previous destination	Recent destinations/Stored destinations	
S	Select home/work as the destination	Take me home/Take me to work	Navigation to the stored address starts. For information on how to save the address: ▷ Refer to chapter “Storing destination (favourite)” on page 170.
T			
U			
V	Search for a destination or point of interest	Search (point of interest) e.g. Porsche Service	You can say brand names or POI categories (e.g. find airport).
W			
X	Search for a destination online	Online search/Internet search	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ An active data connection is available. ▷ Refer to chapter “Connectivity” on page 87. <p>These services are not available in all languages and markets.</p>
Y			
Z			

What do I want to do?	What should I say?	Note
Select a country	Enter country/Change country	
Select a city	Enter city	
Search for a restaurant/rest area/toilet/cash machine/petrol station	Next restaurant/rest area/toilet/ATM/petrol station	Shows the respective search criterion nearby.
Start/stop route guidance	Start/stop route guidance	
Calculate remaining fuel	Range/fuel range/tank information	
Call up traffic information	Traffic info	✓ Route guidance is active.
Request arrival time	Are we there yet/arrival time	✓ Route guidance is active.
Calculate an alternative route/avoid traffic jam	Calculate alternative routes/avoid traffic jam	After alternative routes are calculated, you can make a choice, for example, via Route 2 or via the colour of the alternative route in the map display such as green .
Call up help	Help on navigation	Acoustic help for the most important navigation functions.
Use natural voice commands	Example: Take me to e.g. London, 10 Downing Street Take me to the nearest restaurant Take me home Where is the next petrol station? I have to refuel Show me the map Are there any traffic jams along the route?	As an alternative to actual commands, the PCM can detect natural voice commands (not available in all languages).

Warning and Information Messages

If a warning message appears, always refer to the corresponding chapters in this manual.

When certain warning lights come on, additional acoustic signals sound.

Warning messages only appear if all measurement prerequisites are met – all fluid levels should therefore be checked regularly.








Warning and information message categories

Red System failure or warning















Yellow Fault, system failure, information or instruction

White Fault, system failure, information or instruction

Safety

Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
 lights up	 Fasten seat belt	One or more seat belts are not fastened. ▶ Ensure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts.
	 Passenger airbag on/off	Passenger airbag is switched on or off.
	 Airbag indicator light fault Service necessary	Airbag warning light has failed. Possible to drive on. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Move steering wheel	Strain on the steering lock is too high. Possible to drive on. ▶ Relieve the steering lock by turning the steering wheel to the left or right.
	 Steering wheel locks with door locks	Steering lock is not active. ▶ Lock the vehicle to lock the steering wheel.
	 Power steering fail More effort needed Driving permitted	Power steering is not available. Possible to drive on. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Safety		
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	 Steering support limited Drive with caution	Power steering is temporarily limited. Possible to drive on. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 Brake fluid level Park vehicle safely	Brake fluid level is too low. ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 Brake distribution fault Park vehicle safely	Brake distribution is faulty. ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 Brake cooling defect	Brake temperature is too high. ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 ABS/PSM failure Drive with caution	ABS or Porsche Stability Management (PSM) has failed. Possible to drive on. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Change brake pads Driving permitted	Brake pads are worn. ▶ Have brake pads replaced immediately. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 flashes	 Emergency braking	Electric parking brake is in emergency braking function. Symbols go out after emergency braking.
 lights up	 Parking brake fault	Parking brake is faulty. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
















* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Safety







Instrument panel display

Multi-function display message

Meaning and action required













		Electric parking brake in service mode	Parking brake is in service mode. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 flashes		Release parking brake	Parking brake is active. ▶ Pull the electric parking brake switch. ▷ Refer to chapter "Electric parking brake" on page 63.
 lights up		Press brake pedal	Parking brake is active. ▶ Press the brake pedal when releasing the electric parking brake.
		Rain/light sensor failure Service necessary	Rain/light sensor is defective. ▶ Switch on windscreen wiper and light manually. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 flashes		Adaptive headlight control defective Service required	Cornering lights are defective. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up		Driving light control defective Service required	Driving light control is defective. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		Headlight range regulation defective Service required	Headlight range regulation is defective. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 flashes		Headlight control defective Service required	Headlight control defective. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		Example: Check front left indicator	Indicated light is defective. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		Full beam assist failure Operate full beam manually Service required	Full beam assistant fault. ▶ Actuate high beam manually. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.






Safety		
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	 <p>Full beam assist currently limited No camera view Clean if necessary</p>	<p>Full beam assistant temporarily not available due to camera fault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Clean the windscreen if necessary. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>PDLS+ currently limited, no camera vision Clean windscreen</p>	<p>Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus) temporarily not available due to camera fault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Clean the windscreen if necessary. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>PDLS+ fault Operate high beam manually Service required</p>	<p>Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus) fault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Side light on	Driving lights or parking lights on.
	Parking light on	Left or right parking light on.
	 <p>Wiper defective Consult dealer</p>	<p>Wiper is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 <p>Check tyres</p>	<p>Significant pressure loss in one or several tyres.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Check the indicated tyre for damage. ▶ Refer to chapter “Identifying tyre damage” on page 258. ▶ Add sealant if necessary. ▶ Refer to chapter “Flat Tyre” on page 110. ▶ Set the correct tyre pressure at the next opportunity. ▶ Refer to chapter “Inflating tyres” on page 257.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Safety

Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
 lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">Refill tyre</p>	Pressure loss in one or several tyres. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Set the correct tyre pressure at the next opportunity. ▷ Refer to chapter “Inflating tyres” on page 257.
 flashes or lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">Tyre pressure monitoring fault Service required</p>	Fault in Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system. Tyre pressure is not monitored. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 flashes or lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">Tyre pressure monitoring temporarily inactive</p>	Temporary fault in Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system. Tyre pressure is not monitored. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 flashes or lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">No monitoring of tyre pressure System learns over 25 km/h (16 mph)</p>	The Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system requires a certain amount of time to learn the wheels. During this time, the current tyre pressures are not available on the multi-function display. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Perform Tyre Pressure Monitoring again later.
 flashes or lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">Tyre change? Update settings</p>	After the wheels have been changed, the tyre settings must be updated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Update tyre settings in the multi-function display. ▷ Refer to chapter “TPM menu (TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)” on page 162.
 lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">Comfort pressure/ Tyre pressure Reduce speed</p>	Speed for set tyre inflation pressure has been exceeded. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Reduce speed. ▶ Set the correct tyre pressure at the next opportunity. ▷ Refer to chapter “Inflating tyres” on page 257.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Engine		
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	Oil level below minimum Refill oil immediately	<p>The minimum oil level has been exceeded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place and switch off the engine. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Check whether there is an obvious oil leak on or under the vehicle. Do not continue driving if there is an obvious oil leak. ▶ Select oil measurement on the multi-function display: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Refer to chapter “Measuring and displaying engine oil level” on page 160. ▶ Add engine oil if necessary. ▷ Refer to chapter “Selecting and topping up engine oil” on page 107.
	Oil level above maximum Consult dealer Driving permitted	<p>Engine oil level is above maximum.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Oil level measurement fault Consult dealer Driving permitted	<p>Oil level measurement failure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Minimum Oil level reached Refill oil	<p>Minimum oil level reached.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Top up engine oil. ▷ Refer to chapter “Selecting and topping up engine oil” on page 107.
	Oil level information currently unavailable	<p>Under certain circumstances, the oil level cannot be displayed. Causes of this include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Engine is cold. – Vehicle parked following full-load operation at high engine speeds. – Engine oil temperature too high. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Perform oil level measurement again. ▷ Refer to chapter “Measuring and displaying engine oil level” on page 160.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Engine

Instrument panel display

Multi-function display message

Meaning and action required



Oil pressure too low
Park vehicle safely

Engine oil pressure is too low.

- ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place and switch off the engine.
- ▶ Do not continue driving.
- ▶ Check whether there is an obvious oil leak on or under the vehicle.
- ▶ Select oil measurement on the multi-function display:
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Measuring and displaying engine oil level” on page 160.
- ▶ Add engine oil if necessary.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Selecting and topping up engine oil” on page 107.
- ▶ Do not continue driving if the warning message is displayed despite the oil level being correct.
- ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*



Oil pressure measurement fault
Driving permitted
Consult dealer

Oil pressure measurement failure.

Possible to drive on.

- ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*



Oil temperature too high
Reduce engine load

Engine oil temperature is too high.

- ▶ Stop in a suitable place, switch off the engine and let it cool down.
- ▶ Do not continue driving.
- ▶ Select oil measurement on the multi-function display:
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Measuring and displaying engine oil level” on page 160.
- ▶ Add engine oil if necessary.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Selecting and topping up engine oil” on page 107.








Oil temperature gauge fault
Consult dealer
Driving permitted

Engine oil temperature gauge faulty.

Possible to drive on.

- ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*







* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Engine		
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
Coolant display at maximum mark	 Refill coolant immediately Stop driving	Coolant level is too low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place, switch off the engine and let it cool down. ▶ Check coolant level and top up coolant if necessary. ▷ Refer to chapter “Checking coolant level and adding coolant” on page 95. If the fault persists: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Refill coolant Be careful of engine temperature	Coolant level is low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Check coolant level and top up coolant if necessary. ▷ Refer to chapter “Checking coolant level and adding coolant” on page 95. If the fault persists: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
Coolant or engine oil temperature display at maximum mark	 Engine over temp. Park vehicle to cool down	Coolant or engine oil temperature is too high. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place, switch off the engine and let it cool down. ▶ Check the radiators and air guides in and around the vehicle for obstructions. ▶ Check coolant and engine oil level: ▷ Refer to chapter “Checking coolant level and adding coolant” on page 95. ▷ Refer to chapter “Measuring and displaying engine oil level” on page 160. ▶ Top up coolant or engine oil if necessary. If the fault persists: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Coolant temp. gauge fault Driving permitted Consult dealer	Coolant temperature gauge failure. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Cooling system fault Consult dealer Service required	Cooling system fault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*









* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Engine








Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	 <p>Engine fan failure Avoid full engine load Driving permitted</p>	<p>Engine-compartment blower failure. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*</p>
	 <p>Reduced power Driving permitted Consult dealer</p>	<p>Engine power is reduced. Possible to drive on. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*</p>
	 <p>Engine control fault Consult dealer Driving permitted</p>	<p>Engine control system is faulty. Possible to drive on. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*</p>
<p>Warning light on the coolant temperature gauge flashes</p>	 <p>Engine control system fault</p>	<p>Engine control system is faulty. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*</p>

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.










Vehicle		
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	Alternator fault Park vehicle safely	Generator fault. ▶ Stop in a suitable place and switch off the engine. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Battery function limited Consult dealer	Battery function is restricted. Possible to drive on. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Low battery Start engine and run for extended period	Battery charge is too low. ▶ Start the engine so that the battery can be charged.
	Low battery Power consumption limited	Battery charge is too low. Power supply to comfort features is deactivated to avoid running down the battery. Possible to drive on.
	Battery protection was active during parking	Battery protection is or was active. Consumers were deactivated when stationary to avoid running down the battery. Possible to drive on.
	Battery discharge protection active Capacity xx %	Battery discharging protection is or was active. Consumers were deactivated in vehicle to avoid running down the battery. Possible to drive on. ▶ Observe battery capacity. Charge the battery if necessary. ▶ Refer to chapter "Charging the battery" on page 61.
	Recharge battery Take care of polarity	Battery charge is too low. ▶ Charge the battery. ▶ Refer to chapter "Charging the battery" on page 61.
	Please start engine manually	▶ Start engine manually at the ignition.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z











Vehicle			
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required	
Selector-lever position display flashes		Engage gear selector properly	<p>Vehicles with PDK: Selector lever may be positioned between two settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Engage selector lever properly.
		Move gear lever to position P	<p>Vehicles with PDK: Move gear lever to position P before removing driver's key or stopping and securing the vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Move gear lever to position P.
		Move gear lever to P or N	<p>Vehicles with PDK: Engine can only be started in selector-lever position P or N.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Move gear lever to P or N.
		Press brake	<p>Vehicles with PDK: Start possible only when brake pedal is pressed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Apply the footbrake when starting.
Selector-lever position display flashes		Gearbox failure Park vehicle safely	<p>Vehicles with PDK: Transmission failure. Selector-lever position is no longer displayed on the instrument panel. Vehicle can be driven only until it comes to a stop. Do not continue driving.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place. ▶ Have the vehicle towed to a qualified specialist workshop. ▶ Refer to chapter "Towing and Tow-Starting" on page 249.
		Gearbox is overheating Park vehicle to cool down	<p>Vehicles with PDK: Transmission temperature is too high.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place and let the transmission cool down. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
Selector-lever position display flashes		Possible R gear fault Driving permitted	<p>Vehicles with PDK: Transmission fault. Reverse gear may not function. Possible to continue driving with restricted gearshift comfort.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.









Vehicle Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	Gearbox temperature too high Reduce engine load	Vehicles with PDK: Transmission temperature is too high. Possible to drive on. "Warning jerks" can be felt when driving off and the engine power may be restricted. ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Reduce engine load. ▶ Do not hold the vehicle with the accelerator; use the brakes instead. ▶ Allow the engine to run in selector-lever position P or N until the warning disappears.
	Press clutch pedal	Vehicles with manual transmission: Start possible only when clutch pedal is pressed. ▶ Press the clutch pedal when starting.
	VTS armed, enter code and acknowledge	Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS) is activated. ▶ To deactivate PVTS (Porsche Vehicle Tracking System), enter and confirm your code using the numeric keys on the Remote Keypad.
	VTS stepped-up, enter code within X minutes	Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS) is activated. ▶ To deactivate PVTS (Porsche Vehicle Tracking System), enter and confirm your code using the numeric keys on the Remote Keypad.
	Theft attempt recognized, VTS alarm active	Attempted theft detected. ▶ Contact control centre.
	Remote Keypad battery empty, please replace	Remote Keypad battery is running low. ▶ Change the battery.
	Emergency call activated	An emergency call activated via the vehicle was confirmed by the SOC.
	Emergency call fault Consult dealer	Emergency call function is faulty. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop. *
	Emergency call failed	It was not possible to transfer an emergency call activated via the vehicle to the SOC.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.




A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Vehicle	Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	Emergency call service contract expired	The service contract for the emergency call service has expired and can be extended in the Porsche Service portal.	
	Driver Card not recognised	Driver card was not detected. ▶ Activate driver card again using the key. ▶ Contact control centre if necessary.	
	Driver Card battery empty, please replace	Driver card battery is running low. ▶ Change the battery.	
	Outside temp. display defective Service necessary	Outside temperature indicator defective. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*	
	Spoiler failure Reduce speed	Driving stability is impaired. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*	
	Decrease speed Move roof cover to end position	▶ Open or close convertible top fully.	
	Roof cover in service position Car not ready	Convertible top is in service position. ▶ Exit service position.	
	Convertible hood is opening/closing	Message goes out in end position.	
	Roof control fault Service necessary	▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*	
	Example: Service in xxx km	▶ Bring the vehicle in for service no later than after the distance or time shown has elapsed.	
















* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Vehicle		
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
Fuel gauge warning light on	 Please refuel	Fuel tank is empty. ▶ Refuel at the next opportunity. ▷ Refer to chapter "Refuelling" on page 209.
	 Fuel gauge fault Service necessary	Fuel gauge fault. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Doors/rear hood open	▶ Close vehicle door or cover indicated.
	 Refill washer fluid	Washer fluid is empty. ▶ Refill washer fluid. ▷ Refer to chapter "Washer Fluid" on page 297.
	 Porsche Entry&Drive fault	Porsche Entry & Drive fault. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Key not found or key fault Change key position	Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: Key position fault. ▶ Carry driver's key or change key position.
	 Remove key from boot	Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: Key is located in the luggage compartment. ▶ Retrieve key from luggage compartment.
	 Multiple keys recognised in vehicle	Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: Several driver's keys in the vehicle, e.g. in possession of passenger.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Vehicle		
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	 <p>Replace ignition key battery</p>	<p>Battery in the driver's key is flat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Replace battery. ▷ Refer to chapter "Replacing battery in driver's key" on page 102.
	 <p>Remove key from ignition</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Remove the ignition key.
	 <p>Operating part: turn left, pull off, insert key</p>	<p>Vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive: No key detected in vehicle. Ignition cannot be switched on and engine cannot be started.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Turn control unit back to ignition lock position 0 and remove it from the ignition lock. ▶ Switch on the ignition using the driver's key (not the emergency key).
* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.		








Driving systems

Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
  light up 	 PSM failure Park vehicle safely	Porsche Stability Management (PSM) system fault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up 	ABS/PSM failure Consult dealer Drive with caution	Porsche Stability Management failure. Possible to drive on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up 	PSM off	Porsche Stability Management (PSM) was switched off.
	 PSM on	Porsche Stability Management (PSM) was switched on.
  flash  	 PSM in diagnosis	Porsche Stability Management (PSM) is in diagnostic test mode.
	 PADM disabled Service required Driving permitted	Porsche Active Drivetrain Mount (PADM) is deactivated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*








* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Driving systems








Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	Chassis system failure	Suspension system failure. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Suspension system fault Drive with caution	Suspension system fault. Vehicle handling may be affected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Assistance systems / camera fault Service required	Assistance system or vehicle camera fault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Front camera view limited Clean if necessary	Assistance systems or camera temporarily unavailable due to weather conditions or dirt on the windscreen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Clean the windscreen if necessary. If the fault persists: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Launch Control activated	Launch Control is activated.
	System fault Driving permitted Consult dealer	One or more electrical systems may have failed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Instrument cluster/ Front Park Assist audio fault Service required	Acoustic warning and distance signals (e.g. for ParkAssist) are not available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Driving systems		
Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	Parking Assistant audio fault Service required	Acoustic warning and distance signals for ParkAssist are not available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Possible problems when parking. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	ParkAssist fault	ParkAssist is faulty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Possible problems when parking. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Distance Please brake	Insufficient distance from vehicle in front. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Increase distance from vehicle in front.
	ACC unavailable Sensor dirty Please clean	Adaptive cruise control (ACC) may be affected by weather conditions or by dirt on the sensor at the front of the vehicle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Sensor may need cleaning. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	ACC/PAS unavailable Service required	Adaptive cruise control (ACC) fault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	ACC/Cruise control not possible Move gear selector to D/M	Vehicles with PDK: Adaptive cruise control (ACC) only possible in selector-lever position D or M. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Move selector lever to position D or M.
	Limit 1/2 exceeded	Preset speed limit 1 or 2 has been exceeded.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Driving systems

Instrument panel display	Multi-function display message	Meaning and action required
	Speed limit disp. currently limited No camera view Clean if necessary	Speed limit display is temporarily unavailable due to weather conditions or dirt on the windscreen. ▶ Clean the windscreen if necessary. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Speed limit display currently limited	Navigation data reception is temporarily unavailable. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Speed limit display currently unavailable	Camera image evaluation is temporarily unavailable. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Speed limit display fault Service required	There is a fault on the camera or navigation system. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Lane change assist currently unavailable	Lane Change Assist (LCA) is temporarily unavailable due to weather conditions or dust cloud.
	Lane change assist not available Service required	Lane Change Assist (LCA) fault. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Lane change assist sensors blocked Clean rear bumper	Lane Change Assist (LCA) sensors can be blocked by stickers, dirt or a build-up of ice, for example. ▶ Sensor may need cleaning.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Washer Fluid



Fig. 239: Washer fluid reservoir for windscreen and headlights

Observe the following points:


- ▶ Depending on the season, mix the water with the appropriate additives (window cleaner concentrate, antifreeze). Always observe the correct mixture ratio and follow all instructions on the containers of the additives used.
- **Summer:** Fill with water and window cleaner concentrate.
- **Winter:** Fill with water, antifreeze and window cleaner concentrate.

Only use window cleaner concentrate that meets the following requirements:

- Dilutability 1:100
- Phosphate-free
- Suitable for plastic headlight lenses

For information on windscreen washing concentrates approved by Porsche: Contact your Porsche partner.

Responding to warning message

The  symbol appears on the multi-function display of the instrument panel when the washer fluid level is low.

- ▶ Add washer fluid at the next opportunity.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Warning and Information Messages” on page 278.

Adding washer fluid

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headlights

- ▶ Do not lean on the headlight when adding washer fluid.

1. Open the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.
2. Add washer fluid.
 - ▷ Refer to chapter “Filling capacities” on page 307.
3. Close the cap carefully.

Windows

Opening and closing windows

⚠ WARNING

Opening and closing the windows

When opening or closing the windows, particularly in one-touch mode, parts of the body may get trapped between the moving window and fixed vehicle parts.

- ▶ When opening and closing the windows, make sure that no parts of the body can become trapped between the moving window and fixed vehicle parts.
- ▶ Always remove the driver's key when leaving the vehicle or switch the ignition off on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive. Always take the driver's key with you when leaving the vehicle. Uninformed persons could injure themselves by operating the power windows.
- ▶ In the event of danger: immediately release the button on the ignition key or the proximity sensor in the door handle on vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive.
- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.



Fig. 240: Power window buttons in driver's door

- A** Power window button, left
- B** Power window button, right

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- or –
- ✓ Ignition switched off for less than 10 minutes and driver's or passenger's door not yet opened.

Open window

- ▶ Press the rocker switch for the relevant window until the window has reached the desired position.

Close window

- ▶ Pull the rocker switch for the relevant window until the window has reached the desired position.

The rocker switches have a **two-stage function**. When you actuate the buttons, both positions can be felt clearly through resistance when pulling or pressing.

First setting – manual operation

- ▶ Push or pull the relevant button to the first setting.
The window is opened or closed manually.
The window stops when the button is released.

Second setting – one-touch operation

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ▶ Briefly push or pull the relevant button all the way to the second setting.
The window is opened or closed completely.
- ▶ Actuate the button again to stop the window at the desired position.



Information

If a door window is blocked by an object during closing, it will stop and open again by several centimetres.

If the window is blocked a second time within approx. 10 seconds, one-touch operation is disabled for this window.

The window can be closed manually. One-touch operation is enabled again once the window has been closed completely using the manual closing function.

⚠ WARNING

Closing a window manually

If one-touch operation is disabled after a window is blocked, the window will close with its full closing force when the manual closing function is used.

- ▶ Ensure that nobody can be pinched or crushed when the windows close.

Opening and closing windows with driver's key



Fig. 241: Opening and closing windows with driver's key

- ▶ Press and hold the button for opening and closing the vehicle on the driver's key until the windows have reached the desired position.

Closing windows using proximity sensor on door handle (vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive)

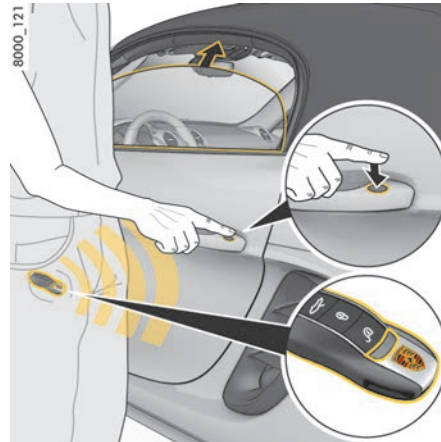


Fig. 242: Closing windows using proximity sensor on door handle (vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive)

- ▶ Touch the proximity sensor on the door handle when locking the vehicle until the windows have reached the desired position.

Storing end position of windows

The end positions of the windows are lost when the battery is disconnected and reconnected. One-touch operation of the windows is disabled.

Perform these steps for all windows:

1. Close window completely once by pulling the rocker switch to the second setting.
2. When the window is completely closed, briefly pull the rocker switch to the second setting again three times.
3. Open the window completely once by pressing the rocker switch.

Windscreen Wipers

Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided under “Windscreen wipers”. Warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.

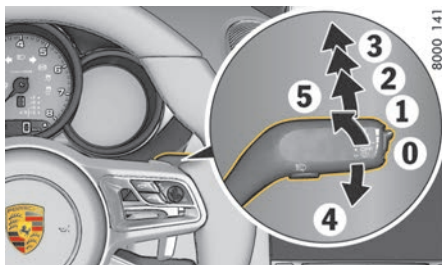


Fig. 243: Windscreen wiper stalk



Fig. 244: Switch for rain sensor/intermittent operation sensitivity (A)

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Page
Wipe automatically (rain sensor/intermittent operation)	Press the stalk to detent position 1 .	302
Set rain sensor/intermittent operation sensitivity	Press switch A on the right of the stalk upwards (wipe more often) or downwards (wipe less often).	302
Wipe	Slow: Press the stalk to detent position 2 . Fast: Press the stalk to detent position 3 . Once: Press the stalk to position 4 (holding stalk in position 4 accelerates wiping action).	301
Spray and wipe	Pull stalk towards the steering wheel at position 5 and hold.	301
Fold windscreen wipers out	Switch off the ignition and press the wiper stalk downwards once 4 . Windscreen wipers move upwards by approx. 45°.	301

⚠ WARNING

Unintended wiping

In rain sensor operation, the windscreen wipers wipe automatically if moisture is detected on the windscreen.

- ▶ Always switch off the windscreen wipers before cleaning the windscreen.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen and wiper system.

- ▶ Only wipe the windscreen when sufficiently wet, otherwise it could become scratched.
- ▶ Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the windscreen before driving.
- ▶ Do not operate a frozen headlight cleaning system.
- ▶ Always switch off windscreen wipers in car washes to prevent them wiping unintentionally (rain sensor operation).
- ▶ Do not operate headlight cleaning system in car washes.
- ▶ Always hold the wiper arm securely when replacing the wiper blade.
- ▶ When replacing wiper blades, observe different lengths of the wiper blades.

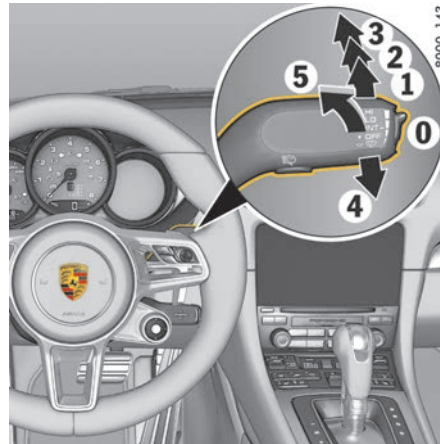
Operating the windscreen wipers

Fig. 245: Windscreen wiper stalk

0 Windscreen wipers off

When the windscreen wipers or ignition are switched off, the wipers move up slightly from their normal position so that the wiping edges are aligned correctly.

1 Rain sensor/intermittent operation Windscreen wipers

- ▶ Press the wiper stalk upwards to the first click.

2 Windscreen wipers slow

- ▶ Press the wiper stalk upwards to the second click.

3 Windscreen wipers fast

- ▶ Press the wiper stalk upwards to the third click.

4 One-touch function for windscreen wipers

- ▶ Press the wiper stalk downwards. The windscreen wipers carry out one wiping cycle.

5 Windscreen wipers and washer system

- ▶ Pull wiper stalk towards the steering wheel. The washer system wipes and sprays while the stalk is pulled towards the steering wheel. When the wiper stalk is released, a few drying wipes are performed. After every 10 wipes on the windscreen, the headlights are cleaned automatically as well.

i Information

- ▶ If heavily soiled, repeat the wash process.
- ▶ Persistent dirt (e.g. insect remains) should be removed regularly.

For information on car care:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Care” on page 65.

Windscreen wiper blades that are in perfect condition are vital for a clear view.

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Wiper Blades” on page 304.

Fitting ice or sun shields and replacing wiper blades

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and press the wiper stalk downwards once **4**. Windscreen wipers move upwards by approx. 45°.

Adjusting wipe interval



Fig. 246: Switch for rain sensor/intermittent operation sensitivity

On vehicles without a rain sensor, the wipe interval of the windscreen wipers can be adjusted to 4 settings:

Decreasing the wipe interval

- ▶ Press switch **A** upwards.
The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windscreen.

Increasing the wipe interval

- ▶ Press switch **A** downwards.

Adjusting rain sensor operation

For vehicles with a rain sensor, the amount of rain on the windscreen is measured. The wipe interval is automatically controlled accordingly.

Rain sensor operation is automatically activated at speeds of less than approx. 4 km/h (2.5 mph) if the windscreen wiper is switched on.

If you exceed a speed of approx. 8 km/h (5 mph), the system switches to the preselected wiper speed.

i Information

- If the wiper stalk is already in position **1** when the ignition is switched on, the rain sensor is activated when the driving speed exceeds approx. 4 km/h (2.5 mph).
- If the wiper stalk is already in position **2** or **3** when the ignition is switched on, the windscreen wipers remain switched off until the wiper stalk is actuated.

i Information

The wiper is stopped when the luggage compartment lid is opened.

- ▶ To switch on the wipers again, move the windscreen wiper stalk upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity manually

The wiper speed can be set manually:

High sensitivity.

- ▶ Press switch **A** upwards.
The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windscreen.

Low sensitivity.

- ▶ Press switch **A** downwards.

Operating the headlight washer system

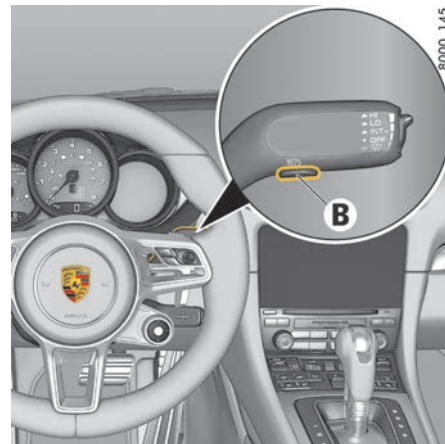


Fig. 247: Button for headlight washer system

- ✓ Dipped/high beam is activated.
- ▶ Press button **B** under the wiper stalk.

i Information

After every 10 wipes on the windscreen, the headlights are cleaned automatically as well. The wipe count starts from zero again when the dipped beam is switched off.

Rear window wiper

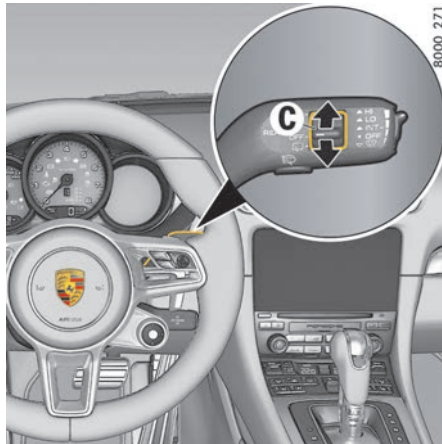


Fig. 248: Button **C** for rear window wiper

✓ 718 Cayman, 718 Cayman S

Switching on intermittent operation of rear window wiper

- ▶ Press button **C** upwards to position **INT**.

Switching off intermittent operation of rear window wiper

- ▶ Press button **C** downwards to position **OFF**.

Manual wiping

- ▶ Press button **C** down from the **OFF** position or up from the **INT** position and keep it pressed.

Switching on the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged

In the multi-function display, you can configure the rear wiper to automatically perform a series of wipes when it rains or when the windscreen wipers are used while reverse gear is engaged.

For information on configuring the automatic function for activating the rear wiper when reverse gear is engaged:

- ▶ Refer to chapter "Setting activation of the rear wiper when reverse gear is engaged" on page 268.

Wiper Blades

NOTICE

If the wiper arm accidentally falls back onto the windscreen, it can cause damage to the windscreen.

- ▶ Always hold the wiper arm securely when replacing the wiper blade.

NOTICE

The wiper blades can freeze at low temperatures.

- ▶ Thaw and release frozen wiper blades before driving.

NOTICE

The graphite layer on the wiper blades may be damaged if not cleaned properly.

- ▶ Ensure that the cleaning jet does not hit the wiper blades.
- ▶ Do not clean wiper blades with a cloth or sponge.
- ▶ Clean wiper blades with clear water **only**.

Care of wiper blades

Windscreen wiper blades that are in perfect condition are vital for a clear view.

- ▶ Clean the windscreen with window cleaner at regular intervals (Refer to chapter "Cleaning windows" on page 67), especially after washing the vehicle in a car wash. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ If extremely dirty (e.g. due to insect residues), clean the windscreen using a sponge or cloth.

Replacing wiper blades

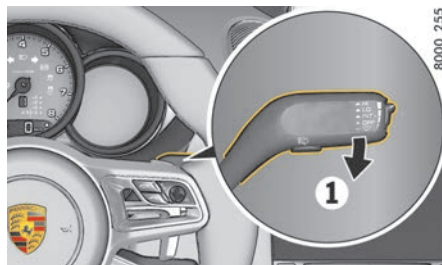


Fig. 249: Wiper stalk

NOTICE

If they are not changed properly, the incorrectly fitted wiper blades can come loose when the car is moving.

- ▶ The wiper blades must engage properly in the wiper arm.
- ▶ Check that the wiper blades are seated securely.

The wiper blades should be replaced twice a year (before and after the cold season) or if wiper performance deteriorates or the blades are damaged.

✓ The ignition is switched off.

1. Press the wiper stalk downwards (Fig. 249, 1) once.

The windscreen wipers move upwards by approx. 45°.

2. Replace the wiper blades according to the separate instructions provided by the manufacturer. Observe different lengths of wiper blades when replacing.

i Information

If necessary, contact a qualified specialist workshop to perform the work. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Technical Data

On the following pages, you will find the technical data for your vehicle.

Technical Data

Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number

8000_85



Fig. 250: Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number is located at the bottom left behind the windscreen and under the front passenger's seat.

- ▶ When ordering spare parts, always quote the vehicle identification number

Identification plate

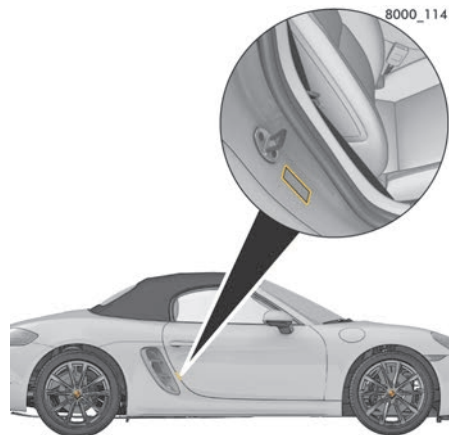


Fig. 251: Identification plate fixing point

The identification plate is fixed to the door sill area of the passenger's door.

Tyre pressure plate



Fig. 252: Tyre-pressure plate fixing point

The tyre pressure plate is attached to the door sill area of the driver's door.

Vehicle data carrier

The vehicle data carrier is located in the "Warranty and Maintenance" booklet. It contains all important data about your vehicle.

This data carrier cannot be re-ordered if it is lost or damaged.

Engine data

	718 Boxster, 718 Cayman	718 Boxster S, 718 Cayman S
Number of cylinders	4	4
Displacement	1,988 cm ³	2,497 cm ³
Max. engine power as per ECE-R 85	220 kW (300 hp)	257 kW (350 hp)
At engine speed	6,500 rpm	6,500 rpm
Max. torque as per ECE-R 85	380 Nm	420 Nm
At engine speed	1,950 – 4,500 rpm	1,900 – 4,500 rpm
Engine oil consumption	up to 0.8 l/1,000 km	up to 0.8 l/1,000 km
Maximum permitted engine speed	7,500 rpm	7,500 rpm

Filling capacities

► Only use fluids and fuels approved by Porsche. For further information: Contact your Porsche partner.

Engine oil	Change quantity with oil filter: approx. 5.7 litres Porsche engine oil specification A40; SAE 0W-40, SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-50 ► Refer to chapter “Selecting and topping up engine oil” on page 107.
Fuel	718 Boxster, 718 Cayman: approx. 54 litres (optionally: approx. 64 litres), with a reserve of approx. 8 litres 718 Boxster S, 718 Cayman S: Approx. 64 litres, with a reserve of approx. 8 litres The engine is designed to provide optimum performance and fuel consumption if super unleaded fuel without metallic additives in accordance with 98 RON/88 MON is used. ► Refer to chapter “Filling with fuel” on page 210.
Windscreen/headlight washer fluid	Approx. 2.5 litres (approx. 5 litres with headlight washer)

Fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions

The specified values were determined using the stipulated measuring method (regulation (EC) 715/2007 in the currently valid version; and ECE-R 83 in conjunction with ECE-R 101 in the currently valid versions). The information does not refer to an individual vehicle and does not form part of the product offering. The information serves solely to permit comparison of the different vehicle types. For further information on the individual vehicles: Contact your Porsche partner.

Vehicle type	Urban (l/100 km)	Extra-urban (l/100 km)	Combined (l/100 km)	Total CO ₂ (g/km)
Euro 6				
718 Boxster with manual transmission	9.9 – 10.0	6.0 – 6.1	7.4 – 7.5	168 – 170
718 Boxster with PDK	9.0 – 9.1	5.7 – 5.8	6.9 – 7.0	158 – 160
718 Boxster S with manual transmission	10.7 – 10.8	6.5 – 6.6	8.1 – 8.2	184 – 186
718 Boxster S with PDK	9.5 – 9.6	6.0 – 6.1	7.3 – 7.4	167 – 169
718 Cayman manual transmission	9.9 – 10.0	5.9 – 6.1	7.4 – 7.5	168 – 170
718 Cayman PDK	9.0 – 9.1	5.7 – 5.8	6.9 – 7.0	158 – 160
718 Cayman S manual transmission	10.7 – 10.8	6.5 – 6.6	8.1 – 8.2	184 – 186
718 Cayman S PDK	9.5 – 9.6	6.0 – 6.1	7.3 – 7.4	167 – 169
Euro 5				
718 Boxster with manual transmission	9.9	5.9	7.3	170
718 Boxster with PDK	8.9	5.5	6.8	158
718 Boxster S with manual transmission	10.7	6.4	7.9	184
718 Boxster S with PDK	9.4	5.7	7.2	167
718 Cayman manual transmission	9.9	5.9	7.3	170
718 Cayman PDK	8.9	5.5	6.8	158
718 Cayman S manual transmission	10.7	6.4	7.9	184
718 Cayman S PDK	9.4	5.7	7.2	167

Weights

Kerb weight as per EU Regulation 1230/2012, includes 75 kg driver and luggage share.

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight rating and maximum permitted axle load. If additional accessories are installed, the maximum possible payload will be reduced.

	718 Boxster manual transmission	718 Boxster PDK	718 Boxster S manual transmission	718 Boxster S PDK
Kerb weight (depending on equipment)				
per DIN 70020	1,335 kg – 1,435 kg	1,365 kg – 1,465 kg	1,355 kg – 1,445 kg	1,385 kg – 1,475 kg
as per EC Regulation 1230/2012	1,410 kg – 1,510 kg	1,440 kg – 1,540 kg	1,430 kg – 1,520 kg	1,460 kg – 1,550 kg
Maximum axle load, front	770 kg	775 kg	780 kg	785 kg
Maximum axle load, rear	915 kg	940 kg	915 kg	940 kg
Maximum gross weight	1,655 kg	1,685 kg	1,665 kg	1,695 kg

	718 Cayman manual transmission	718 Cayman PDK	718 Cayman S manual transmission	718 Cayman S PDK
Kerb weight (depending on equipment)				
per DIN 70020	1,335 kg – 1,435 kg	1,365 kg – 1,465 kg	1,355 kg – 1,445 kg	1,385 kg – 1,475 kg
as per EC Regulation 1230/2012	1,410 kg – 1,510 kg	1,440 kg – 1,540 kg	1,430 kg – 1,520 kg	1,460 kg – 1,550 kg
Maximum axle load, front	765 kg	770 kg	775 kg	780 kg
Maximum axle load, rear	930 kg	955 kg	930 kg	955 kg
Maximum gross weight	1,655 kg	1,685 kg	1,665 kg	1,695 kg

Dimensions

	718 Boxster, 718 Boxster S	718 Cayman, 718 Cayman S
Length (depending on equipment)	4,379 mm	4,379 mm
Width	1,801 mm	1,801 mm
Width with exterior mirrors	1,994 mm	1,994 mm
Height at DIN kerb weight depending on equipment	1,261 mm – 1,281 mm	1,275 mm – 1,295 mm
Ground clearance at DIN kerb weight depending on equipment	112 mm – 131 mm	113 mm – 133 mm

Driving performance

The specifications refer to a vehicle with DIN kerb weight without performance-reducing additional equipment (e.g. special tyres).

Vehicle type	Top speed	Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h (0 – 62 mph) (values in brackets relate to SPORT PLUS mode)
718 Boxster with manual transmission	275 km/h (171 mph)	5.1 s
718 Boxster with PDK	275 km/h (171 mph)	4.9 s (4.7 s)
718 Boxster S with manual transmission	285 km/h (178 mph)	4.6 s
718 Boxster S with PDK	285 km/h (178 mph)	4.4 s (4.2 s)
718 Cayman manual transmission	275 km/h (171 mph)	5.1 s
718 Cayman PDK	275 km/h (171 mph)	4.9 s (4.7 s)
718 Cayman S manual transmission	285 km/h (178 mph)	4.6 s
718 Cayman S PDK	285 km/h (178 mph)	4.4 s (4.2 s)

Wheels and tyres

Wheel and tyre sizes

Tyres approved by Porsche are the best possible tyres for your vehicle. The load capacity index (e.g. “94”) and classification letter (e.g. “Y”) for permitted maximum speed are minimum requirements. When fitting new tyres or changing tyres:

- ▷ Refer to chapter “Tyres and Wheels” on page 257.
- ▶ Snow chains must only be fitted to the appropriately marked wheel and tyre sizes and only to the rear wheels. Observe the applicable national regulations regarding maximum speeds when snow chains are fitted. Only use Porsche approved fine-link edge chains.
- ▶ Before fitting different wheels and tyres, check the EU declaration of conformity to see if the desired wheel/tyre combination is permitted for your particular vehicle. For further information: Contact your Porsche partner.

Tyre type	Tyre size	Wheel size	Fitting snow chains
718 Boxster, 718 Cayman			
Summer tyres	FA: 235/45 ZR 18 (94Y) RA: 265/45 ZR 18 (101Y)	FA: 8J x 18, RO 57 RA: 9.5J x 18, RO 49	No
	FA: 235/40 ZR 19 (92Y) RA: 265/40 ZR 19 (98Y)	FA: 8J x 19, RO 57 RA: 10J x 19, RO 45	No
	FA: 235/35 ZR 20 (88Y) RA: 265/35 ZR 20 (95Y)	FA: 8J x 20, RO 57 RA: 10J x 20, RO 45	No
	FA: 235/35 ZR 20 (88Y) RA: 265/35 ZR 20 (95Y)	FA: 8.5J x 20, RO 57 RA: 10.5J x 20, RO 47	No
Winter tyres	FA: 235/45 R 18 94V M+S RA: 265/45 R 18 101V M+S	FA: 8J x 18, RO 57 RA: 9.5J x 18, RO 49	Yes
	FA: 235/40 R 19 92V M+S RA: 265/40 R 19 98V M+S	FA: 8J x 19, RO 57 RA: 10J x 19, RO 45	No

Tyre type	Tyre size	Wheel size	Fitting snow chains
718 Boxster S, 718 Cayman S			
Summer tyres	FA: 235/40 ZR 19 (92Y) RA: 265/40 ZR 19 (98Y)	FA: 8J x 19, RO 57 RA: 10J x 19, RO 45	No
	FA: 235/35 ZR 20 (88Y) RA: 265/35 ZR 20 (95Y)	FA: 8J x 20, RO 57 RA: 10J x 20, RO 45	No
	FA: 235/35 ZR 20 (88Y) RA: 265/35 ZR 20 (95Y)	FA: 8.5J x 20, RO 57 RA: 10.5J x 20, RO 47	No
Winter tyres	FA: 235/45 R 18 94V M+S RA: 265/45 R 18 101V M+S	FA: 8J x 18, RO 57 RA: 9.5J x 18, RO 49	Yes
	FA: 235/40 R 19 92V M+S RA: 265/40 R 19 98V M+S	FA: 8J x 19, RO 57 RA: 10J x 19, RO 45	No

FA = front axle, RA = rear axle, RO = rim offset

Tyre pressure

These standard and comfort tyre pressures apply only to the tyre makes and types approved by Porsche for cold tyres (20 °C).

- ▶ Comfort pressure/standard pressure must be selected on the multi-function display and the tyre pressure adjusted.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “TPM menu (TPM – Tyre Pressure Monitoring)” on page 162.
- ▷ Refer to chapter “Tyres and Wheels” on page 257.

Standard tyre pressure

Tyres	718 Boxster, 718 Cayman		718 Boxster S, 718 Cayman S	
	FA	RA	FA	RA
Summer tyres 235/45 ZR 18 / 265/45 ZR 18	2.0 bar 200 kPa 29 psi	2.0 bar 200 kPa 29 psi	–	–
Summer tyres 235/40 ZR 19 / 265/40 ZR 19	2.0 bar 200 kPa 29 psi	2.1 bar 210 kPa 30 psi	2.0 bar 200 kPa 29 psi	2.1 bar 210 kPa 30 psi
Summer tyres 235/35 ZR 20 / 265/35 ZR 20	2.3 bar 230 kPa 33 psi	2.3 bar 230 kPa 33 psi	2.3 bar 230 kPa 33 psi	2.3 bar 230 kPa 33 psi
Winter tyres 235/45 R 18 / 265/45 R 18	2.2 bar 220 kPa 31 psi	2.2 bar 220 kPa 31 psi	2.2 bar 220 kPa 31 psi	2.2 bar 220 kPa 31 psi
Winter tyres 235/40 R 19 / 265/40 R 19	2.2 bar 220 kPa 31 psi	2.2 bar 220 kPa 31 psi	2.2 bar 220 kPa 31 psi	2.2 bar 220 kPa 31 psi

Comfort tyre pressure up to 270 km/h (165 mph)

- ✓ Vehicles with “Comfort pressure” setting on the multi-function display.
- ✓ Vehicles with 20-inch summer tyres.

WARNING

Low tyre pressure

The “Comfort press.” option is country-dependent and is not available for all countries.

Driving at high speed and low tyre pressure destroys the tyres.

- ▶ Only set comfort tyre pressure on vehicles with “Comfort pressure” setting in the multi-function display.

Tyres	FA	RA
Summer tyres	2.1 bar	2.1 bar
235/35 ZR 20 / 265/35 ZR 20	210 kPa	210 kPa
	30 psi	30 psi

FA = front axle, RA = rear axle

Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

	Technical data: Audio and video files
Supported media	<p>SD cards up to 128 GB</p> <p>DVD drive Audio CDs up to 80 min., CD ROMs up to 700 MB, DVD±R/RW, Standard Video DVD, Video DVD compatible DVD Audio</p> <p>Portable players MTP Player, USB 2.0 devices of “USB Device Subclass 1 and 6” such as, for example, USB sticks, USB MP3 players without special driver software, external USB Flash memory and hard drives</p>
File system	<p>SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards</p> <p>USB mass storage exFAT, FAT or FAT32, NTFS file systems with a maximum of 4 partitions</p> <p>DVD drive ISO9660, Joliet, UDF</p>
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3; Windows Media Audio 9 and 10; MPEG-2/-4; FLAC, MPEG-1/-2; ISO-MPEG4; DivX 3, 4 and 5; Xvid; ISO-MPEG4 H.264 (MPEG4 AVC)M; Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3; .wma; .asf; .m4a; .m4b; .aac; .flac; .mpg; .mpeg; .avi; .mp4; .m4v; .mov; .wmv
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX
Characteristics	max. 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequency; max. 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at max. 25 fps
Number of files	<p>DVD drive max. 1,000 files DVD</p> <p>Jukebox (max. 10 GB storage space) max. 3,000 files can be copied.</p> <p>USB mass storage and memory cards max. 10,000 files per medium, max. 1,000 files per directory/playlist</p>
Metadata	Album covers up to 800 x 800 pixels; GIF, JPG and PNG formats or via Gracenote® database ¹⁾
Video DVD region codes	<p>Code 1: USA, Canada and US Colonies</p> <p>Code 2: Europe, Greenland, South Africa, Egypt and the Middle East, Japan</p> <p>Code 3: Southeast Asia, South Korea, Hong Kong, Indonesia, Philippines, Taiwan</p> <p>Code 4: Australia, New Zealand, Mexico, Central America, South America</p> <p>Code 5: Russia and other former countries of the Soviet Union, Eastern Europe, India, Africa</p> <p>Code 6: People’s Republic of China</p> <p>Code 8: International territory (cruise ships, aircraft)</p>

1) Gracenote is a trademark or registered trademark of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Technical data: Connectivity

Mobile networks	GSM/GPRS/EDGE: Dual Band, 900 MHz/1,800 MHz UMTS/HSPA+: Triple band, 900 MHz (Band VIII)/1,800 MHz (Band III)/2,100 MHz (Band I) LTE: Quad band, 800 MHz (Band 20)/900 MHz (Band 8) /1,800 MHz (Band 3)/2,600 MHz (Band 7)
WiFi	IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n (2.4 GHz)
Bluetooth®	Bluetooth® 2.1, IEEE 802.15.1, Class 2, range approx. 10 m (33 ft.)
SIM card	Mini-SIM, dimensions: 25 x 15 mm

Technical data: Radio

Frequency ranges/standards	UKW (FM): 87.5 – 108 MHz (manual adjustment in 100 kHz stages) MW (AM): 531 – 1,602 kHz (manual adjustment in 1 kHz stages) Digital radio: DAB, DAB+, DMB; L-Band
Tuning grid with automatic station search	UKW (FM): 100 kHz MW (AM): 9 kHz

Technical data: CD/DVD drive

General information	At the time of manufacture, this laser product was manufactured in accordance with the German/international DIN EN 60825-1 Standard: 2008-05 and DHHS Rules 21 CFR Subchapter J, classified as a Class 1 laser product. The laser beam in this Class 1 laser product is so weak that it poses no risk under normal operating conditions. This product is designed so that the laser beam is completely enclosed within the device.
Laser beam output power	DVD: 0.68 mW CD: 0.85 mW
Laser beam wavelength	DVD: 665 nm CD: 795 nm

Inspection marks and declarations of conformity

European Union

Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG hereby declares that the radio and radar systems installed in the vehicle conform to the basic requirements of the applicable directives and the other relevant stipulations, when used as intended.

Australia



Brazil

SA1-363

"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."

SA1-363



Hong Kong

HKCA 1035: Automotive radar: radio equipment exempted from licensing.



Indonesia

21962/SDPPI/2011
34538/SDPPI/2014

Israel

Model name: TSSRE4Dg
Manufacturer: Huf Electronics Bretten

שם הדגם (Hebrew :Model name)
28416031/2 / 28-4003-61004-3-00 / 7PP905865

SA1-366

שם היצרן וכתובתו (Hebrew : Manufacturer and address)
Continental AG
Siemensstraße 12
93055 Regensburg

SA1-367

Japan



Japanese Radio Law Compliance. This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law. This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

Jordan

Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2009/15
Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2014/73

Malaysia

Continental
28416032 / 28416031
RAAW/33A/0512/S(12-0755)

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 5371 ANRT 2010
Date d'agrément : 02/02/2010
Numéro d'agrément : MR 9186 ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément : 22/04/2014

Mexico

Radar de largo alcance, 77GHz,
 MARCA: BOSCH, MODELO: LRR3,
 MoldaCOFETEL: (RCPBOLR09-0828)
 IFETEL: RCPBOMP14-0922

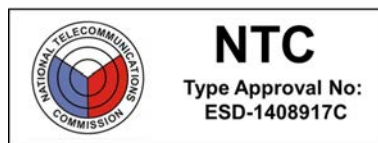
Moldova



Oman

Oman - TRA/TA-R/2609/15

Philippines



Qatar

Approval Ref.: CRA/SA/2015/R-4714

Serbia



Singapore

Complies with IDA Standards DB01752.
 Complies with IDA Standards DB03227.

South Africa



South Korea



This equipment has been approved under EMC Registration as a Class B device (for domestic use) and can be used in both residential and commercial areas.

Taiwan

CCAB10LP3800T1
 CCAK15LP0801T1
 Regulations for the low-power radio wave radiation devices:
 Without permission, for the approved low-power radio-frequency devices, any companies, firms or users are not allowed to change the frequency

band, increase the power or change the specifications and functionality of the original design.
 The low power radio-frequency devices are not allowed to influence aircraft safety or interfere any legal communications. In case any interference phenomenon is detected, the use of this device should stop immediately, and it is allowed to continue to use until it is improved to be without interference any more.
 The term legal communications stated in last paragraph refers to the operating radio communication system which is in compliance with the Regulations for the Telecommunications. The low power radio-frequency devices should be able to tolerate the interferences from any legal communications or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation devices or equipment.

Ukraine



United Arab Emirates

TRA REGISTERED No: 0016889/09,
 DEALER No: 0014972/08
 TRA REGISTERED No: 0016889/09,
 DEALER No: DA36785/14
 TRA REGISTERED No: ER39135/15,
 DEALER No: DA36785/14
 TRA REGISTERED No: ER38964/15,
 DEALER: HUF ELECTRONICS GmbH

Bluetooth® approval (extract)

- Albania
- Andorra
- Angola
- Aruba
- Australia
- Austria
- Bahamas
- Bahrain
- Barbados
- Belarus
- Belgium
- Belize
- Bolivia
- Bonaire
- Bosnia and Herzegovina
- Brazil
- Brunei
- Bulgaria
- Burkina Faso
- Canada
- Chile
- China
- Colombia
- Costa Rica
- Croatia
- Curacao
- Cyprus
- Czech Republic
- Denmark
- Dominican Republic
- Ecuador
- Egypt
- El Salvador
- Estonia
- Ethiopia
- Finland
- France
- French Guyana
- French Polynesia
- Gabon
- Germany
- Ghana
- Gibraltar
- Guadeloupe
- Guatemala
- Greece
- Greenland
- Hong Kong
- Hungary
- Iceland
- India
- Indonesia
- Ireland
- Iraq
- Israel
- Italy
- Ivory Coast
- Jamaica
- Japan
- Jordan
- Kenya
- Kosovo
- Kuwait
- Latvia
- Lebanon
- Lesotho
- Liberia
- Libya
- Liechtenstein
- Lithuania
- Luxembourg
- Macau
- Macedonia
- Madagascar
- Malaysia
- Malta
- Martinique
- Mauritius
- Mexico
- Monaco
- Mongolia
- Morocco
- Mozambique
- Netherlands
- New Caledonia
- New Zealand
- Nigeria
- Norway
- Oman
- Pakistan
- Panama
- Peru
- Poland
- Portugal
- Puerto Rico
- Qatar
- Reunion
- Romania
- Russia
- San Marino
- Saudi Arabia
- Senegal
- Serbia
- Singapore
- Slovakia
- South Africa
- Spain

- St. Lucia
- Sweden
- Switzerland
- Tahiti
- Taiwan
- Thailand
- United Arab Emirates
- United Kingdom
- Uruguay
- USA
- Venezuela
- Vietnam
- Yemen
- Zimbabwe

Recycling

End-of-life vehicle return

Only in European Union countries:

End-of-life Porsche vehicles can be scrapped by Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG free of charge in an environmentally friendly way.

For vehicle return and for issuing the corresponding certificate of destruction:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Airbag and seat belt tensioner unit

Non-ignited gas generators, or whole vehicles or assemblies with airbag and seat-belt tensioner units must not be disposed of as "normal" scrap or waste or put into any other form of end storage.

For more information on proper disposal:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Used batteries

Used batteries must not be disposed of as "normal" scrap or waste or put into any other form of end storage.

- ▶ Observe the local disposal instructions.
- ▶ Hand in used batteries at a battery collection point.

For more information on proper disposal:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Index

- A**
- A/C button
 - Air-conditioning system 43, 56
 - A/C MAX button
 - Air-conditioning system 43, 57
 - ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)
 - Functional description 196
 - ACC
 - Adaptive cruise control 32
 - Accepting and ending a call (phone) 242
 - Activating SPORT Response 223
 - Adaptive cruise control 32
 - Exceptions 37
 - Functional description 32
 - Interrupting/resuming control 37
 - Operating principle 33
 - Operating states 34
 - Porsche Active Safe 39
 - Radar sensor 32
 - Setting the desired distance 35
 - Setting/changing the Desired Speed 35
 - Switching on/off 34
 - Adaptive light system, driving light assistant 135
 - Adjusting seat position 213
 - Adjusting the tone and volume (PCM) 184
 - Adjusting the volume and tone (PCM) 184
 - Adjusting wipe interval 302
 - Air vents
 - Adjusting 42, 56
 - Opening/closing 42, 56
 - Airbag
 - Care instructions 69
 - Disposal 320
 - Function 45
 - Installation position 45
 - Safety notes 45
 - Warning light on the tachometer 45
 - Airbag warning sticker
 - Taiwan only 79
 - Air-conditioning compressor 41, 54
 - Air-conditioning system
 - Automatic load switch-off 41, 54
 - Defrost windshield 44
 - Defrosting windshield 58
 - Information on air-conditioning compressor 41, 54
 - Set temperature 41
 - Setting air quantity 42, 55
 - Setting automatic air-recirculation mode 57
 - Setting temperature 55
 - Switching A/C MAX mode on/off 43, 57
 - Switching A/C mode on/off 43, 56
 - Switching air-conditioning compressor on/off 43, 56
 - Switching air-recirculation mode on and off 43, 57
 - Switching automatic mode on/off 54
 - Switching cooling function on/off 43, 56
 - Switching maximum cooling output on/off 43, 57
 - Upper ventilation panel 56
 - Air-recirculation button 43, 57
 - Alarm system
 - Functional description 47
 - Switching off interior surveillance and inclination sensor 47
 - Switching on and off 47
 - Alcantara®, care instructions 69
 - Alloy wheels
 - Care instructions 68
 - Aluminium rims
 - Care instructions 68
 - Antifreeze
 - In coolant 95
 - In washer fluid 297
 - Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)
 - Functional description 196
 - App
 - Device Manager 100
 - Porsche Car Connect 192
 - Porsche Connect 193
 - Apple® CarPlay
 - Opening in the PCM 48
 - Siri® 49
 - Armrest
 - Opening the storage compartment 235
 - Ashtray
 - Emptying 219
 - Opening 219
 - Assigning ◊ button 268
 - Assistance systems
 - Lane Change Assist (LCA) settings 266
 - Porsche Active Safe settings 266
 - AUTO (light switch) 135
 - Driving light assistant 135
 - Auto Start Stop function
 - Display 52
 - Exceptions 50
 - Operating principle 50
 - Preconditions 50
 - Starting engine automatically 50
 - Stopping engine automatically 50
 - Switching on and off 51
 - Automatic Coming Home lights 136
 - Automatic driving light assistant 135
 - Automatic transmission 251
- B**
- Baby carrier 84
 - Baby seat 84
 - Prescribed installation direction 79
 - Recommended child restraint systems 80
 - Switching passenger airbag on and off 84
 - Battery
 - Charging 59
 - General information 59
 - Installation position 59
 - Jump-lead starting 129
 - Procedure after connection 61
 - Replacing 59
 - Vehicle electrical system warning 287
 - Warnings on the battery 60
 - Belts
 - Care instructions 69
 - Fastening 212
 - Notes 211
 - Opening belt buckle and removing the belt 212
 - Seat-belt pretensioners 211
 - Warning light on the tachometer 211
 - Warning message 211
 - Bluetooth®
 - Connecting phone 239
 - Managing devices 240

Boxster			
Convertible top care.....	66	Underbody protection	67
Opening/closing convertible top.....	90	Wheel bolts	261
Wind deflector	91	Windows	67
Brake fluid	62	Caring for paintwork.....	67
Brake pads		Caring for wheels.....	68
Warning message, brakes	64	Carpet, care instructions	69
Brakes		CarPlay®	
Brake pad warning message.....	64	Opening in the PCM	48
Footbrake	64	Central locking	
Multi-collision brake.....	197	Brief overview	71
Test stand	147	Functional description	72
Brief overview		Locking vehicle door with driver's key (remote control)	73
Opening and closing the doors.....	71	Locking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive.....	74
Bucket seat	214	Opening and locking vehicle door from inside	75
C		SAFELOCK	73
Call list (phone).....	243	Unlocking vehicle door with driver's key (remote control)	72
Car care		Centre armrest	
Airbags	69	Opening the storage compartment	235
Alcantara®	69	Changing bulbs	139
Alloy wheels	68	Changing button assignment on multi-function steering wheel	268
Car washing	65	Chassis control systems	
Fabric linings	69	Overview (PSM, PASM, PADM, PTV)	256
Headlights, plastic components	68	Chassis number, position	306
Laying up a vehicle	70	Chassis setup	
Leather	68	Selecting	191
Paintwork	67	Check Engine (emission control)	
Seals	68	Functional description	127
Seat belts	69	Child restraint system	
Underbody protection	67	Installing with ISOFIX system	86
Use of high-pressure cleaning equipment.....	65	Switching passenger airbag on and off.....	84
Warnings	65	Child restraint systems	
Wheel bolts	261	Taiwan related regulations	79
Windows	67	Child seat	78
Car washing	65	Recommended child restraint systems.....	80
Care instructions		Switching passenger airbag on and off.....	84
Airbags	69	Cigarette lighter	219
Alcantara	69	Climate control	54
Alloy wheels	68	Clock	
Car washing	65	Sport Chrono stopwatch	226
Carpet	69	Closing	
Fabric linings	69	Locking vehicle door from inside	75
Floor mats	69	Vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)	74
Laying up a vehicle	70	windows using proximity sensor on door handle (vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive)	299
Leather	68	With Porsche Entry & Drive	74
Paintwork	67		
PCM	70	Clutch	
Seals	68	Manual transmission.....	251
Seat belts	69	Cockpit	
		Adjusting lighting	123
		Cooling system, coolant temperature gauge	264
		Engine oil temperature gauge	264
		Fuel gauge	126
		Odometer	125
		Speedometer	125
		Tachometer.....	125
		Total distance and trip displays	125
		Warning and indicator lights	126
		Comfort pressure	
		Selecting.....	164
		Speed warning.....	164
		Technical data	314
		Conference (phone)	243
		Configuring	
		MyScreen (PCM)	180
		Connect	
		Device Manager.....	100
		Porsche Car Connect app.....	192
		Porsche Connect App.....	193
		Porsche Connect login	89
		Connecting an external device (PCM)	182
		Connection Manager.....	100
		Contacts (phone)	244
		Control systems	
		Overview (PSM, PASM, PADM, PTV).....	256
		Controller (PCM)	178
		Convertible top	
		Care	66
		Emergency operation	92
		Opening/closing	90
		Opening/closing with driver's key (remote control)	91
		Removing and installing wind deflector	91
		Coolant	
		Antifreeze.....	95
		Checking level	95
		Cooling function	
		Air-conditioning system.....	43, 56
		Cooling system	
		Warning on multi-function display.....	285
		Cornering light	
		Dynamic.....	136

Courtesy lighting, entry function.....	136	Door		Emergency release	
Cruise control		Emergency locking	77	Of luggage compartment lid.....	146
Functional description.....	97	Locking with driver's key (remote control).....	73	Emission control (Check Engine)	
Interrupting operation	97	Locking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)	74	Functional description.....	127
Storing speed	97	locking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)	74	Emission control warning light	127
Switching off	98	Opening	75	Emission values.....	308
Switching on.....	97	Opening and locking from inside	75	Emissions	308
Cupholder	99	unlocking from the inside	75	Engaged gear indicator.....	126
Cupholders	99	Unlocking with driver's key (remote control).....	72	Engine	
D		Driver's key	102	Cooling system	264
Data carrier for vehicle data	306	Driver's key (remote control)		Measuring and displaying oil level.....	160
Data connection (PCM)		Emergency operation of key/control unit in		Oil-level gauge	160
configure.....	247	ignition lock	103	Starting.....	233
Device Manager.....	100	Opening/closing convertible top	91	Stopping	233
Establishing	87	Opening/closing windows		Stopping automatically	
Using WiFi hotspot	87	(without Porsche Entry & Drive).....	299	(Auto Start Stop function).....	50
WiFi settings	247	Replacing the battery.....	102	Technical data	307
Declaration of Conformity.....	317	Unlocking vehicle door	72	Topping up oil.....	107
Defrosting windscreen	44, 58	Driving data on multi-function display	105	Engine oil	
Air-conditioning system.....	44, 58	Driving light assistant		Change quantity	307
Device Manager	100	Dipped beam	135	Checking level	160
Diagnostic socket.....	19, 101	Dynamic cornering light	136	Consumption	307
Dialling a number (phone)	242	Switching on	135	Filler opening	108
Digital speedometer	125	Driving off		General information	107
Direction indicator, switch	138	Assistance when driving off uphill.....	122	Level gauge.....	160
Displacement		Launch Control.....	255	Oil pressure warning on multi-function display.....	284
Technical data	307	PDK transmission standstill management	122	Oil-level gauge on the multi-function display	161
Displaying average fuel consumption.....	105	Driving performance, Technical data.....	310	Pressure gauge	264
Displaying average speed	105	Dynamic cornering light.....	136	Temperature gauge	264
Displaying connection status (PCM).....	241	E		Topping up	107
Displaying distance.....	105	Electric parking brake		Entering a destination address (Navigation, PCM).....	168
Displaying driving data in the PCM	105	Automatic parking brake release upon driving off.....	63	Entering point of interest (Navigation, PCM).....	169
Displaying journey time	105	Emergency braking function	63	Entry & Drive	
Displaying route information (Navigation, PCM)	171	Operating.....	63	Locking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive	74
Displaying station information (radio)	206	Releasing.....	63	Operating principle.....	72
Displaying traffic info (Navigation, PCM).....	173	Testing on brake test stand.....	147	Entry function, courtesy lighting when	
Disposal		Warning light.....	63	entering the vehicle	136
Airbag.....	320	E-mails		Exhaust system	
Seat-belt pretensioner	320	Displaying and deleting	244	Sport	231
		Writing.....	245	Exterior mirror	
		Embedded SIM	88	Adjusting.....	153
		Emergency braking function.....	63	Adjusting as parking aid.....	154
		Emergency key.....	102	Folding in/out	154
		Emergency operation		Storing settings (memory)	154
		Filler flap.....	210		
		of the convertible top.....	92		

F

Fabric linings (care instructions).....	69
Faults	
Convertible top.....	92
Emergency operation of ignition key/ control unit in ignition lock.....	103
Emergency operation of the filler flap.....	210
Power windows.....	299
Warning and information messages.....	278
Filler flap	
Indication of filler flap location.....	126
Filler flap, emergency operation.....	210
Filling and managing jukebox (PCM).....	151
Filling capacities	
Coolant.....	307
Engine oil.....	307
Fuel.....	307
Overview of fluids and fuels.....	307
Washer fluid.....	307
Fire extinguisher, storage location.....	109
First aid kit.....	140
Fitting ice or sun shields.....	301
Floor mats, care instructions.....	69
Fluids and fuels	
Engine oil.....	307
Fuel.....	307
Washer fluid.....	307
Folding backrest forward or back.....	215
Footbrake	
Safety notes.....	64
Front seat	
Adjusting.....	213
Folding backrest forward or back.....	215
Fuel	
Consumption.....	308
Fuel gauge.....	126
Fuel reserve warning.....	126
Octane rating.....	209
Quality.....	209
Refuelling.....	209
Tank capacity.....	307
Fuel gauge.....	126
Fuel level indicator	
Fuel gauge.....	126
Fuse	
Changing electric fuses.....	113

G

Garage door opener	
Assigning signal to button (changeable code system).....	118
Assigning signal to button (fixed code system).....	118
Deleting programmed signals.....	118
Operating.....	117
Programming.....	117
Reprogramming.....	119
Gear indicator	
PDK transmission.....	126
Gear shift assist.....	165
Generator	
Vehicle electrical system warning.....	287
G-force display.....	166
Glove box	
Closing.....	235
Locking.....	235
Opening.....	235

H

Handbrake (electric parking brake)	
Automatic release.....	63
Manual release.....	63
Operating.....	63
Headlights	
Care instructions.....	68
Changing to left/right-hand traffic.....	120
Operating washer system.....	302, 303
High beam headlight	
Switch.....	138
High beam stalk.....	138
High-pressure cleaning equipment	
Instructions for use.....	65
HOLD function.....	50, 97, 122
Holding a call (telephone).....	243
HomeLink®	
Assigning signal to button (changeable code system).....	118
Assigning signal to button (fixed code system).....	118
Deleting programmed signals.....	118
Operating.....	117
Programming.....	117
Horn.....	19
Hotspot	
Establishing data connection via external WiFi hotspot.....	88
Using the PCM's wireless Internet access.....	89

I

Identification number, position.....	306
Identification plate, position.....	306
Ignition lock	
Emergency operation of the key.....	103
Functional description.....	232
Immobiliser	
Functional description.....	248
Indicator lights.....	126
Indicator stalk.....	138
Inserting and removing an SD card.....	182
Inspection marks	
Radio systems.....	317
Instrument cluster	
Cooling system, coolant temperature gauge.....	264
Engine oil temperature gauge.....	264
Fuel gauge.....	126
Odometer.....	125
Overview.....	125
Speedometer.....	125
Tachometer.....	125
Total distance and trip displays.....	125
Warning and indicator lights.....	126
Instrument lighting.....	123
Adjusting brightness.....	125
Instrument panel	
Adjusting lighting.....	123
Cooling system, coolant temperature gauge.....	264
Engine oil temperature gauge.....	264
Fuel gauge.....	126
Odometer.....	125
Overview.....	125
Speedometer.....	125
Tachometer.....	125
Total distance and trip displays.....	125
Warning and indicator lights.....	126
Interior lighting	
Orientation lighting.....	124
Switching on and off.....	123
Interior mirror	
Adjusting.....	155
dimming.....	155
Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on/off.....	155
Internet	
Establishing a data connection (PCM).....	87
ISOFIX system	
Prescribed installation direction of child restraint systems.....	79
Recommended child restraint systems.....	82
Switching passenger airbag on and off.....	84

- J**
- Jack
 - Lifting the vehicle128
 - Jump-lead starting for flat battery129
 - Jump-lead starting, external power supply129
- K**
- Key
 - Driver's key102
 - Locking vehicle door73
 - Opening/closing convertible top91
 - Removing emergency key102
 - Replacement keys104
 - Storing and retrieving personal settings188
 - Unlocking vehicle door72
- L**
- Lane Change Assist (LCA)130
 - Setting display brightness on exterior mirror267
 - Language
 - Changing on the multi-function display270
 - Setting in the PCM183
 - Lateral acceleration forces
 - Display166
 - Launch Control255
 - Laying up a vehicle70
 - Leather, care instructions68
 - Left-hand traffic (changing headlights)120
 - Light switch
 - AUTO function135
 - Overview135
 - Lights
 - Care instructions68
 - Changing bulbs139
 - Headlight flasher138
 - Motorway function135
 - Rain function135
 - Switching on courtesy lighting when entering the vehicle136
 - Switching on when entering the vehicle136
 - Switching on when leaving the vehicle136
 - List (calls)243
 - Listening to mailbox (phone)242
 - Loading the CD/DVD drive181
 - Loads
 - Stowing140
- Locking**
- Locking vehicle door from inside75
 - Locking vehicle door with driver's key (remote control)73
 - Locking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive74
 - Vehicle door with driver's key (remote control)73
 - Vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)74
 - Locking the steering column248
- Longitudinal acceleration forces**
- Display166
- Luggage compartment**
- Closing145
 - Emergency release146
 - Luggage cover142
 - Opening144
- Luggage compartment lid**
- Closing145
 - Emergency release146
 - Opening144
- Luggage cover**142
- M**
- Maintenance position301
 - Maintenance work
 - Adding washer fluid297
 - Checking coolant level and adding coolant95
 - Checking engine-oil level160
 - Topping up engine oil107
 - Malfunctions
 - Storing end position of the windows299
 - Manual transmission
 - Upshift indicator251
 - Map (Navigation, PCM)
 - Accepting destination from map169
 - Activating 360° panoramic view172
 - Configuring the map view on the multi-function display173
 - Opening and configuring map view172
 - Settings175
 - Media (PCM)
 - Connecting an external device182
 - Filling jukebox151
 - Inserting and removing an SD card182
 - Loading CDs/DVDs181
 - Opening a playlist151
 - Playing149
 - Searching through media source150
 - Selecting media source149
 - Settings151
 - Supported data formats315
 - Memory188
 - Memory package188
 - Messages
 - Displaying and deleting244
 - Writing245
 - Minor Repairs
 - In the event of a flat tyre110
 - Towing the vehicle249
 - Mirrors
 - Adjusting exterior mirrors153
 - Adjusting exterior mirrors as parking aid154
 - Exterior mirror heating121
 - Folding exterior mirrors in/out154
 - Storing exterior mirror settings (memory)154
 - Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off155
 - Vanity mirror237
 - Mobile data (connectivity)87
 - Mobile phone
 - Connecting via Bluetooth®239
 - Displaying connection status241
 - Stowing246
 - Mode switch223
 - Multi-collision braking
 - Functional description197
 - Multi-function display
 - Browsing through long lists157
 - Checking oil level160
 - Display areas158
 - Driving data display (trip information)105
 - Map view173
 - Menu overview159
 - Operating principle157
 - Operating with multi-function steering wheel157
 - Retrieving vehicle information160
 - Selecting a radio station206
 - Selecting options and activating functions158
 - Sport Chrono226
 - Tyre Pressure Monitoring162
 - Tyre pressure warnings165
 - Using the phone243
 - Multi-function steering wheel
 - Assigning \uparrow button268

- Music (PCM)
- Connecting an external device182
 - Filling jukebox151
 - Inserting and removing an SD card182
 - Loading CDs/DVDs181
 - Opening a playlist151
 - Playing149
 - Searching through media source150
 - Selecting media sources149
 - Settings151
 - Supported data formats315
- MyScreen (PCM)
- Adding phone favourites (PCM)244
 - Configuring (PCM)180
- N**
- Navigation
- Accepting destination from map169
 - Activating 360° panoramic view172
 - Configuring the map view on the multi-function display173
 - Displaying route information171
 - Displaying traffic info173
 - Entering a destination address168
 - Entering point of interest169
 - Off-road mode174
 - Opening and configuring map view172
 - Searching for a destination (search, online search)168
 - Settings175
 - Storing and using destination (favourite)170
 - Updating navigation database175
 - Using recent destinations168
 - Using smart routing171
- Notes on PCM drives181
- O**
- Octane rating, petrol209
- Odometer
- Display125
 - Resetting125
- Off delay
- Switching on136
- Off-road mode
- Navigation174
- Oil
- Change quantity307
 - Checking level160
 - Consumption307
 - Filler opening108
 - General information107
 - Level gauge160
 - Oil pressure warning on multi-function display284
 - Oil-level gauge on the multi-function display161
 - Pressure gauge264
 - Temperature gauge264
 - Topping up107
- On-board computer
- Browsing through long lists157
 - Driving data display (trip information)105
 - Map view173
 - Measuring oil level160
 - Menu overview159
 - Multi-function display157
 - Operating principle157
 - Operating with multi-function steering wheel157
 - Selecting a radio station206
 - Tyre Pressure Monitoring162
 - Using the phone243
- Online services
- Establishing a data connection (PCM)87
 - Porsche Car Connect192
- Opening a playlist (PCM)151
- Opening and closing
- Convertible top90
 - Windows298
- Opening and locking
- Brief overview71
 - Locking vehicle door with Porsche Entry & Drive74
 - Opening and locking vehicle door from inside75
 - Storing/retrieving personal settings188
 - Unlocking vehicle door with driver's key (remote control)72
 - With Porsche Entry & Drive74
- Operating the PCM
- Brief overview176
 - Entering text and characters179
 - Switching on/off177
 - Touchscreen elements178
 - Voice control271
 - with the rotary push button179
 - with the touchscreen178
- Orientation lighting124
- P**
- PADM256
- Paintwork
- Care instructions67
 - Polishing67
 - Preserving67
 - Removing spots and stains67
 - Repairing damage67
- ParkAssist
- Functional description185
- Parking
- PDK252
- Parking aid
- Swivelling down mirror glass154
- Parking brake
- Operating63
 - Releasing63
 - Testing on brake test stand147
- Parking/pulling out
- Functional description, ParkAssist185
- PASM (Porsche Active Suspension Management)
- Selecting chassis setup191
- PASS AIR BAG OFF indicator46
- Passenger mirror
- Adjusting153
 - Adjusting as parking aid154
 - Folding in/out154
- PCCB (Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake)
- General information64
- PCM
- Apple® CarPlay48
 - Care instructions70
 - Configuring MyScreen180
 - Connecting an external device182
 - Connectivity (data connection)87
 - Displaying driving data (trip information)105
 - Inserting and removing an SD card182
 - Loading the CD/DVD drive181
 - Media148
 - Navigation167
 - ParkAssist185
 - Porsche Connect App193
 - Radio204
 - System settings183
 - Telephone238
 - Voice control271

PCM drives	
Connecting an external device	182
Inserting and removing an SD card	182
Loading CDs/DVDs	181
Notes	181
PCM settings	
Date and time	177
General	183
Map	175
Media	151
Navigation	175
Phone	246
Radio	207
Volume and tone	184
PCM system settings	183
PKD	251, 252
Shifting gears on the steering wheel	253
Upshift indicator	254
Petrol	
Consumption	308
Fuel gauge	126
Fuel reserve warning	126
Octane rating	209
Quality	209
Refuelling	209
Tank capacity	307
Phone	
Call list	243
Conference	243
Connecting via Bluetooth®	239
Contacts	244
Displaying and deleting messages	244
Displaying connection status	241
Listening to mailbox	242
Storing	246
Using via the multi-function display	243
Writing messages	245
Phone (PCM)	
Settings	246
Playing tracks (PCM)	149
Playing videos (PCM)	149
Porsche Active Safe	39
Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)	
Functional description	191
Porsche Car Connect	192
Settings	270
Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)	
General information	64
Porsche Connect	
Login	89
Porsche Connect App	193
Device Manager	100
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)	251
Selector-lever position	252
Shifting gears on the steering wheel	253
Porsche Dynamic Light System (PDLS)	136
Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus)	136
Porsche Entry & Drive	
Locking vehicle	74
Operating principle	72
Porsche Stability Management (PSM)	
Functional description	195
Switching off	196
Porsche Track Precision app	198
Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTs)	
Changing Driver Card/Remote Keypad battery	202
Functional description	199
Operating with Driver Card	200
Operating with Remote Keypad	201
Operating without Driver Card/ without Remote Keypad	199
Transport	201
Power	
Technical data	307
Power windows	
Closing windows using proximity sensor on door handle (vehicles with Porsche Entry & Drive)	299
Opening/closing windows with driver's key (remote control)	299
Storing end position	299
Pressure	
Tyres	312
PSM (Porsche Stability Management)	
Functional description	195
Switching off	196
PSM Sport	195
Switching on	195, 196
PTV	256
Pulling out/parking	
Functional description, ParkAssist	185
PVTs (Porsche Vehicle Tracking System)	
Changing Driver Card/Remote Keypad battery	202
Functional description	199
Operating with Driver Card	200
Operating with Remote Keypad	201
Operating without Driver Card/ without Remote Keypad	199
Transport	201
R	
Radar sensor	32
Radio (PCM)	
Displaying station information	206
Set the frequency range	205
Settings	207
Storing stations	206
Traffic messages	206
Tuning to stations	205
Radio systems	
Inspection marks	317
Rain sensor operation	302
Rear fog light	
Adjusting the driving light	136
Switching on	135
Rear window wiper	303
Rear wing	
Operating principle	208
Refuelling	209
Indication of filler flap location	126
Relays	
Replacing	113
Remote control	102
Locking vehicle door	73
Opening/closing convertible top	91
Unlocking vehicle door	72
Removing or installing the luggage cover	142
Replacement keys	104
Restraint system for children	
Installing with ISOFIX system	86
Switching passenger airbag on and off	84
Retractable rear spoiler	
Extending and retracting	208
Right-hand traffic (changing headlights)	120
S	
SAFELOCK	73
Safety instructions	
Warning sticker Taiwan only	1
Sealant/sealing set	
For defective tyres	110
Seals, care instructions	68
Searching for a destination (Navigation, PCM)	168
Searching through source (PCM media)	150

Seat belts		SIM card		Storing	
Care instructions	69	Inserting and removing	240	Personal settings	188
Fastening	212	Siri®	49	Storing and using destination (favourite) (Navigation, PCM)	170
Notes	211	Smartphone		Storing end position of power windows	299
Opening belt buckle and removing the belt	212	Connecting via Bluetooth®	239	Storing stations (radio)	206
Seat-belt pretensioners	211	Displaying connection status	241	Summer tyres	
Warning light on the tachometer	211	Smartphone tray	246	Changing tyres	260
Warning message	211	Smoker's package	219	Storage	260
Seat memory	188	Snow chains		Sun visor	237
Seat-belt pretensioner		General information	260	Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off	155
Disposal	320	Socket (12 V)	106	Switching exterior mirror heating on/off	121
Seat-belt pretensioners	211	Speed code letter on tyre	258	Switching hazard warning lights on/off	139
Seats		Speed limit display	221	Switching heated rear window on/off	121
Adjusting seat position	213	Displaying speed limits	222	Switching off/on (PCM)	177
Adjusting the front seat	213	Speedometer	125	Switching on air-recirculation mode	
Baby seat, baby carrier	84	Sport Chrono		Air-conditioning system	43, 57
Child restraint systems	78	Activating SPORT Response	223	Switching on/off (PCM)	177
Folding backrest forward or back	215	Displaying Sport Chrono stopwatch in the PCM	228	Switching seat heating on/off	216
Recommended child restraint systems	80	Selecting mode with mode switch	223	Switching seat ventilation on/off	216
Storing/retrieving seat position	188	Sport Chrono stopwatch	226	Switching steering wheel heating on/off	234
Selecting a source (PCM media)	149	Sport mode			
Selector lever emergency release	217	Switching on/off	220		
Selector-lever position display	126, 252	SPORT PLUS	223		
Setting air quantity		Sports exhaust system	231		
Air-conditioning system	42, 55	Start Stop function	50		
Setting automatic air-recirculation mode		Starting			
Air-conditioning system	57	Engine	233		
Setting date and time (multi-function display)	265	Steering lock	248		
Setting fan		Steering wheel			
Air-conditioning system	42, 55	Adjusting	234		
Setting temperature		Assigning ◊ button	268		
Air-conditioning system	41, 55	Steering lock	232		
Setting the date and time (PCM)	177	Switching heating on/off	234		
Setting the time and date (PCM)	177	Stopping			
Setting time and date (multi-function display)	265	Engine	233		
Settings		Stopping engine automatically (Auto Start Stop function)	50		
Adjusting on multi-function display	263	Stopwatch	226		
Retrieving when opening the vehicle	189	Storage			
Storing on the key	188	Glove box	235		
Storing personal settings	188	Opening storage compartment in front armrest	235		
Shifting gears		Opening the side storage compartments behind the seats	236		
Gear shift assist	165	Storage options	235		
Manual transmission	251	Storage compartment			
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)	251	Glove box	235		
Shift prompt	125	In front armrest, opening	235		
Showing a background image in the PCM	180	Storage	235		
Side lights		to the side behind the seats, opening	236		
Switching on	135				

T

Tachometer	
Display	125
Tailback messages	173
Taiwan only	
Airbag warning sticker	79
Technical data	
Comfort pressure	314
Driving performance	310
Engine	307
Fuel consumption	308
Tyres, wheels	311
Weights	309
Telephone	
Accepting and ending a call	242
Connecting with a SIM card	240
Dialling a number	242
Holding a call	243
Test stands	
Brake test	147
Text messages	
Displaying and deleting	244
Writing	245
Theft protection	248
Engine immobiliser, steering column lock	47, 199, 248

Tightening torque	
Wheel bolts	261
Tool kit	
Removing and stowing	140
Tools	140
Torque	
Tightening torque for wheel bolts	261
Torque, Technical data.....	307
Total distance and trip	
Display	125
Resetting.....	125
Towing	
General information.....	249
Towing lug.....	250
Using a towing rope or towing bar	249
Towing lug	
In tool kit	140
TPM (Tyre Pressure Monitoring)	162
Traffic (displaying traffic info).....	173
Traffic announcements (radio)	206
Traffic sign display	221
Transmission	
Manual transmission.....	251
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)	251
Transmission and chassis control systems	
Overview (PSM, PASM,PADM, PTV).....	256
Transport (on car trains, ferries, etc.)	
Securing the vehicle	250
Trip counter	
Display	125
Resetting.....	125
Tuning to stations (radio).....	205
Tyre filling compressor	
Removing	141
Stowing	142
Tyre pressure	
Comfort pressure	164
Current settings.....	162
Retrieving on multi-function display	162
Speed warning	164, 165
System learning	164
Technical data	313
Tyre pressure plate.....	306
Warnings	165
Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)	162
Teaching	164

Tyre pressure plate	306
Tyre pressure warning light.....	126
Tyre sealant	
Removing and stowing	140
Tyre sealant/sealing set	
For defective tyres	110
Tyres	
Changing	260
Fixing a flat tyre.....	110
Inscription on tyres	258
Inscription on wheel	258
Replacing tyres (general information)	259
Sealant	110
Selecting comfort or standard pressure	164
Setting the type and size on the multi-function display.....	164
Snow chains (general information).....	260
Storage	260
Teaching new tyres in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system	164
Tightening torque for wheel bolts	261
Tyre pressure plate	257, 306
Winter tyres (general information)	259

U

Underbody protection, care instructions	67
Unlock	
Unlocking vehicle door from inside.....	75
Unlocking vehicle door with driver's key (remote control)	72
Unlocking	
Retrieving personal settings from the key	188
Unlocking and opening luggage compartment lid	144
Unlocking vehicle door from inside.....	75
Unlocking vehicle door with driver's key (remote control)	72
Upper ventilation panel	
Air-conditioning system	56
Upshift prompt.....	125
Using smart routing (Navigation, PCM)	171

V

Valves.....	259
Vanity mirror	237
Vehicle data	306
Vehicle door	
Emergency locking.....	77
Locking from inside.....	75
Locking with driver's key (remote control)	73
Locking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless)	74
locking with Porsche Entry & Drive (keyless).....	74
Opening	75
Opening and locking from inside.....	75
unlocking from the inside.....	75
Vehicle information	
Retrieving on multi-function display	160
Vehicle settings	
Adapting appearance of multi-function display	263
Adjusting individual mode.....	267
Adjusting lighting, windscreen wiper and mirror	267
Adjusting on multi-function display	263
Adjusting volume of warning tones and ParkAssist.....	269
Change the language	270
Changing button assignment on multi-function steering wheel	268
Lane Change Assist (LCA) settings	266
Resetting to factory settings	270
Setting air conditioning	269
Setting assistance systems	266
Setting date and time	265
Setting door locking options	269
Setting Porsche Active Safe	266
Setting Porsche Car Connect	270
Setting units	270
Storing on person buttons	188
Storing on the key.....	188
Ventilation panel	
Upper	56
Voice control	
calling up	271
Siri®.....	49
speed	272
Voice commands for media	274
Voice commands for navigation.....	276
Voice commands for radio	274
Voice commands for telephone	275

W

Warning and information messages	
Driving systems	293
Engine	283
Safety	278
Vehicle	287
Warning lights	126
Warning messages	
Tyre pressure	165
Warning sticker	
Taiwan only	1
Warning triangle	140
Washer fluid	
Antifreeze	297
Filling capacity	307
Topping up	297
Washing the vehicle	65
Weights	
Technical data	309
Welcome Home function	
Switching on	136
Wheel bolts	261
Wheels	
Balancing	260
Changing	260
Fixing a flat tyre	110
Inscription on tyres	258
Inscription on wheel	258
Overview	311
Replacing tyres (general information)	259
Rim offset	311
Security wheel bolt (wrench socket)	261
Size	311
Snow chains (general information)	260
Storage	260
Tightening torque	261
Tyre pressure	312
Tyre pressure plate	257, 306
Tyre sealant	110
Wheel bolts (care instructions)	261
Winter tyres (general information)	259
WiFi (PCM)	
Connecting Porsche Connect App to PCM using WiFi	193
Establishing data connection via external WiFi hotspot	88
Settings	247
Using the PCM's wireless Internet access	89
Wind deflector	
Removing and installing	91
Windows	
Care instructions	67
Opening/closing with driver's key (remote control)	299
Storing end position	299
Windscreen washer system	
Adding washer fluid	297
Antifreeze	297
Filling capacity	307
Windscreen wipers	300, 301
Care instructions	304
One-touch function	301
Rear window wiper	303
Replacing wiper blades	301
Switching on rain sensor	301
Windscreen wiper/washer system	301
Winter tyres	
Changing tyres	260
General information	259
Wiper	301
Wiper blades	
Care instructions	304
Replacing	304
Wrench socket for security wheel bolts	
Using	261